

OWNER'S MANUAL

Operation

Maintenance

Specifications

All information in this Owner's Manual is current at the time of publication. However, Genesis reserves the right to make changes at any time so that our policy of continual product improvement may be carried out.

This manual applies to all models of this vehicle and includes descriptions and explanations of optional as well as standard equipment.

As a result, you may find material in this manual that does not apply to your specific vehicle.

CAUTION: MODIFICATIONS TO YOUR Genesis vehicle

Your Genesis vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your Genesis vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle. Certain modifications may also be in violation of regulations established by the Department of Transportation and other government agencies in your country.

TWO-WAY RADIO OR MOBILE TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic fuel injection and other electronic components. It is possible for an improperly installed/adjusted two-way radio or mobile telephone to adversely affect electronic systems. For this reason, we recommend that you carefully follow the radio manufacturer's instructions or consult authorised Genesis dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions if you choose to install one of these devices.

SAFETY AND VEHICLE DAMAGE WARNING

This manual includes information titled as DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION and NOTICE. These titles indicate the following:

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

FOREWORD

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a Genesis vehicle. We are pleased to welcome you to the growing number of discerning people who drive Genesis Vehicles. We are very proud of the advanced engineering and high-quality construction of each Genesis vehicle we build.

Your Owner's Manual will introduce you to the features and operation of your new Genesis. To become familiar with your new Genesis vehicle, so that you can fully enjoy it, read this Owner's Manual carefully before driving your new vehicle.

This manual contains important safety information and instructions intended to familiarise you with your vehicle's controls and safety features so you can safely operate your vehicle.

This manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance safe operation of the vehicle. It is recommended that all service and maintenance on your vehicle be performed by an authorised Genesis dealer. An authorised Genesis dealer is prepared to provide high-quality service, maintenance and any other assistance that may be required.

This Owner's Manual should be considered a permanent part of your vehicle, and should be kept in the vehicle so you can refer to it at any time. The manual should stay with the vehicle if you sell it to provide the next owner with important operating, safety and maintenance information.

Genesis Motors Australia



CAUTION

Severe engine and transmission damage may result from the use of poor quality fuels and lubricants that do not meet Genesis vehicle specifications. You must always use high quality fuels and lubricants that meet the specifications listed on Page 8-6 in the Vehicle Specifications section of the Owner's Manual.

Copyright 2020 Genesis Motors Australia. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of Genesis Motors Australia.

AUSTRALIAN DESIGN RULES

The compliance plate shows that your vehicle has been tested and found to comply with all relevant Australian Design Rules (ADR's) applicable at its date of manufacture.

Any part, that is subject to these ADR's, must not be removed or altered and is to be maintained in good order at all times for the vehicle to be roadworthy and re-registerable by all registerable authorities.

We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer before conducting any repairs that may affect these areas or if requiring further classification on design rules or safety features. Failure to observe the above warning may render the vehicle compliance invalid and result in personal injury which may have otherwise been avoided.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

We want to help you get the greatest possible driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual can assist you in many ways. We strongly recommend that you read the entire manual. In order to minimise the chance of death or injury, you must read the WARNING and CAUTION sections in the manual.

Illustrations complement the words in this manual to best explain how to enjoy your vehicle. By reading your manual, you will learn about features, important safety information, and driving tips under various road conditions.

The general layout of the manual is provided in the Table of Contents. Use the index when looking for a specific area or subject; it has an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

Sections: This manual has eight chapters plus an index. Each chapter begins with a brief list of contents so you can tell at a glance if that section has the information you want.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. This Owner's Manual provides you with many safety precautions and operating procedures. This information alerts you to potential hazards that may hurt you or others, as well as damage to your vehicle.

Safety messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe these hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce the risks.

Warnings and instructions contained in this manual are for your safety. Failure to follow safety warnings and instructions can lead to serious injury or death.

Throughout this manual DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION, NOTICE and the SAFETY ALERT SYMBOL will be used.



This is the safety alert symbol. It is used to alert you to potential physical injury hazards. Obey all safety messages that follow this symbol to avoid possible injury or death. The safety alert symbol precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION.

DANGER

DANGER indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

WARNING indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

**CAUTION**

CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

NOTICE

NOTICE indicates a situation which, if not avoided, could result in vehicle damage.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

Petrol engine

Unleaded

For the optimal vehicle performance, we recommend you use unleaded fuel which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 or higher.

**CAUTION**

Using unleaded petrol with an octane rating lower than RON 95 could result in loss of engine power and increase fuel consumption.

Your new vehicle is designed to obtain maximum performance with UNLEADED FUEL, as well as minimise exhaust emissions and spark plug fouling.

NOTICE

NEVER USE LEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is detrimental to the catalytic converter and will damage the engine control system's oxygen sensor and affect emission control.

Never add any fuel system cleaning agents to the fuel tank other than what has been specified (We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer for details).

**WARNING**

- Do not "top off" after the nozzle automatically shuts off when refuelling.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

Petrol containing ethanol

Ethanol [E-10], a mixture of petrol and ethanol (also known as grain alcohol), is marketed along with or instead of leaded or unleaded petrol.

Do not use petrol containing more than 10% ethanol, and do not use petrol or ethanol containing any methanol. Either of these fuels may cause drivability problems and damage to the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Discontinue using ethanol of any kind if driveability problems occur.

Vehicle damage or driveability problems may not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty if they result from the use of:

1. Petrol containing more than 10% ethanol.
2. Petrol or ethanol containing methanol.
3. Leaded fuel or leaded ethanol.

NOTICE

Never use fuel which contains methanol. Discontinue use of any petrol product which impairs drivability.

Other fuels

Using fuel additives such as:

- Silicone fuel additive
- MMT (Manganese, Mn) fuel additive
- Ferrocene (iron-based) fuel additive
- Other metallic-based fuel additives

may result in cylinder misfire, poor acceleration, engine stalling, damage to the catalyst converter, or abnormal corrosion, and may cause damage to the engine resulting in a reduction in the overall life of the powertrain.

NOTICE

Damage to the fuel system or performance problems caused by the use of these fuels may not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Use of MTBE

Genesis recommends avoiding fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) in your vehicle. Fuel containing MTBE over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight) may reduce vehicle performance and produce vapour lock or hard starting.

NOTICE

Your New Vehicle Limited Warranty may not cover damage to the fuel system and any performance problems that are caused by the use of fuels containing methanol or fuels containing MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) over 15.0% vol. (Oxygen Content 2.7% weight.)

Do not use methanol

Fuels containing methanol (wood alcohol) should not be used in your vehicle. This type of fuel can reduce vehicle performance and damage components of the fuel system, engine control system and emission control system.

Fuel Additives

Genesis recommends that you use unleaded petrol which has an octane rating of RON (Research Octane Number) 95 or higher.

For customers who do not use good quality petrols, and have problems starting or the engine does not run smoothly, adding one bottle of additives to the fuel tank is recommended according to the maintenance schedule (refer to chapter 7, "Normal Maintenance Schedule").

Additives are available from your authorised Genesis dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS

- This vehicle should not be modified. Modification of your vehicle could affect its performance, safety or durability and may even violate governmental safety and emissions regulations.

In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from any modification may not be covered under warranty.

- If you use unauthorised electronic devices, it may cause the vehicle to operate abnormally, wire damage, battery discharge and fire. For your safety, do not use unauthorised electronic devices.

VEHICLE BREAK-IN PROCESS

By following a few simple precautions for the first 1,000 km you may add to the performance, economy and life of your vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- When driving, keep your engine speed (rpm, or revolutions per minute) between 2,000 rpm and 4,000 rpm.
- Do not maintain a single speed for long periods of time, either fast or slow. Varying engine speed is needed to properly break-in the engine.
- Avoid hard stops, except in emergencies, to allow the brakes to seat properly.
- Do not use Launch Control during the break-in process.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Your vehicle at a glance

1

Safety system of your vehicle

2

Convenient features of your vehicle

3

Infotainment System

4

Driving your vehicle

5

What to do in an emergency

6

Maintenance

7

Specifications & Consumer information

8

Index

I

Your vehicle at a glance

Exterior overview (I)	1-2
Exterior overview (II)	1-3
Interior overview	1-4
Instrument panel overview (I)	1-5
Instrument panel overview (II)	1-6
Engine compartment	1-7

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (I)

■ Front view



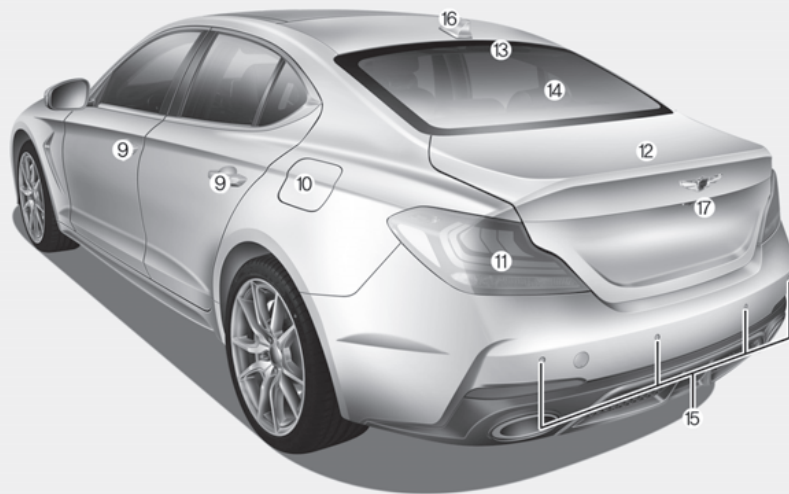
1. Bonnet	3-35
2. Front lamps	7-61
3. Tyres and wheels	7-31
4. Outside rearview mirror	3-22
5. Sunroof	3-30
6. Front windscreen wiper blades	7-26
7. Window	3-25
8. Parking Distance Warning system (Reverse/Forward)	3-122

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OIK017001

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW (II)

■ Rear view



- 9. Door handles 3-9
- 10. Fuel filler door.....3-48
- 11. Rear combination lamp 7-65
- 12. Boot.....3-36, 3-39, 3-45
- 13. High mounted stop lamp 7-68
- 14. Defroster 3-147
- 15. Parking Distance Warning system
(Reverse) 3-120
- 16. Antenna 4-3
- 17. Rear view monitor 3-126, 3-127

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

OIK017002

INTERIOR OVERVIEW

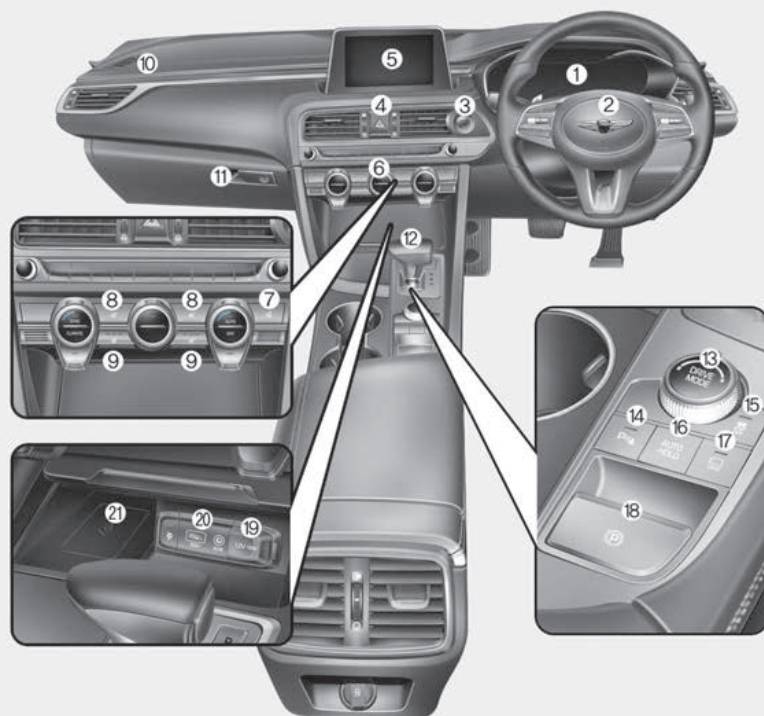


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

- 1. Inside door handle 3-10
- 2. Driver position memory system 3-14
- 3. Outside rearview mirror folding switch 3-23
- 4. Outside rearview mirror control 3-23
- 5. Central door lock/unlock switch 3-11
- 6. Power window lock switch 3-28
- 7. Power window switches 3-25
- 8. Headlight levelling device 3-111
- 9. Instrument panel illumination control switch 3-56
- 10. Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system 5-72
- 11. Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system 5-64
- 12. Fuel filler door release button.....3-48
- 13. Boot release button 3-36, 3-39
- 14. Bonnet release lever.....3-35
- 15. Steering wheel 3-17
- 16. Fuse box.....7-42
- 17. Seat 2-4

OIK017003R

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (I)

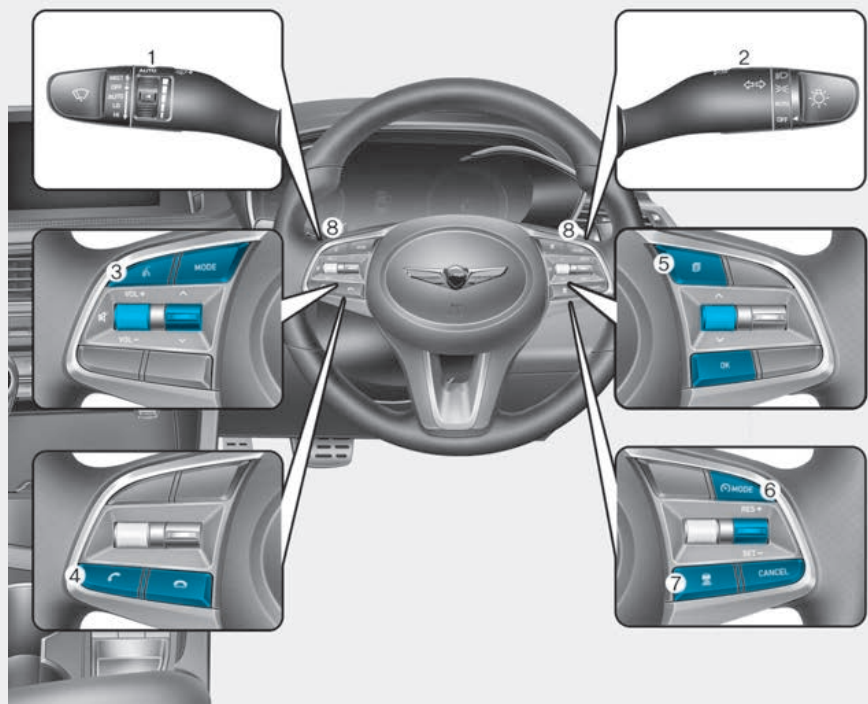


The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

1. Instrument cluster 3-51
2. Driver's front air bag.....2-47
3. Engine Start/Stop button 5-6
4. Hazard warning flasher switch.....6-2
5. Infotainment system.....4-5
6. Automatic climate control
system 3-132
7. Heated steering wheel 3-19
8. Seat warmer switch 2-21
9. Air ventilation seat switch.....2-22
10. Passenger's front air bag 2-47
11. Glove box 3-150
12. Automatic transmission shift lever 5-10
13. Drive mode knob 5-46
14. Parking Distance Warning
(Reverse/Forward) ON button 3-123
15. Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
OFF button.....5-34
16. Auto Hold 5-28
17. Surround view monitoring
system 3-128
18. Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) ...5-24
19. Power outlet 3-154
20. USB port 4-2
21. Wireless mobile phone charging
system 3-156

OIK017004R

INSTRUMENT PANEL OVERVIEW (II)



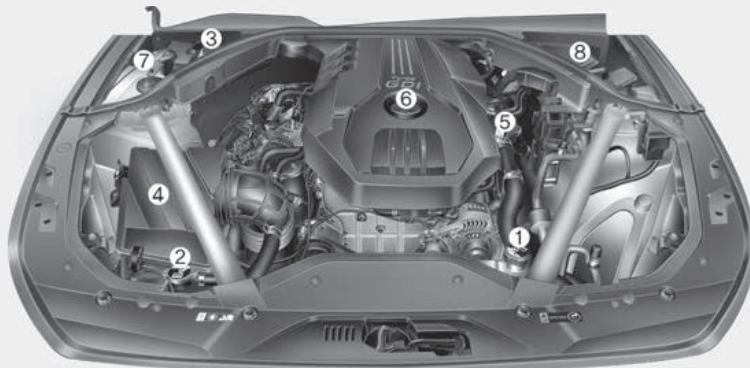
- 1. Wiper and washer control lever 3-117
- 2. Light control / Turn signals lever 3-104
- 3. Audio remote control buttons.....4-3
- 4. Bluetooth® wireless technology
hands-free buttons.....4-4
- 5. LCD display controls.....3-82
- 6. Manual Speed Limit Assist system
switch 5-87
Cruise controls 5-90
Smart cruise controls 5-95
- 7. Smart cruise control vehicle-to-vehicle
distance button 5-102
- 8. Paddle shifter 5-15

The actual shape may differ from the illustration.

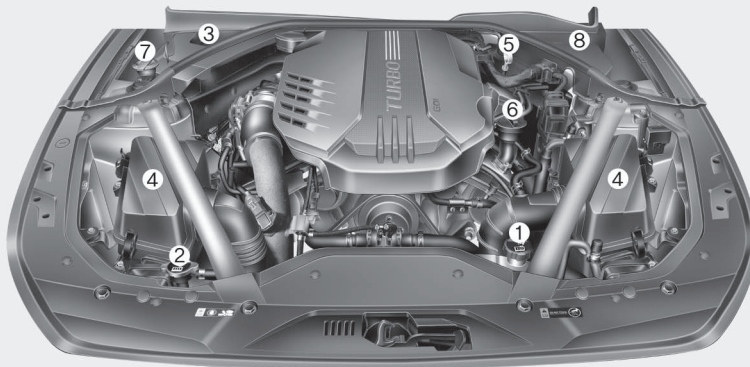
OIK018005R

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Petrol Engine (Theta 2.0 T-GDI)



■ Petrol Engine (Lambda 3.3 T-GDI)



- 1. Engine coolant reservoir 7-18
- 2. Radiator cap.....7-19
- 3. Brake fluid reservoir 7-21
- 4. Air cleaner 7-23
- 5. Engine oil dipstick 7-16
- 6. Engine oil filler cap 7-16
- 7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir 7-22
- 8. Fuse box 7-43

The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OIK077001R/OIK017007R

Safety system of your vehicle

This chapter provides you with important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It explains how to properly use your seats and seat belts, and how your air bags work. Additionally, this chapter explains how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important safety precautions.....	2-2	Child restraint system (CRS)	2-36
Always wear your seat belt.....	2-2	Children always in the rear seats	2-36
Restrain all children	2-2	Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)	2-37
Air bag hazards.....	2-2	Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS).....	2-39
Driver distraction.....	2-2	Air bag – supplemental restraint system	2-45
Control your speed	2-3	Where are the air bags?	2-47
Keep your vehicle in a safe condition	2-3	How does the air bag system operate?	2-51
Seats	2-4	What to expect after an air bag inflates.....	2-54
Safety precautions.....	2-5	Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?	2-56
Front seats	2-6	Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) care.....	2-61
Rear seats	2-13	Additional safety precautions	2-62
Headrest	2-16	Air bag warning labels	2-63
Seat warmers and air ventilation seats.....	2-20	Active bonnet lift system	2-64
Seat belts	2-24	System activation.....	2-64
Seat belt safety precautions.....	2-24	System limitation	2-65
Seat belt warning light	2-25	System malfunction.....	2-66
Seat belt restraint system	2-27		
Additional seat belt safety precautions	2-33		
Care of seat belts	2-35		

IMPORTANT SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

You will find many safety precautions and recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The safety precautions in this section are among the most important.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of accidents. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with air bags, ALWAYS make sure you and your passengers wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

All children under age 13 should ride in your vehicle properly restrained in a rear seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in an appropriate Child Restraint System. Larger children should use a booster seat with the lap/shoulder belt until they can use the seat belt properly without a booster seat.

Air bag hazards

Whilst air bags can save lives, they can also cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or who are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Driver distraction

Driver distraction presents a serious and potentially deadly danger, especially for inexperienced drivers. Safety should be the first concern when behind the wheel and drivers need to be aware of the wide array of potential distractions, such as drowsiness, reaching for objects, eating, personal grooming, other passengers, and using mobile phones.

Drivers can become distracted when they take their eyes and attention off the road or their hands off the wheel to focus on activities other than driving. To reduce your risk of distraction and an accident:

- ALWAYS set up your mobile devices (i.e., MP3 players, phones, navigation units, etc.) when your vehicle is parked or safely stopped.
- ONLY use your mobile device when allowed by laws and conditions permit safe use. NEVER text or email whilst driving. Most countries have laws prohibiting drivers from texting. Some countries and cities also prohibit drivers from using handheld phones.

- NEVER let the use of a mobile device distract you from driving. You have a responsibility to your passengers and others on the road to always drive safely, with your hands on the wheel as well as your eyes and attention on the road.

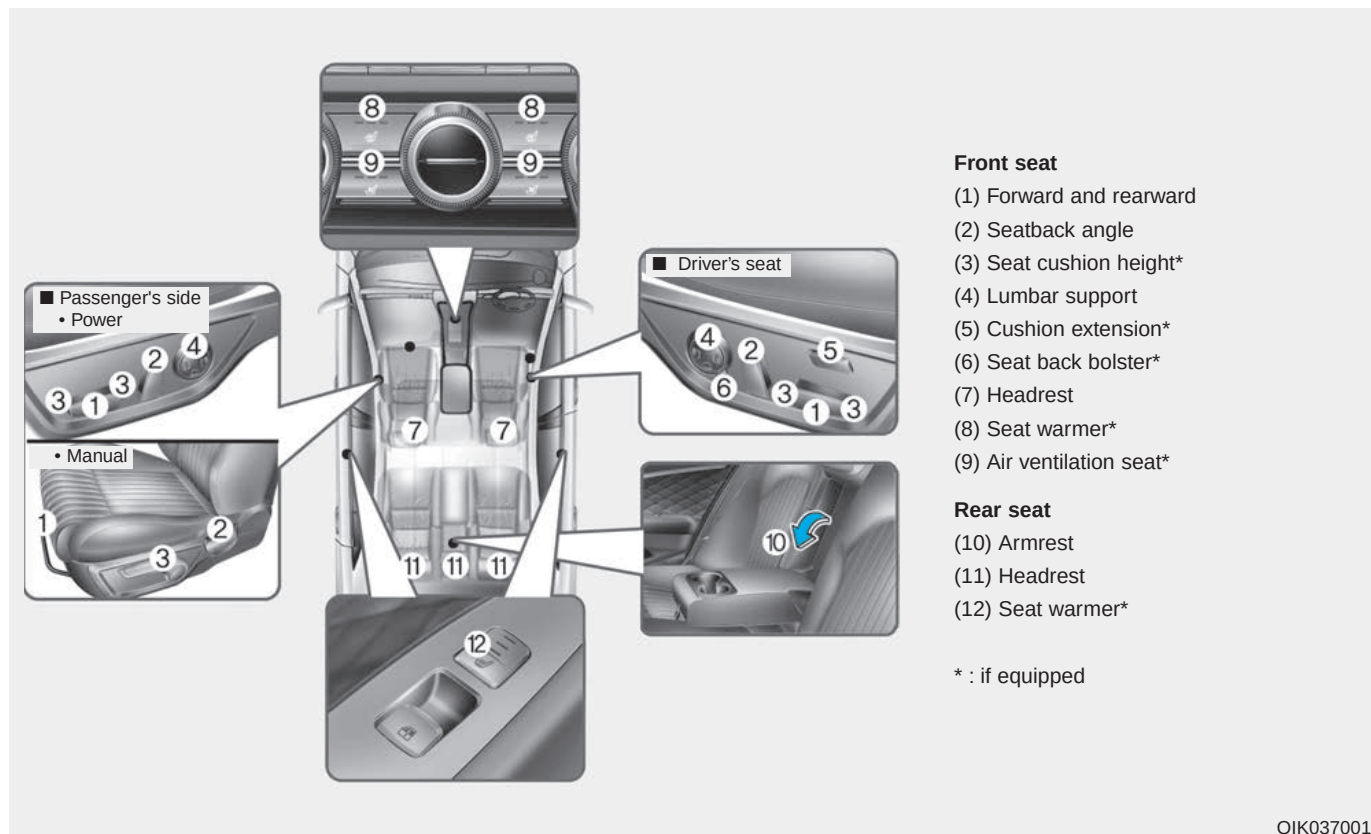
Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in a safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

SEATS



Safety precautions

Adjusting the seats so that you are sitting in a safe, comfortable position plays an important role in driver and passenger safety, together with seat belts and air bags, in an accident.

WARNING

Do not sit on a cushion. An occupant may slide under the lap portion of the seat belt during an accident or a sudden stop.

Serious or fatal internal injuries could result because the seat belt cannot operate properly.

Air bags

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. Sitting too close to an air bag greatly increases the risk of injury in the event the air bag inflates. Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating air bag, take the following precautions:

- **Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible maintaining the ability to control the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front passenger seat as far to the rear as possible.**

- **Hold the steering wheel by the rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- **NEVER place anything or anyone between yourself and the air bag.**
- **Do not allow the front passenger to place feet or legs on the instrument panel, to minimise the risk of leg injuries.**

Seat belts

Always fasten your seat belt before starting any trip.

At all times, passengers should sit upright and be properly restrained. Infants and small children must be restrained in appropriate Child Restraint Systems. Children who have outgrown a booster seat as well as adults, must be restrained using the seat belts.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat belt:

- NEVER use one seat belt for more than one occupant.
- Always position the seatback upright with the lap portion of the seat belt snug and low across the hips.
- NEVER allow children or small infants to ride on a passenger's lap.

- **Do not route the seat belt across your neck, across sharp edges, or reroute the shoulder strap away from your body.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to become caught or jammed.**

Front seats

The front seat can be adjusted by using the control lever or switches located on the outside of the seat cushion. Before driving, adjust the seat to the proper position so that you can easily control the steering wheel, foot pedals and controls on the instrument panel.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when adjusting your seat:

- NEVER attempt to adjust the seat when the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Do not place anything under the front seats. Loose objects in the driver's foot area could interfere with the operation of the foot pedals, causing an accident.

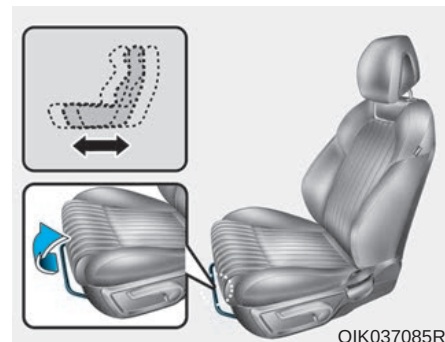
- Do not allow anything to interfere with the normal position and proper locking of the seat-back.
- Do not place a cigarette lighter on the floor or seat. When you operate the seat, gas may exit out of the lighter causing a fire.
- Use extreme caution when picking up small objects trapped under the seats or between the seat and the centre console. Your hands might be cut or injured by the sharp edges of the seat mechanism.
- If there are occupants in the rear seats, be careful when adjusting the front seat position.

CAUTION

To prevent injury:

- Do not adjust your seat whilst wearing your seat belt. Moving the seat cushion forward may cause strong pressure on your abdomen.
- Do not allow your hands or fingers to get caught in the seat mechanisms whilst the seat is moving.

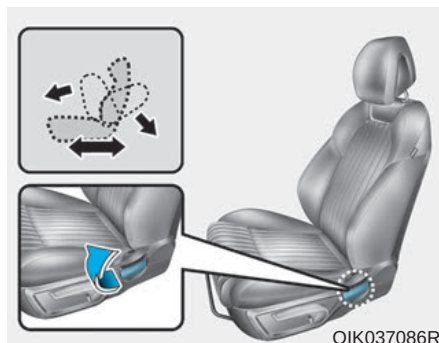
Manual adjustment (Passenger's seat, if equipped)



Forward and rearward adjustment

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Pull up the seat slide adjustment lever and hold it.
2. Slide the seat to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seat is locked in place. Move forward and rearward without using the lever. If the seat moves, it is not locked properly.



Seatback angle

To recline the seatback:

1. Lean forward slightly and lift up the seatback lever.
2. Carefully lean back on the seat and adjust the seatback to the position you desire.
3. Release the lever and make sure the seatback is locked in place. (The lever **MUST** return to its original position for the seatback to lock.)

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

WARNING

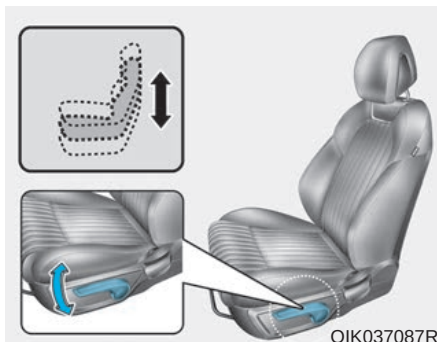
NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

The driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.



Seat cushion height

To change the height of the seat cushion:

- Push down the lever several times, to lower the seat cushion.
- Pull up the lever several times, to raise the seat cushion.

Power adjustment (if equipped)

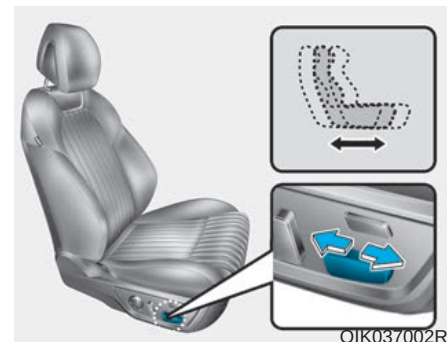
⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow children in the vehicle unattended. The power seats are operable when the engine is turned off.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seats:

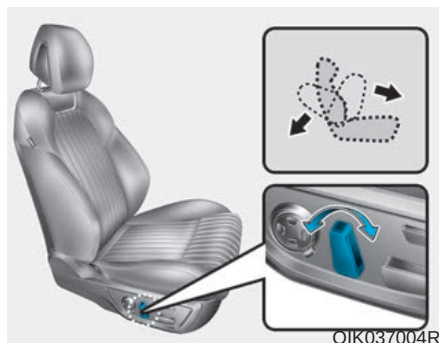
- **Always stop adjusting the seats when the seat has been adjusted as far forward or rearward as possible.**
- **Do not adjust the seats longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.**
- **Do not operate two or more seats at the same time. This may result in an electrical malfunction.**



Forward and rearward adjustment

To move the seat forward or rearward:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



Seatback angle

To recline the seatback:

1. Push the control switch forward or rearward.
2. Release the switch once the seatback reaches the desired position.

Reclining seatback

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

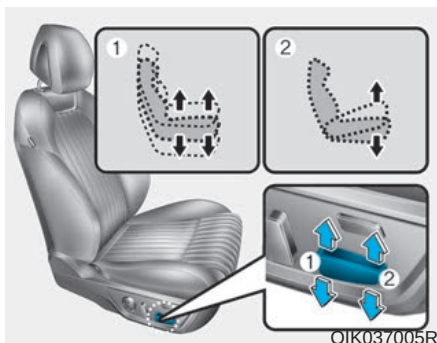
WARNING

NEVER ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving. Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.

The driver and passengers should ALWAYS sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. When the seatback is reclined, the shoulder belt cannot do its job because it will not be snug against your chest. Instead, it will be in front of you. During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater chance the passenger's hips will slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck will strike the shoulder belt.



OIK037005R

Seat cushion height (1, if equipped)

To change the height of the seat cushion:

Push the rear portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the height of the seat cushion.

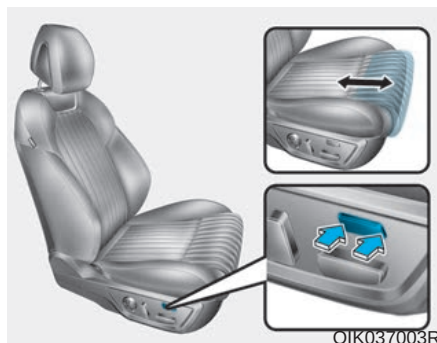
Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.

Seat cushion tilt (2, if equipped)

To change the angle of the front part of the cushion:

Push the front portion of the control switch up to raise or down to lower the front part of the seat cushion.

Release the switch once the seat reaches the desired position.



OIK037003R

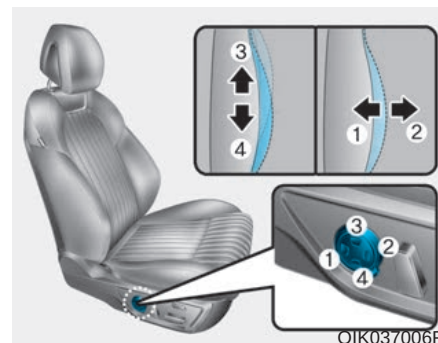
Cushion extension (for driver's seat, if equipped)

To move the front part of cushion forward:

1. Push the front part of the control switch to move the seat cushion to the desired length.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

To move the front part of cushion rearward:

1. Push the rear part of the control switch to move the seat cushion to the desired length.
2. Release the switch once the seat cushion reaches the desired length.

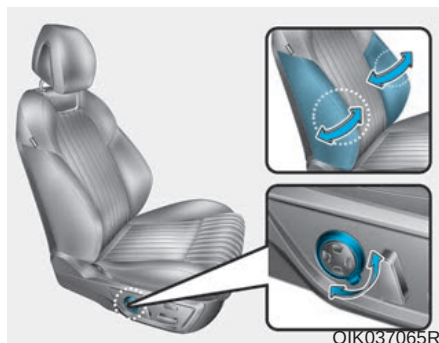


OIK037006R

Lumbar support (if equipped)

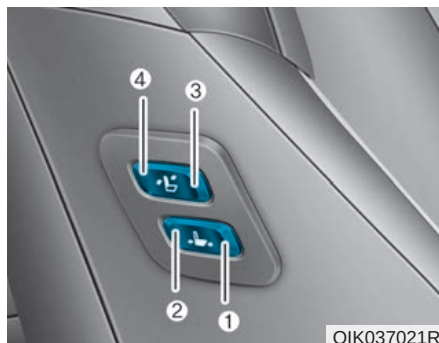
The lumbar support can be adjusted by pressing the lumbar support switch.

- Press the front portion of the switch (1) to increase support or the rear portion of the switch (2) to decrease support.
- To move the support position up or down, press switch (3) or (4).



Seat back bolster adjustment (for driver's seat, if equipped)

1. Turn the adjustment switch clockwise, the right and left seatback bolsters will be adjusted inward. Turn the switch anti-clockwise, the seatback bolsters will be adjusted outward.
2. To adjust the bolster height to its maximum in the default state, operate the switch for approximately 10 seconds. After that, release the switch because there is no change in height even if you continue to operate the switch.
3. Once adjustment is done, release the switch.



Front passenger seat control (if equipped)

The rear seat passenger may use the switches to control the front passenger seat.

- Sliding forward or rearward:

To move the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (1). To move the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (2).

- Angle adjustment:

To angle the front passenger seat forward, press the switch (3).

To recline the front passenger seat rearward, press the switch (4).

Seatback pocket



The seatback pocket is provided on the back of the front seatbacks.

CAUTION

Do not put heavy or sharp objects in the seatback pockets. In an accident they could come loose from the pocket and injure occupants.

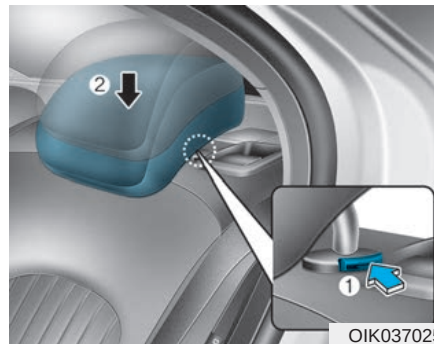
Rear seats

Folding the rear seat

The rear seatbacks can be folded to facilitate carrying long items or to increase the luggage capacity of the vehicle.

WARNING

- **Never allow passengers to sit on top of the folded down seatback whilst the vehicle is moving. This is not a proper seating position and no seat belts are available for use. This could result in serious injury or death in case of an accident or sudden stop.**
- **Objects carried on the folded down seatback should not extend higher than the top of the front seatbacks. This could allow cargo to slide forward and cause injury or damage during sudden stops.**

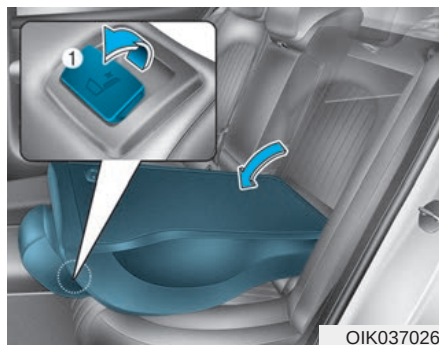


To fold down the rear seatback:

1. Set the front seatback to the upright position and if necessary, slide the front seat forward.
2. Lower the rear headrests to the lowest position.



3. Locate the seatbelt toward the outboard position before folding down the seatback to avoid the seatbelt system interfering with the seatback.



4. Pull up the seatback folding lever (1), then fold the seat toward the front of the vehicle.



5. To use the rear seat, lift and push the seatback rearward. Push the seatback firmly until it clicks into place. Make sure the seatback is locked in place.

WARNING

When returning the rear seatback from a folded to an upright position, hold the seatback and return it slowly. Ensure that the seatback is completely locked into its upright position by pushing on the top of the seatback. In an accident or sudden stop, the unlocked seatback could allow cargo to move forward with great force and enter the passenger compartment, which could result in serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

Do not place objects in the rear seats, as they cannot be properly secured and may hit vehicle occupants in a collision causing serious injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

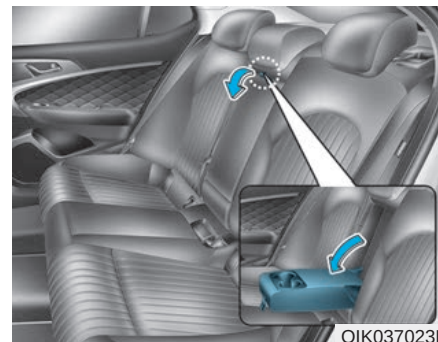
Make sure the engine is off, the shift lever is in P (Park), and the parking brake is securely applied whenever loading or unloading luggage. Failure to take these steps may allow the vehicle to move if the shift lever is inadvertently moved to another position.

⚠ CAUTION

- Be careful when loading luggage through the rear passenger seats to prevent damage to the vehicle interior.
- When luggage is loaded through the rear passenger seats, ensure the luggage is properly secured to prevent it from moving whilst driving.

⚠ WARNING

Luggage should always be secured to prevent it from being thrown about the vehicle in a collision and causing injury to the vehicle occupants. Do not place objects in the rear seats, as they cannot be properly secured and may hit the front seat occupants in a collision.

Armrest (if equipped)

The armrest is located in the centre of the rear seat. Pull the armrest down from the seatback to use it.

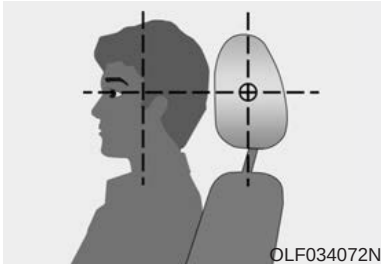
Headrest

The vehicle's front and rear seats have adjustable headrests. The headrests provide comfort for passengers, but more importantly they are designed to help protect passengers from whiplash and other neck and spinal injuries during an accident, especially in a rear impact collision.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death in an accident, take the following precautions when adjusting your headrests:

- Always properly adjust the headrests for all passengers **BEFORE** starting the vehicle.
- **NEVER** let anyone ride in a seat with the headrest removed.

- 

Adjust the headrest so the middle of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the eyes.

- **NEVER** adjust the headrest position of the driver's seat when the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust the headrest as close to the passenger's head as possible. Do not use a seat cushion that holds the body away from the seatback.
- Make sure the headrest locks into position after adjusting it.

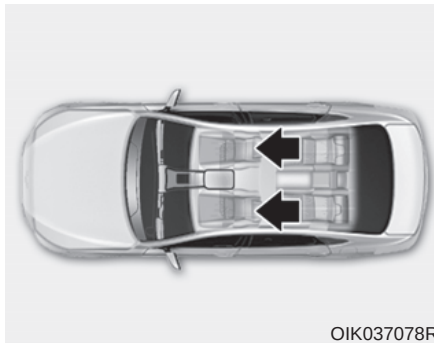
NOTICE

To prevent damage, **NEVER** hit or pull on the headrests.

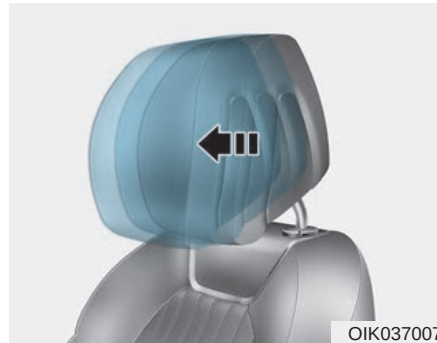
CAUTION

When there are no occupants in the rear seats, adjust the height of the headrests to the lowest position. A raised rear seat headrests can reduce the visibility of the rear area of the vehicle.

Front seat headrests

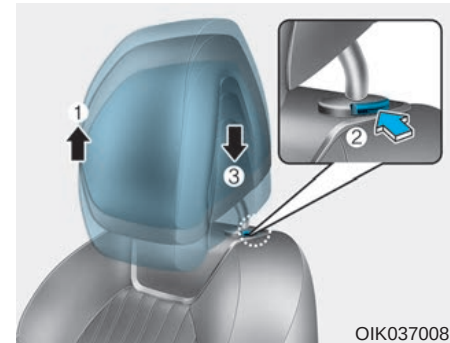


The driver's and front passenger's seats are equipped with adjustable headrests for the passengers safety and comfort.



Forward and rearward adjustment

The headrest may be adjusted forward to 3 different positions by pulling the headrest forward to the desired detent. To adjust the headrest to its furthest rearwards position, pull it fully forward to the farthest position and release it.



Adjusting the height up and down

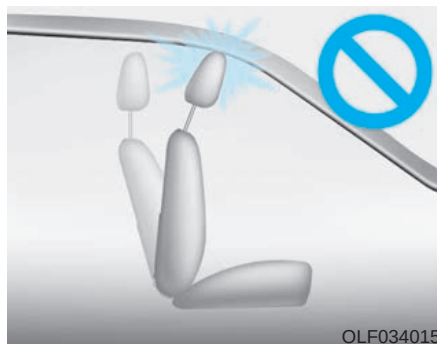
To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

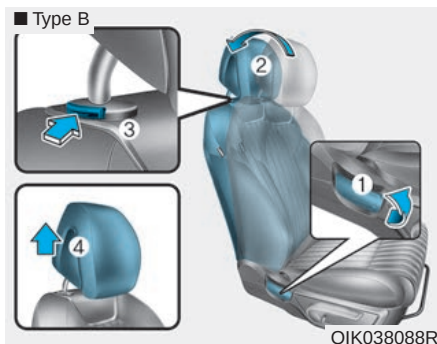
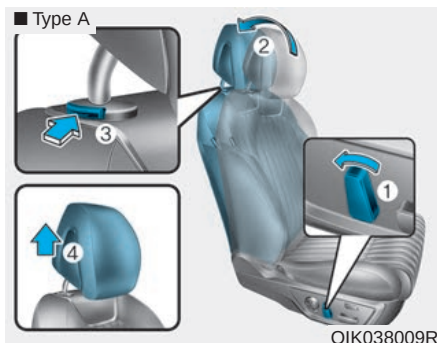
To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

NOTICE



If you angle the seatback towards the front with the headrest and seat cushion raised, the headrest may come in contact with the sunvisor or other parts of the vehicle.



2. Raise the headrest as far as it can go.
3. Press the headrest release button (3) whilst pulling the headrest up (4).

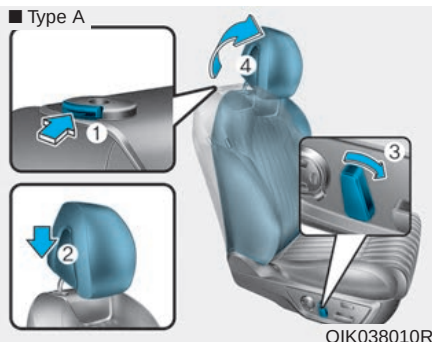
⚠ WARNING

NEVER allow anyone to travel in a seat with the headrest removed.

Removal/Reinstall

To remove the headrest:

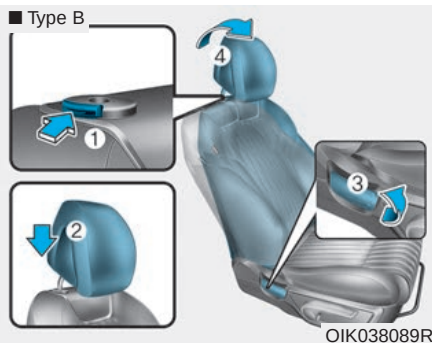
1. Recline the seatback (2) using the seatback angle lever or switch (1).



3. Adjust the headrest to the appropriate height.
4. Position the seatback (4) using the seatback angle lever or switch (3).

⚠ WARNING

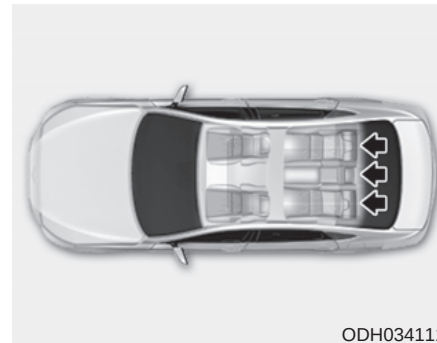
Always make sure the headrest locks into position after reinstalling and adjusting it properly.



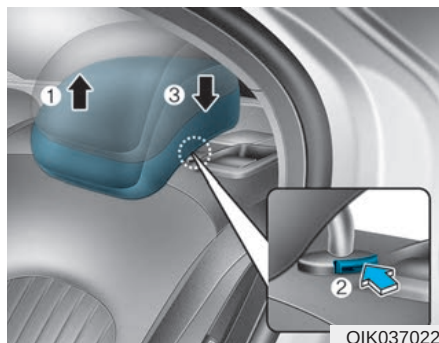
To reinstall the headrest:

1. Recline the seatback.
2. Put the headrest poles (2) into the holes whilst pressing the release button (1).

Rear seat headrests



The rear seats are equipped with headrests in all the seating positions for the passengers safety and comfort.



Adjusting the height up and down

To raise the headrest:

1. Pull it up to the desired position (1).

To lower the headrest:

1. Push and hold the release button (2) on the headrest support.
2. Lower the headrest to the desired position (3).

Seat warmers and air ventilation seats

Seat warmers (if equipped)

Seat warmers are provided to warm the seats during cold weather.

WARNING

The seat warmers can cause a **SERIOUS BURN**, even at low temperatures and especially if used for long periods of time.

Passengers must be able to feel if the seat is becoming too warm so they can turn it off, if needed.

People who cannot detect temperature change or pain to the skin should use extreme caution, especially the following passengers:

- Infants, children, elderly or disabled persons, or hospital outpatients.
- People with sensitive skin or who burn easily.
- Fatigued individuals.
- Intoxicated individuals.
- People taking medication that can cause drowsiness or sleepiness.

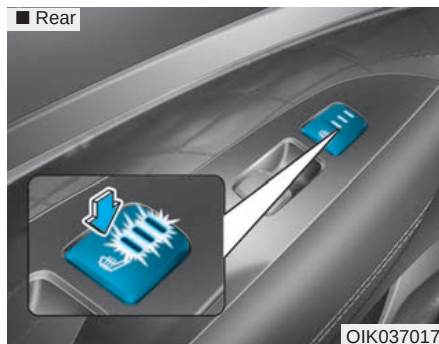
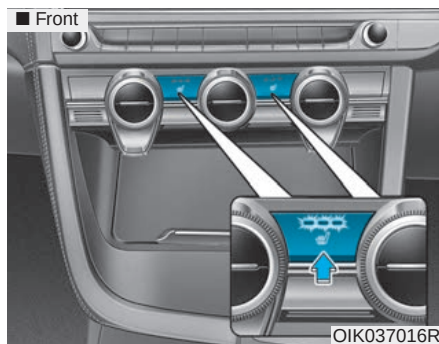
⚠ WARNING

NEVER place anything on the seat that insulates against heat when the seat warmer is in operation, such as a blanket or seat cushion. This may cause the seat warmer to overheat, causing a burn or damage to the seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the seat warmers and seats:

- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on seats equipped with seat warmers.
- Do not change the seat cover. It may damage the seat warmer.

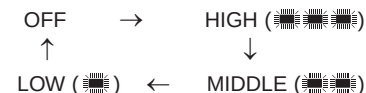


Whilst the engine is running, push either of the switches to warm the driver's seat or front passenger's seat (and/or rear passenger's seat).

During mild weather or under conditions where the operation of the seat warmer is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

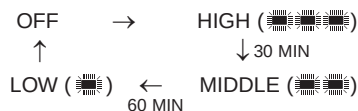
• Manual temperature control

Each time you push the switch, the temperature setting of the seat is changed as follows:



- Automatic temperature control

The seat warmer starts to automatically control the seat temperature in order to prevent low-temperature burns after being manually turned ON.



You may manually press the switch to increase seat temperature. However, it soon returns the automatic mode again.

- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the seat warmer operating, the seat warmer will turn OFF.

- If the vehicle is turned off then on again, the seat warmer turns ON or OFF as follows:

- Driver's seat

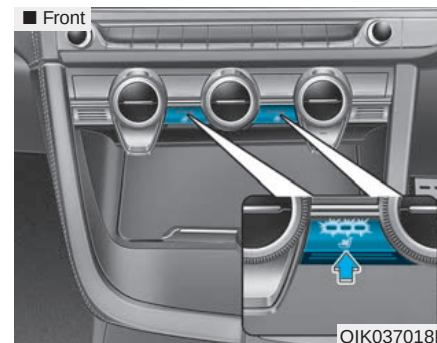
The seat warmer stays OFF if it was turned off before the vehicle was turned off.

The seat warmer stays ON (HIGH) if it was turned ON (HIGH/MIDDLE/LOW) before the vehicle was turned off.

- Passenger's seat

The seat warmer stays OFF regardless of the previous state of the seat warmer.

Air ventilation seats (if equipped)

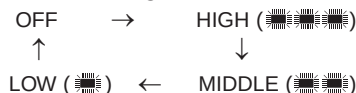


The air ventilation seats are provided to cool the front seats by blowing air through small vent holes on the surface of the seat cushions and seat-backs.

When the operation of the air ventilation seat is not needed, keep the switches in the OFF position.

Whilst the engine is running, push the switch to cool the driver's seat or the front passenger's seat.

- Each time you push the switch, the airflow changes as follows:



- When pressing the switch for more than 1.5 seconds with the air ventilation seat operating, the operation will turn OFF.
- If the vehicle is turned off then on again, the air ventilation seat turns ON or OFF as follows:

- Driver's seat

The air ventilation seat stays OFF if it was turned off before the vehicle was turned off.

The air ventilation seat stays ON (HIGH) if it was turned ON (HIGH/MIDDLE/LOW) before the vehicle was turned off.

- Passenger's seat

The air ventilation seat stays OFF regardless of the previous state of the air ventilation seat.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the air ventilation seat:

- Use the air ventilation seat **ONLY** when the climate control system is on. Using the air ventilation seat for prolonged periods of time with the climate control system off could cause the air ventilation seat to malfunction.
- Never use a solvent such as paint thinner, benzene, alcohol or petrol to clean the seats.
- Avoid spilling liquids on the surface of the front seats and seat-backs; this may cause the air vent holes to become blocked and not work properly.
- Do not place materials such as plastic bags or newspapers under the seats. They may block the air intake causing the air vents to work improperly.
- Do not change the seat covers. It may damage the air ventilation seat.

- If the air vents do not operate, restart the vehicle. If there is no change, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

SEAT BELTS

This section describes how to use the seat belts properly. It also describes some of the things not to do when using seat belts.

Seat belt safety precautions

Always fasten your seat belt and make sure all passengers have fastened their seat belts before starting any trip. Air bags are designed to supplement the seat belt as an additional safety device, but they are not a substitute. Most countries require all occupants of a vehicle to wear seat belts.

WARNING

Seat belts must be used by ALL passengers whenever the vehicle is moving. Take the following precautions when adjusting and wearing seat belts:

- Children under the age of 13 should be properly restrained in the rear seats.

- **Never allow children to ride in the front passenger seat. If a child is seated in the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and properly restrain them using the seat.**
- **NEVER allow an infant or child to be carried on an occupant's lap.**
- **NEVER ride with the seatback reclined when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Do not allow children to share a seat or seat belt.**
- **Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.**
- **Never wear a seat belt over fragile objects. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt can damage it.**
- **Do not use the seat belt if it is twisted. A twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.**

- **Do not use a seat belt if the webbing or hardware is damaged.**
- **Do not latch the seat belt into the buckles of other seats.**
- **NEVER unfasten the seat belt when driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.**
- **Make sure there is nothing in the buckle interfering with the seat belt latch mechanism. This may prevent the seat belt from fastening securely.**
- **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.**

WARNING

Damaged seat belts and seat belt assemblies will not operate properly. Always replace:

- Frayed, contaminated, or damaged webbing.
- Damaged hardware.
- The entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in an accident, even if damage to webbing or assembly is not apparent.

WARNING

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the seat belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed.

A slack seat belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water.

The seat belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious. Seat belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each seat belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Seat belt warning light

Seat belt warning

■ Instrument cluster
(Driver and front passenger's seat)



Driver's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the driver, the seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position regardless of seat belt fastening. At this time, if the seat belt is not fastened a warning chime will sound for 6 seconds.

If the seat belt is not fastened when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position or if it is disconnected after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position, the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

Front passenger's seat belt warning

As a reminder to the front passenger, the front passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position regardless of seat belt fastening.

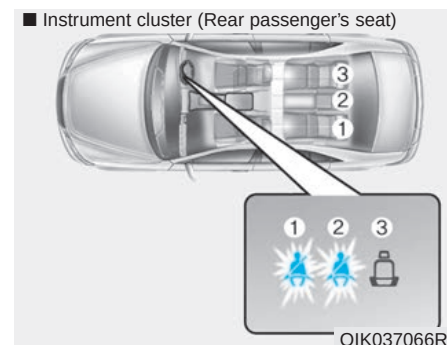
If the seat belt is not fastened when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position or if it is disconnected after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position, the seat belt warning light will illuminate until the seat belt is fastened.

If you start to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive under 20km/h, the corresponding warning light will continue to illuminate until you fasten the seat belt.

If you continue to drive without the seat belt fastened or you unfasten the seat belt when you drive over 20km/h, the seat belt warning chime will sound for approximately 100 seconds and the corresponding warning light will blink.

Information

- **Even if the front passenger seat is not occupied, the seat belt warning light will blink or illuminate for 6 seconds.**
- **The front passenger's seat belt warning may operate when luggage is placed on the front passenger seat.**



1. Right side and left side seat

As a reminder to the rear passengers, the rear passenger's seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is placed to the ON position regardless of seat belt fastening.

And then, the rear corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 35 seconds, if any of the following occurs:

- You drive under 20km/h when the rear seat belt is not fastened.
- The rear seat belt is disconnected whilst driving under 20km/h.

If you drive over 20km/h when the rear seat belt is not fastened or the rear seat belt is disconnected whilst driving over 20km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and a warning chime will sound for 35 seconds.

2. Centre seat

The seat belt warning lights will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds each time the Engine Start/Stop button is placed to the ON position regardless of seat belt fastening.

And then, the rear corresponding seat belt warning light will illuminate for approximately 70 seconds if any of the following occurs:

- The rear seat belt is not fastened.
- The rear seat belt is disconnected whilst driving under 20km/h.

If you drive over 20km/h when the rear seat belt is not fastened or the rear seat belt is disconnected whilst driving over 20km/h, the corresponding seat belt warning light will blink and a warning chime will sound for 35 seconds.

i Information

- If a rear door is opened and then closed whilst you drive under 20km/h the warning light and chime will not operate even when the vehicle speed is over 20km/h.
- If the rear passenger's lap/shoulder belt is/are connected and disconnected twice within 9 seconds after the belt is fastened, the corresponding seat belt warning light will not operate.
- **Riding in an improper position adversely affects the passenger's seat belt warning system. It is important for the driver to instruct the passenger to properly be seated as instructed in this manual.**

Seat belt restraint system

Lap/shoulder belt



To fasten your seat belt:

Pull it out of the retractor and insert the metal tab (1) into the buckle (2). There will be an audible "click" when the tab locks into the buckle.



You should place the lap belt (1) portion across your hips and the shoulder belt (2) portion across your chest.

The seat belt automatically adjusts to the proper length after the lap belt portion is adjusted manually so that it fits snugly around your hips. If you lean forward in a slow, easy motion, the seat belt will extend and move with you. If there is a sudden stop or impact, the seat belt will lock into position. It will also lock if you try to lean forward too quickly.

NOTICE

If you are not able to smoothly pull enough of the seat belt out from the retractor, firmly pull the seat belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the seat belt out smoothly.



⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned seat belts may increase the risk of serious injury in an accident. Take the following precautions when adjusting the seat belt:

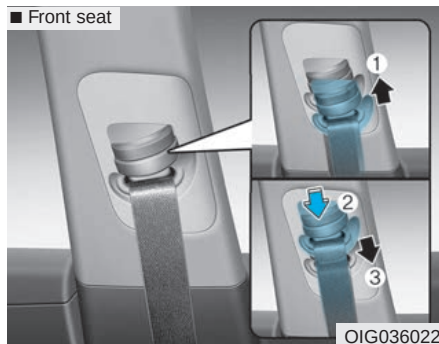
- Position the lap portion of the seat belt as low as possible across your hips, not on your waist, so that it fits snugly. This allows your strong pelvic bones to absorb the force of the crash, reducing the chance of internal injuries.

- Position one arm under the shoulder belt and the other over the shoulder belt, as shown in the illustration.
- Always position the shoulder belt anchor into the locked position at the appropriate height.
- Never position the shoulder belt across your neck or face.

Height adjustment

You can adjust the height of the shoulder belt anchor to one of the four different positions for maximum comfort and safety.

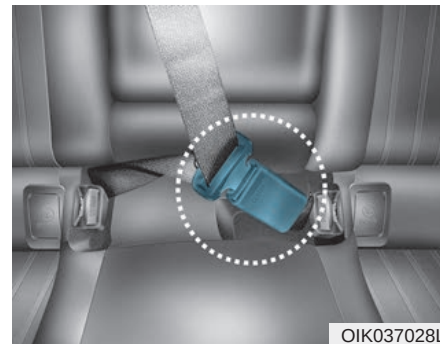
The shoulder portion should be adjusted so it lies across your chest and midway over your shoulder nearest the door, not over your neck.



To adjust the height of the seat belt anchor, lower or raise the height adjuster into an appropriate position.

To raise the height adjuster, pull it up (1). To lower it, push it down (3) whilst pressing the height adjuster button (2).

Release the button to lock the anchor into position. Try sliding the height adjuster to make sure that it has locked into position.



When using the rear centre seat belt, the buckle with the CENTER mark must be used.



To release your seat belt:

Press the release button (1) in the locking buckle.

When it is released, the seat belt should automatically draw back into the retractor. If this does not happen, check the seat belt to be sure it is not twisted, then try again.

i Information

If you are not able to pull out the safety belt from the retractor, firmly pull the belt out and release it. After release, you will be able to pull the belt out smoothly.

Pre-tensioner seat belt



Your vehicle is equipped with driver's and front passenger's Pre-tensioner Seat Belts (Retractor Pretensioner and Emergency Fastening Device System). The purpose of the pre-tensioner is to make sure the seat belts fit tightly against the occupant's body in certain frontal or side collision(s). The Emergency Fastening Device System may be activated in certain crashes where the frontal or side collision(s) is severe enough, together with the air bags.

When the vehicle stops suddenly, or if the occupant tries to lean forward too quickly, the seat belt retractor will lock into position. In certain frontal or side collision(s), the pre-tensioner will activate and pull the seat belt into tighter contact against the occupant's body.

(1) Retractor Pretensioner

The purpose of the retractor pre-tensioner is to make sure that the shoulder belts fit in tightly against the occupant's upper body in certain frontal or side collision(s).

(2) Emergency Fastening Device System

The purpose of the Emergency Fastening Device System is to make sure that the pelvis belts fit in tightly against the occupant's lower body in certain frontal or side collision(s).

If the system senses excessive tension on the driver or passenger's seat belt when the pre-tensioner system activates, the load limiter inside the retractor pre-tensioner will release some of the pressure on the affected seat belt.

✱ Retractor pre-tensioner and load limiter are also available in the rear seats.

WARNING

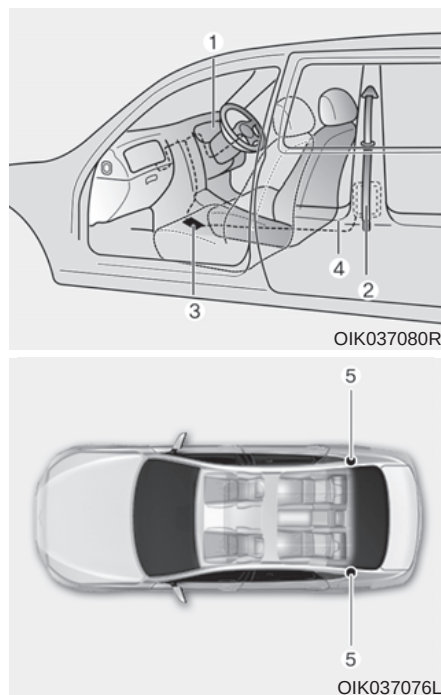
- Always wear your seat belt and sit properly in your seat.
- Do not use the seat belt if it is loose or twisted. A loose or twisted seat belt will not protect you properly in an accident.
- Do not place anything near the buckle. This may adversely affect the buckle and cause it to function improperly.
- Always replace your pre-tensioners after activation or an accident.
- NEVER inspect, service, repair or replace the pre-tensioners yourself. This must be done by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- Do not hit the seat belt assemblies.

WARNING

Do not touch the pre-tensioner seat belt assemblies for several minutes after they have been activated. When the pre-tensioner seat belt mechanism deploys during a collision, the pre-tensioner can become hot and can burn you.

CAUTION

Body work on the front area of the vehicle may damage the pre-tensioner seat belt system. Therefore, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer.



The Pre-Tensioner Seat Belt System consists mainly of the following components. Their locations are shown in the illustration above:

- (1) SRS air bag warning light
- (2) Retractor pre-tensioner (front)
- (3) SRS control module
- (4) Emergency fastening device
- (5) Retractor pre-tensioner (rear)

NOTICE

The sensor that activates the SRS control module is connected with the pre-tensioner seat belts. The SRS air bag warning light on the instrument cluster will illuminate for approximately 6 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position

If the pre-tensioner is not working properly, the warning light will illuminate even if the SRS air bag is not malfunctioning. If the warning light does not illuminate, stays illuminated or illuminates when the vehicle is being driven, we recommend the pre-tensioner seat belts and/or SRS control module be inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

i Information

- Pre-tensioner seat belts may be activated in certain frontal or side collisions.
- When the pre-tensioner seat belts are activated, a loud noise may be heard and fine dust, which may appear to be smoke, may be visible in the passenger compartment. These are normal operating conditions and are not hazardous.
- Although it is non-toxic, the fine dust may cause skin irritation and should not be inhaled for prolonged periods. Wash all exposed skin areas thoroughly after an accident in which the pre-tensioner seat belts were activated.

Additional seat belt safety precautions

Seat belt use during pregnancy

Seat belts should always be used during pregnancy. The best way to protect your unborn child is to protect yourself by always wearing a seat belt.

Pregnant women should always wear a lap-shoulder seat belt. Place the shoulder belt across your chest and away from your neck. Place the lap belt below your belly so that it fits SNUGLY across your hips and pelvic bone, under the rounded part of the belly.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to an unborn child during an accident, pregnant women should **NEVER** place the lap portion of the seat belt above or over the area of the abdomen where the unborn child is located.

Seat belt use and children

Infant and small children

Most countries have Child Restraint System laws which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint System devices, including booster seats. The age at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs between countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling. Infant and Child Restraint System must be properly placed and installed in a rear seat.

For more information refer to the “Child Restraint Systems” in this chapter.

WARNING

ALWAYS properly restrain infants and small children in a Child Restraint System appropriate for the child's height and weight.

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death to a child and other passengers, **NEVER** hold a child on your lap or arms when the vehicle is moving. The violent forces created during an accident will tear the child from your arms and throw the child against the interior of the vehicle.

Small children are best protected from injury in an accident when properly restrained in the rear seat by a Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards. Before buying any Child Restraint System, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards. The Child Restraint System must be appropriate for your child's height and weight. Check the label on the Child Restraint System for this information. Refer to "Child Restraint Systems" in this chapter.

Larger children

Children under age 13 and who are too large for a booster seat should always occupy the rear seat and use the available lap/shoulder belts. A seat belt should lie across the upper thighs and be snug across the shoulder and chest to restrain the child safely. Check seat belt fit periodically.

A child's squirming could put the seat belt out of position. In the event of an accident, children are afforded the best safety, restrained by a proper Child Restraint System in the rear seats.

If a larger child over age 13 must be seated in the front seat, the child must be securely restrained by the available lap/shoulder belt and the seat should be placed in the rear-most position.

If the shoulder belt portion slightly touches the child's neck or face, try placing the child closer to the centre of the vehicle. If the shoulder belt still touches their face or neck, they need to be returned to an appropriate booster seat in the rear seat.

WARNING

- **Always make sure larger children's seat belts are worn and properly adjusted.**
- **NEVER allow the shoulder belt to contact the child's neck or face.**
- **Do not allow more than one child to use a single seat belt.**

Seat belt use and injured people

A seat belt should be used when an injured person is being transported. Consult a doctor for specific recommendations.

One person per seat belt

Two people (including children) should never attempt to use a single seat belt. This could increase the severity of injuries in case of an accident.

Do not lie down

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the protections of your restraint system (seat belts and/or air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seatback.

Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

During an accident, you could be thrown into the seat belt, causing neck or other injuries.

The more the seat back is reclined, the greater the chance for the passenger's hips to slide under the lap belt or the passenger's neck to strike the shoulder belt.

 WARNING

- **NEVER** ride with a reclined seatback when the vehicle is moving.
- **Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop.**
- **The driver and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly restrained, and with the seatbacks upright.**

Care of seat belts

Seat belt systems should never be disassembled or modified. In addition, care should be taken to ensure that seat belts and belt hardware are not damaged by seat hinges, doors or other abuse.

Periodic inspection

All seat belts should be inspected periodically for wear or damage of any kind. Any damaged parts should be replaced as soon as possible.

Keep belts clean and dry

Seat belts should be kept clean and dry. If seat belts become dirty, they can be cleaned by using a mild soap solution and warm water. Bleach, dye, strong detergents or abrasives should not be used because they may damage and weaken the fabric.

When to replace seat belts

The entire seat belt assembly or assemblies should be replaced if the vehicle has been involved in an accident. This should be done even if no damage is visible. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEM (CRS)

Our recommendation:
Children always in the rear seats

WARNING

Children should always be properly restrained in the rear seats of the vehicle. Children of all ages are safer when riding in the rear seats. Never place a rearward-facing Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat.

Children under age 13 should always ride in the rear seats and must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. Children too large for a Child Restraint System must use the seat belts provided.

Most countries have regulations which require children to travel in approved Child Restraint Systems.

The laws governing the age or height/weight restrictions at which seat belts can be used instead of Child Restraint System differs between countries, so you should be aware of the specific requirements in your country, and where you are travelling.

Child Restraint Systems must be properly installed in the vehicle seat. Always use a commercially available Child Restraint System that meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.

Child Restraint System (CRS)

Infants and younger children must be restrained in an appropriate rearward-facing or forward-facing CRS that has first been properly secured to the seat of the vehicle. Read and comply with the instructions for installation and use provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

WARNING

- Always follow the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions for installation and use.
- Always properly restrain your child in the Child Restraint System.
- Do not use an infant carrier or a child safety seat that "hooks" over a seatback, it may not provide adequate protection in an accident.
- After an accident, we recommend an authorised Genesis dealer to check the Child Restraint System, seat belts, ISOFIX anchorages and top-tether anchorages.

Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)

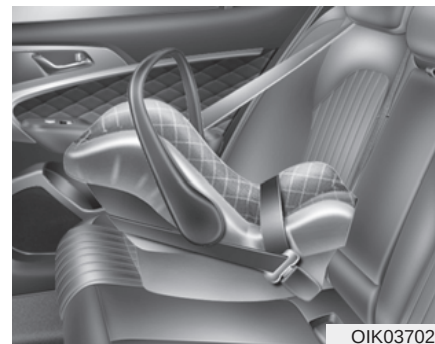
When selecting a Child Restraint System for your child, always:

- Make sure the CRS has a label certifying that it meets the requirements of the Australian/New Zealand standards.
- Select a Child Restraint System based on your child's height and weight. The required label or the instructions for use typically provide this information.
- Select a Child Restraint System that fits the vehicle seating position where it will be used.
- Read and comply with the warnings and instructions for installation and use provided with the Child Restraint System.

Child Restraint System types

There are three main types of Child Restraint Systems: rearward-facing, forward-facing and booster Child Restraint Systems.

They are classified according to the child's age, height and weight.



Rearward-facing Child Restraint System

WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER install either a forward or rear-facing CRS in the front passenger's seat.**

Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

A rearward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the child. The harness system holds the child in place, and in an accident, acts to keep the child positioned in the Child Restraint Systems and reduces the stress to the fragile neck and spinal cord.

All children under the age of one year must always ride in a rearward-facing Child Restraint System. There are different types of rearward-facing Child Restraint Systems: infant-only Child Restraint Systems can only be used rearward-facing. Convertible and 3-in-1 Child Restraint Systems typically have higher height and weight limits for the rearward-facing position, allowing you to keep your child rearward-facing for a longer period of time.

Keep using Child Restraint Systems in the rearward-facing position as long as children fit within the height and weight limits allowed by the Child Restraint System's manufacturer.



Forward-facing Child Restraint System

A forward-facing Child Restraint System provides restraint for the child's body with a harness. Keep children in a forward-facing Child Restraint System with a harness until they reach the top height or weight limit allowed by your Child Restraint System's manufacturer.

Once your child outgrows the forward-facing Child Restraint System, your child is ready for a booster seat.

Booster seats

A booster seat is a Child Restraint System designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's seat belt system. A booster seat positions the seat belt so that it fits properly over the stronger parts of your child's body. Keep your children in booster seats until they are big enough to fit in a seat belt properly.

For a seat belt to fit properly, the lap belt must lie comfortably across the upper thighs, not the abdomen. The shoulder belt should lie comfortably across the shoulder and chest and not across the neck or face. Children under age 13 must always be properly restrained to minimise the risk of injury in an accident, sudden stop or sudden manoeuvre.

Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)

WARNING

Before installing your Child Restraint System always:

Read and follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the Child Restraint System.

Failure to follow all warnings and instructions could increase the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH if an accident occurs.

WARNING

If the vehicle headrest prevents proper installation of a Child Restraint System, the headrest of the respective seating position should be readjusted or entirely removed.

After selecting a proper Child Restraint System for your child and checking that the Child Restraint System fits properly on the seating position, there are three general steps for a proper installation:

1. **Properly secure the Child Restraint System to the vehicle.** All Child Restraint Systems must be secured to the vehicle with the lap belt or lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the ISOFIX top-tether and/or ISOFIX anchorage.
2. **Make sure the Child Restraint System is firmly secured.** After installing a Child Restraint System to the vehicle, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is securely attached to the seat. A Child Restraint System secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, some side-to-side movement can be expected.

When installing a Child Restraint System, adjust the vehicle seat and seatback (up and down, forward and rearward) so that your child fits in the Child Restraint System in a comfortable manner.

3. **Secure the child in the Child Restraint System.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the Child Restraint System according to the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions.

CAUTION

A Child Restraint System in a closed vehicle can become very hot. To prevent burns, check the seating surface and buckles before placing your child in the Child Restraint System.

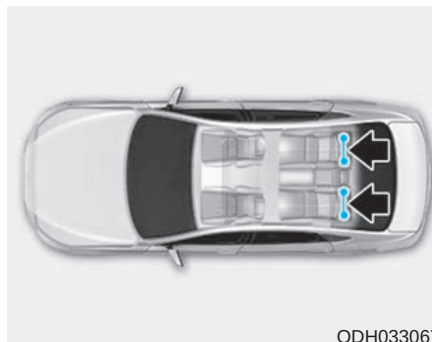
ISOFIX anchorage and top-tether anchorage (ISOFIX anchorage system) for children

The ISOFIX system holds a Child Restraint System during driving and in an accident. This system is designed to make installation of the Child Restraint System easier and reduce the possibility of improperly installing your Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system uses anchors in the vehicle and attachments on the Child Restraint System. The ISOFIX system eliminates the need to use seat belts to secure the Child Restraint System to the rear seats.

ISOFIX anchorages are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each ISOFIX seating position that will accommodate a Child Restraint System with lower attachments.

To use the ISOFIX system in your vehicle, you must have a Child Restraint System with ISOFIX attachments.

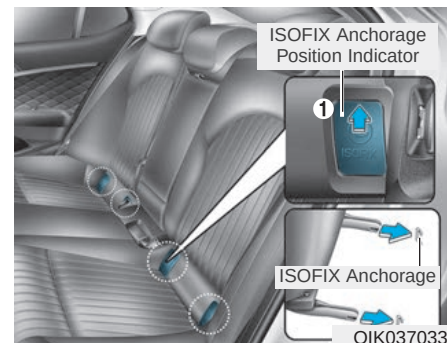
The Child Restraint System manufacturer will provide you with instructions on how to use the Child Restraint System with its attachments for the ISOFIX anchorages.



ISOFIX anchorages have been provided in the left and right outboard rear seating positions. Their locations are shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

Do not attempt to install a Child Restraint System using ISOFIX anchorages in the rear centre seating position. There are no ISOFIX anchorages provided for this seat. Using the outboard seat anchorages, for the CRS installation on the rear centre seating position, can damage the anchorages.



(1) : ISOFIX Anchor Position Indicator
(Type A- ⓐ , Type B- ⓑ)

ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seatback and the seat cushion of the rear seat left and right outboard seating positions, indicated by the symbols.

To use the ISOFIX anchorages, push the upper portion of the ISOFIX anchorage cover.

Securing a Child Restraint System with the “ISOFIX Anchorage System”

To install an ISOFIX-compatible Child Restraint System in either of the rear outboard seating positions:

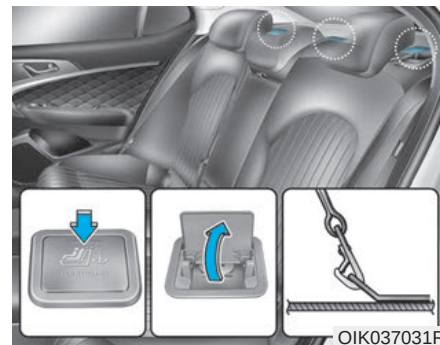
1. Move the seat belt buckle away from the ISOFIX anchorages.
2. Move any other objects away from the anchorages that could prevent a secure connection between the Child Restraint System and the ISOFIX anchorages.
3. Place the Child Restraint System on the vehicle seat, then attach the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages according to the instructions provided by the Child Restraint System manufacturer.
4. Follow the instructions of the Child Restraint System's manufacturer for proper installation and connection of the ISOFIX attachments on the Child Restraint System to the ISOFIX anchorages.

⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the ISOFIX system:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- To prevent the child from reaching and taking hold of unretracted seat belts, buckle all unused rear seat belts and retract the seat belt webbing behind the child. Children can be strangled if a shoulder belt becomes wrapped around their neck and the seat belt tightens.
- **NEVER** attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single anchorage. This could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or break.
- Always have the ISOFIX system inspected by your dealer after an accident. An accident can damage the ISOFIX system and may not properly secure the Child Restraint System.

Securing a Child Restraint System seat with “Top-tether Anchorage” system



Top-tether anchorages for Child Restraint Systems are located on the parcel tray.



1. Route the Child Restraint System top-tether strap over the seatback. When routing the top tether strap, please follow the instructions of the Child Restraint Systems manufacturer.
2. Connect the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchorage, then tighten the top-tether strap according to the instructions of your Child Restraint System's manufacturer to firmly attach the Child Restraint System to the seat.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when installing the top-tether:

- Read and follow all installation instructions provided with your Child Restraint System.
- NEVER attach more than one Child Restraint System to a single ISOFIX top-tether anchorage. This could cause the anchorage or attachment to come loose or break.
- Do not attach the top-tether to anything other than the correct top-tether anchorage. It may not work properly if attached to something else.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted Child restraints.

Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder belt

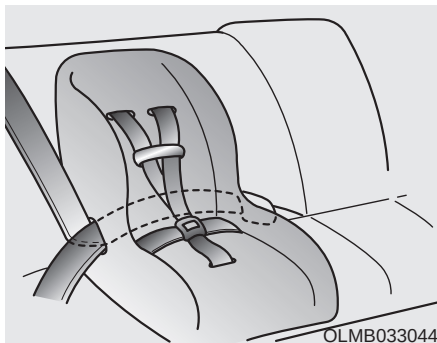
When not using the ISOFIX system, all Child Restraint Systems must be secured to a rear seat with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

WARNING

ALWAYS place a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat of the vehicle.

Placing a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the child restraint is struck by an inflating air bag.

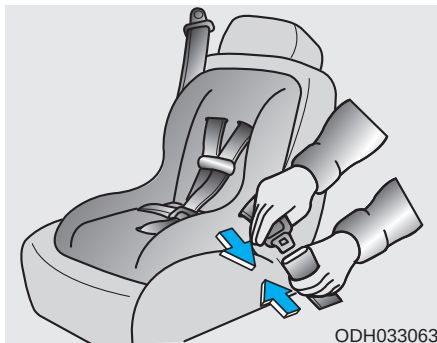
Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!



Installing a Child Restraint System with a lap/shoulder seat belt

To install a Child Restraint System on the rear seats, do the following:

1. Place the Child Restraint System on a rear seat and route the lap/shoulder seat belt around or through the Child Restraint System, following the Child Restraint System manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt webbing is not twisted.



2. Fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt latch into the buckle. Listen for the distinct "click" sound.

i Information

Position the release button so that it is easy to access in case of an emergency.



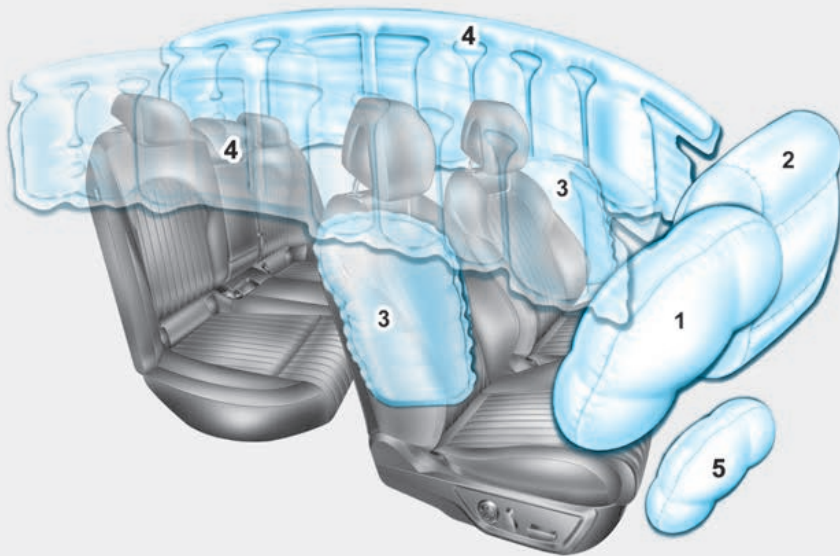
3. Remove as much slack from the seat belt as possible by pushing down on the Child Restraint System whilst feeding the shoulder seat belt back into the retractor.
4. Push and pull on the Child Restraint System to confirm that the seat belt is holding it firmly in place.

If your Child Restraint System manufacturer recommends the use of a top-tether with the lap/shoulder seat belt, see page 2-41.

To remove the Child Restraint System, press the release button on the buckle and then pull the lap/shoulder seat belt out of the Child Restraint System and allow the seat belt to retract fully.

If the child seat moves, readjust the length of the seat belt. In Australia/New Zealand the child restraint manufacturer's instructions must be followed when fitting the SRS to the vehicle.

AIR BAG – SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM



1. Driver's front air bag
2. Passenger's front air bag
3. Side air bag (front)
4. Curtain air bag
5. Driver's knee air bag

The actual air bags in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OIK037034AU

The vehicles are equipped with a Supplemental Air Bag System for the driver's seat and front passenger's seats.

The front air bags are designed to supplement the three-point seat belts. For these air bags to provide protection, the seat belts must be worn at all times when driving.

You can be severely injured or killed in an accident if you are not wearing a seat belt. Air bags are designed to supplement seat belts, but do not replace them. Also, air bags are not designed to deploy in every collision. In some accidents, the seat belts are the only restraint protecting you.

WARNING

AIR BAG SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

ALWAYS use seat belts and Child Restraint Systems - every trip, every time, everyone! Even with air bags, you can be seriously injured or killed in a collision if you are improperly restrained or not wearing your seat belt when the air bag inflates.

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

An inflating air bag could forcefully strike the infant or child causing serious or fatal injuries.

ABC - Always Buckle Children under age 13 in the back seat. It is the safest place for children of any age to ride. If a child age 13 or older must be seated in the front seat, he or she must be properly restrained and the seat should be moved as far back as possible.

All occupants should sit upright with the seatback in an upright position, centred on the seat cushion with their seat belt on, legs comfortably extended and their feet on the floor until the vehicle is parked and the engine is turned off. If an occupant is out of position during an accident, the rapidly deploying air bag may forcefully contact the occupant causing serious or fatal injuries.

You and your passengers should never sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bags or lean against the door or centre console.

Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.

Where are the air bags?

Driver's and passenger's front air bags

■ Driver's front air bag



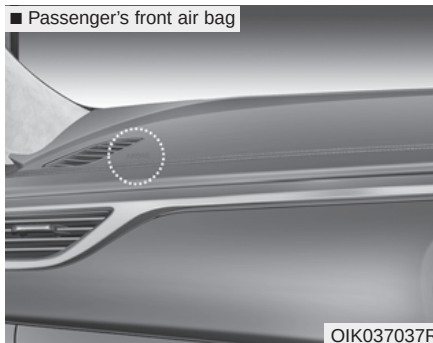
OIK037035R

■ Driver's knee air bag



OIK037036R

■ Passenger's front air bag



OIK037037R

Your vehicle is equipped with a Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) and lap/shoulder seat belts at both the driver and passenger seating positions.

The SRS consists of air bags which are located in the centre of the steering wheel, in the driver's side lower instrument panel below the steering wheel, and the passenger's side front instrument panel above the glove box.

The air bags are labelled with the letters "AIR BAG" embossed on the pad covers.

The purpose of the SRS is to provide the vehicle's driver and front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt system alone in case of a frontal impact of sufficient severity.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from inflating front air bags, take the following precautions:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Move your seat as far back as possible from front air bags, whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.
- Never lean against the door or centre console.
- Do not allow the front passenger to place their feet or legs on the instrument panel.

- No objects (such as crash pad cover, mobile phone holder, cup holder, perfume or stickers) should be placed over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, windscreen glass, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box. Such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a crash severe enough to cause the air bags to deploy.
- Do not attach any objects on the front windscreen and inside mirror.

Side air bags



The side air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and point of impact.

The side air bags on both sides of the vehicle are designed to deploy when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

Your vehicle is equipped with a side air bag in each front seat. The purpose of the air bag is to provide the vehicle's driver and the front passenger with additional protection than that offered by the seat belt alone.

The side air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

WARNING

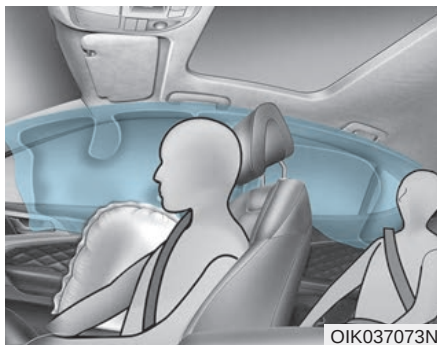
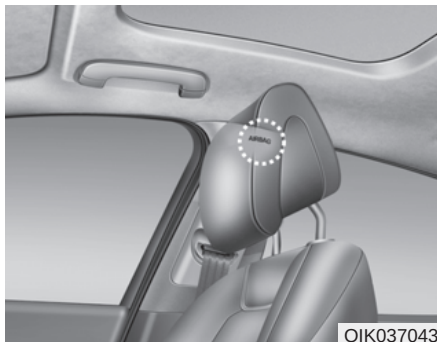
To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating side air bag, take the following precautions:

- Seat belts must be worn at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.

- **Hold the steering wheel at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimise the risk of injuries to your hands and arms.**
- Do not use any accessory seat covers. This could reduce or prevent the effectiveness of the system.
- Do not hang other objects except clothes. In an accident it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury especially when air bag is inflated.
- Do not place any objects over the air bag or between the air bag and yourself. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar.

- Do not place any objects between the door and the seat. They may become dangerous projectiles if the side air bag inflates.
- Do not install any accessories on the side or near the side air bags.
- Do not cause impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position position as this may cause the side air bags to inflate.
- If the seat or seat cover is damaged, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Curtain air bags



Curtain air bags are located along both sides of the roof rails above the front and rear doors.

They are designed to help protect the heads of the front seat occupants and the rear outboard seat occupants in certain side impact collisions.

The curtain air bags are designed to deploy during certain side impact collisions, depending on the crash severity, angle, speed and impact.

The curtain air bags on both sides of the vehicle are designed to deploy when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

The curtain air bags are not designed to deploy in all side impact or rollover situations.

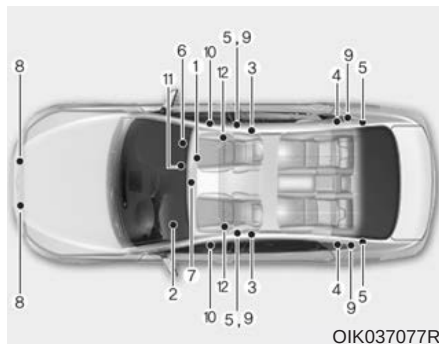
WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from an inflating curtain air bag, take the following precautions:

- All seat occupants must wear seat belts at all times to help keep occupants positioned properly.
- Properly secure any Child Restraint System as far away from the door as possible.

- Do not place any objects over the air bag. Also, do not attach any objects around the area the air bag inflates such as the door, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail.
- Do not hang other objects except clothes, especially hard or breakable objects. In an accident, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.
- Do not allow passengers to lean their heads or bodies onto doors, put their arms on the doors, stretch their arms out of the window, or place objects between the doors and seats.
- Do not open or repair the side curtain air bags.

How does the air bag system operate?



The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) consists of the following components:

- (1) Driver's front air bag module
- (2) Passenger's front air bag module
- (3) Side air bag modules
- (4) Curtain air bag modules
- (5) Retractor pre-tensioner assemblies
- (6) Air bag warning light
- (7) SRS control module (SRSCM)/ Rollover sensor

- (8) Front impact sensors
- (9) Side impact sensors
- (10) Side pressure sensors
- (11) Driver's knee air bag module
- (12) Emergency fastening device

The SRSCM continually monitors all SRS components whilst the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position to determine if a crash impact is severe enough to require air bag deployment or pretensioner seat belt deployment.



SRS warning light

The Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) air bag warning light on the instrument cluster displays the air bag symbol depicted in the illustration. The system checks the air bag electrical system for malfunctions. The light indicates that there is a potential problem with your air bag system, which could include your side and/or curtain air bags used for rollover protection.

WARNING

If your SRS malfunctions, the air bag may not inflate properly during an accident increasing the risk of serious injury or death.

If any of the following conditions occur, your SRS is malfunctioning:

- **The light does not turn on for approximately 6 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.**
- **The light stays on after illuminating for approximately 6 seconds.**
- **The light comes on whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
- **The light blinks when the engine is running.**

We recommend that an authorised Genesis dealer inspect the SRS as soon as possible if any of these conditions occur.

During a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration. If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the front air bags, at the time and with the force needed.

The front air bags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which seat belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the side air bags help provide protection in the event of a side impact or rollover by supporting the side upper body area.

- Air bags are activated (able to inflate if necessary) only when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.
- Air bags inflate in the event of certain frontal or side collisions to help protect the occupants from serious physical injury.
- There is no single speed at which the air bags will inflate. Generally, air bags are designed to inflate based upon the severity of a collision and its direction. These two factors determine whether the sensors produce an electronic deployment/inflation signal.

- Air bag deployment depends on a number of factors including vehicle speed, angles of impact and the density and stiffness of the vehicles or objects which your vehicle impacts during a collision. The determining factors are not limited to those mentioned above.

- The front air bags will completely inflate and deflate in an instant. It is virtually impossible for you to see the air bags inflate during an accident. It is much more likely that you will simply see the deflated air bags hanging out of their storage compartments after the collision.

In addition to inflating in serious side collisions, vehicles equipped with a rollover sensor, side and/or curtain air bags will inflate if the sensing system detects a rollover. When a rollover is detected, curtain air bags will remain inflated longer to help provide protection from ejection, especially when used in conjunction with the seat belts.

- To help provide protection, the air bags must inflate rapidly. The speed of air bag inflation is a consequence of an extremely short time in which to inflate the air bag between the occupant and the vehicle structures before the occupant impacts those structures. This speed of inflation reduces the risk of serious or life-threatening injuries and is thus a necessary part of air bag design.

However, the rapid air bag inflation can also cause injuries which can include facial abrasions, bruises and broken bones because the inflation speed also causes the air bags to expand with a great deal of force.

- There are even circumstances under which contact with the air bag can cause fatal injuries, especially if the occupant is positioned excessively close to the air bag.

You can take steps to reduce the risk of being injured by an inflating air bag. The greatest risk is sitting too close to the air bag. An air bag needs space to inflate. It is recommended that drivers sit as far back as possible leaving space between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest whilst still maintaining control of the vehicle.



When the SRSCM detects a sufficiently severe impact to the front of the vehicle, it will automatically deploy the front air bags.

■ Driver's front air bag (2)



Upon deployment, tear seams molded directly into the pad covers will separate under pressure from the expansion of the air bags. Further opening of the covers allows full inflation of the air bags.

A fully inflated air bag, in combination with a properly worn seat belt, slows the driver's or the front passenger's forward motion, reducing the risk of head and chest injury.

■ Driver's front air bag (3)



■ Passenger's front air bag



After complete inflation, the air bag immediately starts deflating, enabling the driver to maintain forward visibility and the ability to steer or operate other controls.

⚠ WARNING

To prevent objects from becoming dangerous projectiles when the passenger's air bag inflates:

- Do not install or place any objects (drink holder, CD holder, stickers, etc.) on the front passenger's panel above the glove box where the passenger's air bag is located.
- Do not install a container of liquid air freshener near the instrument cluster or on the instrument panel surface.

What to expect after an air bag inflates

After a frontal or side air bag inflates, it will deflate very quickly. Air bag inflation will not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windscreen or being able to steer. Curtain air bags may remain partially inflated for some time after they deploy.

⚠ WARNING

After an air bag inflates, take the following precautions:

- Open your windows and doors as soon as possible after impact to reduce prolonged exposure to the smoke and powder released by the inflating air bag.
- Do not touch the air bag storage area's internal components immediately after an air bag has inflated. The parts that come into contact with an inflating air bag may be very hot.
- Always wash exposed skin areas thoroughly with cold water and mild soap.
- We recommend that an authorised Genesis dealer replace the air bag immediately after deployment. Air bags are designed to be used only once.

Noise and smoke from inflating air bag

When the air bags inflate, they make a loud noise and may produce smoke and powder in the air inside of the vehicle. This is normal and is a result of the ignition of the air bag inflator. After the air bag inflates, you may feel substantial discomfort in breathing because of the contact of your chest with both the seat belt and the air bag, as well as from breathing the smoke and powder. The powder may aggravate asthma for some people. If you experience breathing problems after an air bag deployment, seek medical attention immediately.

Though the smoke and powder are nontoxic, they may cause irritation to the skin, eyes, nose, throat, etc. If this is the case, wash and rinse with cold water immediately and seek medical attention if the symptoms persist.

Do not install a Child Restraint System on the front passenger seat

OYDESA2042

Never install a Child Restraint System in the front passenger seat.

WARNING

- **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!**
- **NEVER use a rearward facing Child Restraint on a seat protected by an AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**
- **Never put a Child Restraint System in the front passenger's seat. If the front passenger air bag inflates, it would cause serious or fatal injuries.**

Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?

There are certain types of accidents in which the air bag would not be expected to provide additional protection. These include rear impacts, second or third collisions in multiple impact accidents, as well as low speed impacts. Damage to the vehicle indicates a collision energy absorption, and is not an indicator of whether or not an air bag should have inflated.

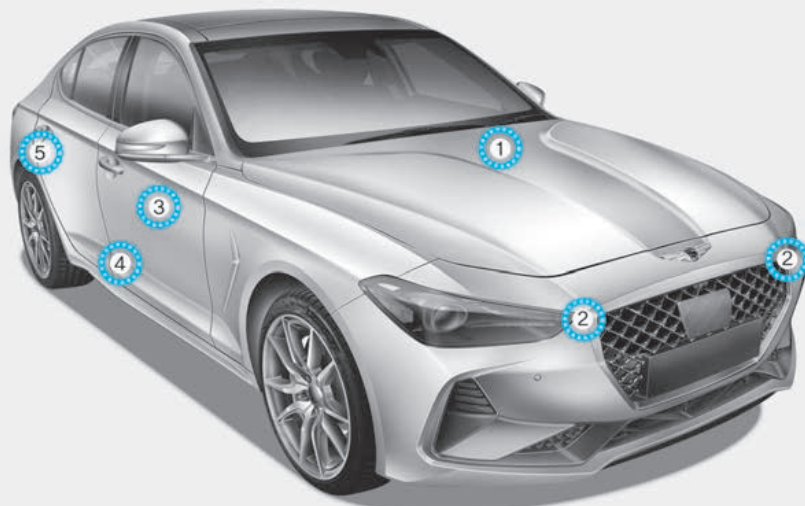
Air bag collision sensors

WARNING

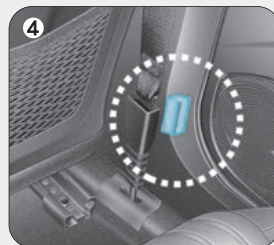
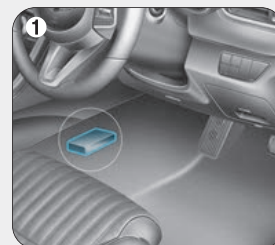
To reduce the risk of an air bag deploying unexpectedly and causing serious injury or death:

- **Do not hit or allow any objects to impact the locations where air bags or sensors are installed.**

- **Do not perform maintenance on or around the air bag sensors. If the location or angle of the sensors is altered, the air bags may deploy when they should not or may not deploy when they should.**
- **Do not install bumper guards or replace the bumper with a non-genuine part. This may adversely affect the collision and air bag deployment performance.**
- **Place the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position, when the vehicle is being towed to prevent inadvertent air bag deployment.**
- **We recommend that all air bag repairs are conducted by an authorised Genesis dealer.**

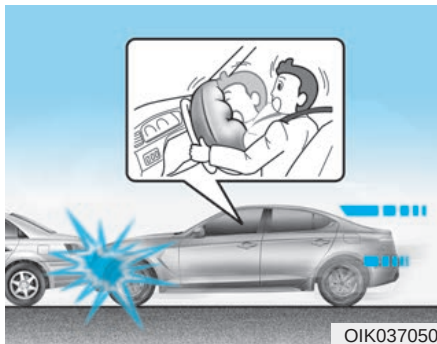


1. SRS control module
2. Front impact sensor
3. Side pressure sensor (front door)
4. Side impact sensor (B-pillar)
5. Side impact sensor (C-pillar)



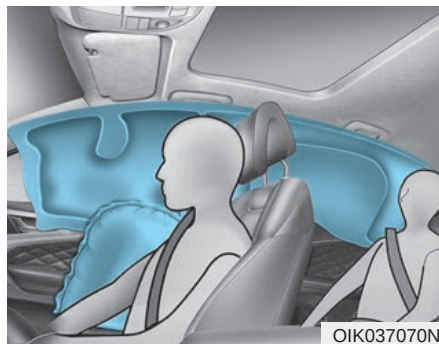
OIK037044R/OIK037045R/OIK037046R/OIK037047R/OIK037048/OIK037049

Air bag inflation conditions



Front air bags

Front air bags are designed to inflate in a frontal collision depending on the severity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



Side and curtain air bags

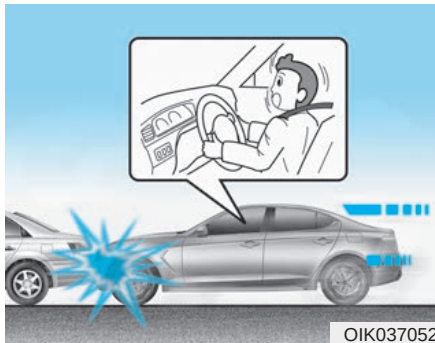
Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when an impact is detected by side collision sensors depending on the severity, speed or angles of impact resulting from a side impact collision.

Although the driver's and front passenger's air bags are designed to inflate in frontal collisions, they also may inflate in other types of collisions if the front impact sensors detect a sufficient impact. Side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate in side impact collisions, but they may inflate in other collisions if the side impact sensors detect a sufficient impact.

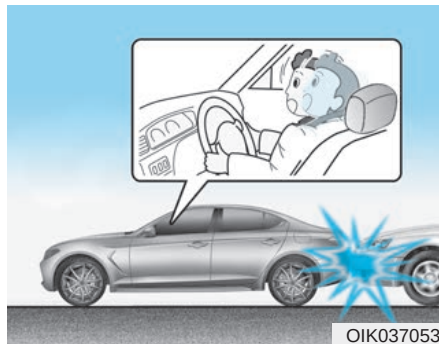
Also, the side and curtain air bags are designed to inflate when a rollover is detected by a rollover sensor.

If the vehicle chassis is impacted by bumps or objects on unimproved roads, the air bags may deploy. Drive carefully on unimproved roads or on surfaces not designed for vehicle traffic to prevent unintended air bag deployment.

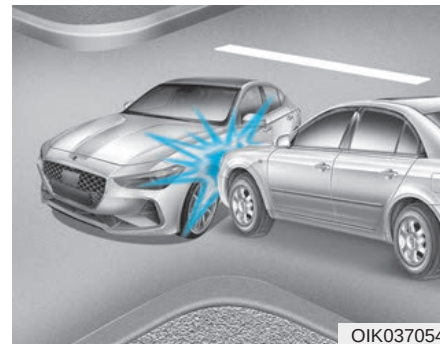
Air bag non-inflation conditions



In certain low-speed collisions the air bags may not deploy. The air bags are designed not to deploy in such cases because they may not provide benefits beyond the protection of the seat belts.

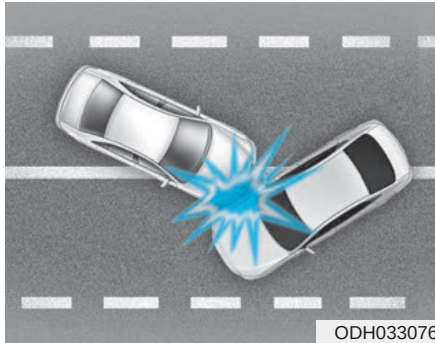


Front air bags are not designed to inflate in rear collisions, because occupants are moved rearward by the force of the impact. In this case, inflated air bags would not provide any additional benefit.



Front air bags may not inflate in side impact collisions, because occupants move in the direction of the collision, and thus in side impacts, front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

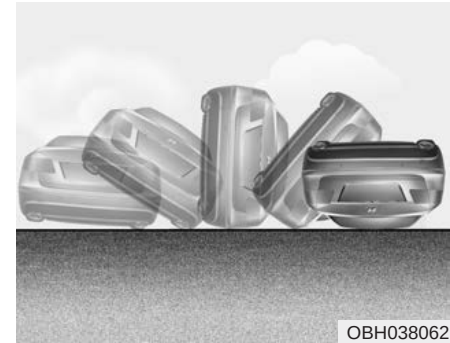
However, side and curtain air bags may inflate depending on the severity, vehicle speed and angles of impact.



In an angled collision, the force of impact may direct the occupants in a direction where the air bags would not be able to provide any additional benefit, and thus the sensors may not deploy any air bags.



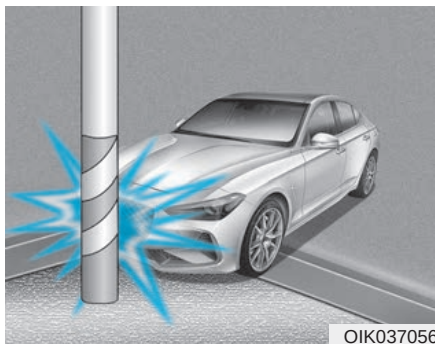
Just before impact, drivers often brake heavily. Such heavy braking lowers the front portion of the vehicle causing it to “ride” under a vehicle with a higher ground clearance. Air bags may not inflate in this “under-ride” situation because deceleration forces that are detected by sensors may be significantly reduced by such “underride” collisions.



Front air bags may not inflate in rollover accidents because front air bag deployment would not provide additional occupant protection.

i Information

The side and curtain air bags may inflate in a rollover situation, when it is detected by the rollover sensor.



OIK037056

Air bags may not inflate if the vehicle collides with objects such as utility poles or trees, where the point of impact is concentrated and the collision energy is absorbed by the vehicle structure.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) care

The SRS is virtually maintenance-free and there are no parts you can safely service by yourself. If the SRS air bag warning light does not illuminate when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position, or continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be immediately inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

We recommend any work on the SRS system, such as removing, installing, repairing, or any work on the steering wheel, the front passenger's panel, front seats and roof rails be performed by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Improper handling of the SRS system may result in serious personal injury.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death take the following precautions:

- Do not attempt to modify or disconnect the SRS components or wiring, including the addition of any kind of badges to the pad covers or modifications to the body structure.
- Do not place objects over or near the air bag modules on the steering wheel, instrument panel, and the front passenger's panel above the glove box.
- Clean the air bag pad covers with a soft cloth moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could adversely affect the air bag covers and proper deployment of the system.
- We recommend that inflated air bags be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

- If components of the air bag system must be discarded, or if the vehicle must be scrapped, certain safety precautions must be observed. Consult an authorised Genesis dealer for the necessary information. Failure to follow these precautions could increase the risk of personal injury.

Additional safety precautions

Passengers should not move out of or change seats when the vehicle is moving. A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or be ejected from the vehicle.

Do not use any accessories on seat belts. Devices claiming to improve occupant comfort or reposition the seat belt can reduce the protection provided by the seat belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Do not modify the front seats.

Modification of the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components or side air bags.

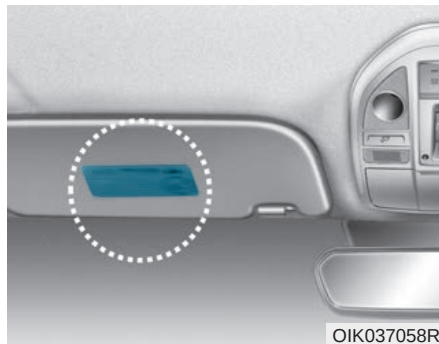
Do not place items under the front seats. Placing items under the front seats could interfere with the operation of the supplemental restraint system sensing components and wiring harnesses.

Do not cause impact to the doors. Impact to the doors when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position may cause the air bags to inflate.

Adding equipment to or modifying your air bag equipped vehicle

If you modify your vehicle by changing your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or ride height, this may affect the operation of your vehicle's air bag system.

Air bag warning labels



Air bag warning labels are attached to alert the driver and passengers of potential risks of the air bag system.

Be sure to read all of the information about the air bags that are installed on your vehicle in this Owner's Manual.

ACTIVE BONNET LIFT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The active bonnet lift system can reduce a risk of injury to pedestrians by raising the bonnet in certain accident situations. The active bonnet lift system has additional deformation space under the bonnet, which is made available in case of subsequent head impact.

System activation

Prerequisite for activation

The Engine Start/Stop button is in the START position and the vehicle speed is between about 25 km/h and 50 km/h.

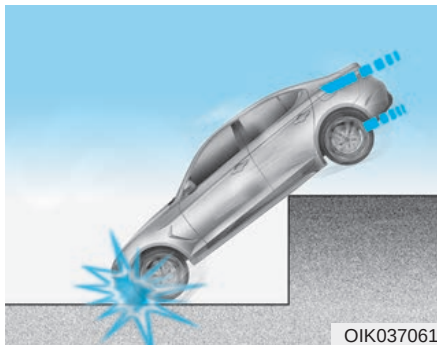
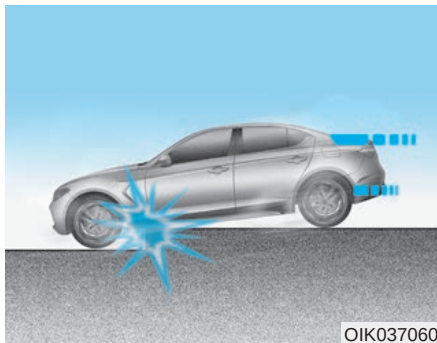
i Information

- Active bonnet lift system repair

- If the active bonnet lift system has been activated, do not place the bonnet back by yourself. We recommend that the system be repaired by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If you change or repair the front bumper, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

System activation

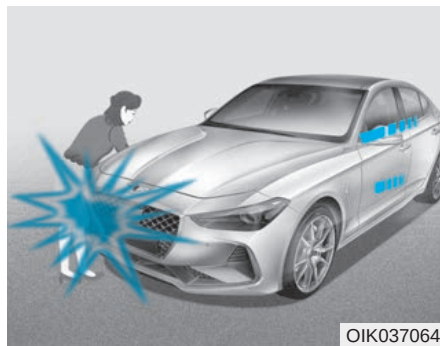
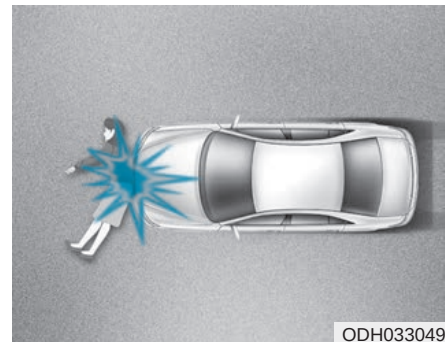
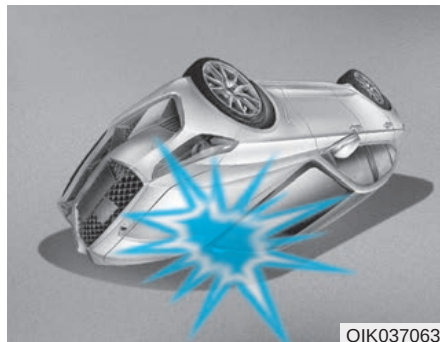
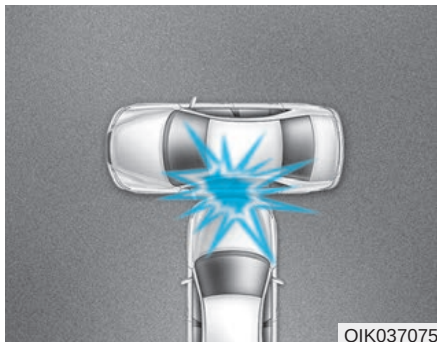
The active bonnet lift system is designed to work in a frontal collision depending on the intensity, speed or angles of impact of the front collision.



The system may activate when:

- The vehicle falls in the gutter or from a high place
- An impact is detected by a frontal collision without pedestrians in front.
- Certain high-speed frontal or angled collision with a vehicle or barrier.

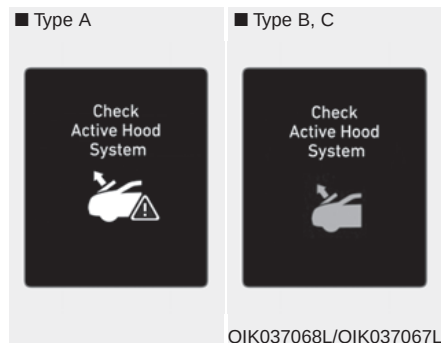
System limitation



The system will not activate when:

- In side, rear collisions and rollover accidents. The vehicle can detect only frontal collision.
- The front bumper is damaged or modified.
- The vehicle is in an angled frontal collision with a pedestrian.
- A pedestrian is lying on the road.
- A pedestrian has an object to absorb the shock such as: a suit case, buggy or cart.

System malfunction



If there is a problem with the system a message will appear on the instrument cluster LCD display.

This warning message means that the protection of pedestrians by the active bonnet lift system is not operating properly.

If the warning message is displayed, we recommend that the system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised Genesis dealer.

i Information

- **Do not remove or change the components and the wiring of the active bonnet system.**
- **Do not change the front bumper or the body structure.**
- **Do not install or assemble any after-market accessory on the front bumper or cover.**
- **When replacing tyres, make sure they are the same size as those originally supplied with the vehicle. If you drive with different tyre or wheel sizes, the active bonnet lift system may not work normally.**

The situations mentioned above may cause a malfunction of the active bonnet lift system.

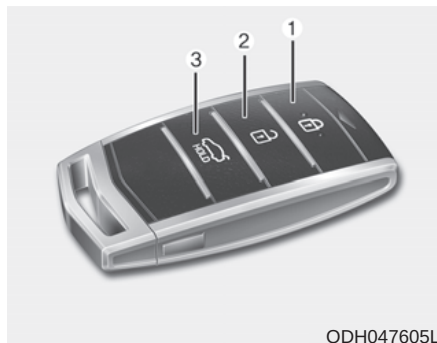
Convenient features of your vehicle

Accessing your vehicle	3-3
Smart key	3-3
Immobiliser system	3-8
Door locks	3-9
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle	3-9
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle	3-10
Auto door lock/unlock features	3-12
Child safety rear door locks	3-12
Theft-alarm system	3-13
Driver position memory system	3-14
Storing memory positions	3-14
Recalling memory position	3-15
Easy access function	3-15
Driver position memory system reset	3-16
Electric power steering (EPS)	3-17
Steering wheel	3-17
Tilt steering / Telescopic steering	3-18
Heated steering wheel	3-19
Horn	3-20
Mirrors	3-20
Inside rearview mirror	3-20
Outside rearview mirrors	3-22
Reverse parking aid function	3-24
Windows	3-25
Power windows	3-25
Remote window closing function	3-29
Sunroof	3-30
Sunshade	3-31
Sliding the sunroof	3-31
Tilting the sunroof	3-32
Closing the sunroof	3-32
Resetting the sunroof	3-33
Sunroof open warning	3-34
Exterior features	3-35
Bonnet	3-35
Non-Powered Boot	3-36
Power Boot	3-39
Smart boot	3-45
Fuel filler door	3-48
Instrument cluster	3-51
3D Cluster (for Cluster type C)	3-53
Instrument cluster control	3-56
Gauges and metres	3-57
Transmission shift indicator	3-61
Warning and indicator lights	3-62
LCD display messages	3-75
LCD display	3-82
LCD display control	3-82
LCD display modes	3-83

Trip computer	3-97	Windscreen defrosting and defogging	3-144
Trip modes	3-97	To defog inside windscreen	3-144
Head up display (HUD)	3-101	To defrost outside windscreen	3-145
Lighting	3-104	Defogging logic	3-145
Exterior lights	3-104	Auto defogging system	3-146
Welcome system	3-112	Defroster	3-147
Interior lights	3-114	Climate control additional features	3-148
Wipers and washers	3-117	Automatic ventilation	3-148
Windscreen wipers	3-117	Sunroof inside air recirculation	3-148
Windscreen washers	3-118	Smart ventilation	3-149
Driver assist system	3-120	Storage compartment	3-150
Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system	3-120	Centre console storage	3-150
Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system	3-122	Glove box	3-150
Rear view monitor (Type A)	3-126	Sunglasses holder	3-151
Rear view monitor (Type B)	3-127	Interior features	3-152
Surround view monitor	3-128	Ashtray	3-152
Automatic climate control system	3-132	Cup holder	3-152
Automatic heating and air conditioning	3-133	Sunvisor	3-153
Manual heating and air conditioning	3-134	Power outlet	3-154
System operation	3-140	USB charger	3-155
System maintenance	3-141	Wireless mobile phone charging system	3-156
		Clock	3-158
		Coat hook	3-158
		Floor mat anchors	3-159
		Luggage net	3-160

ACCESSING YOUR VEHICLE

Smart key

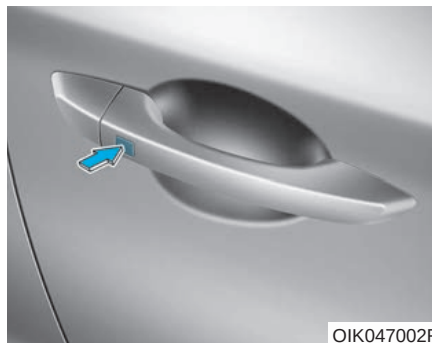


ODH047605L

Your Genesis vehicle uses a Smart Key, which you can use to lock or unlock a door (and boot) and even start the engine.

1. Door Lock
2. Door Unlock
3. Boot Open

Locking



OIK047002R

To lock:

1. Close all doors, bonnet and boot.
2. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Lock button (1) on the smart key.

3. The hazard warning lights will blink. Also, the outside rearview mirrors will fold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.**

4. Make sure the doors are locked by checking the position of the door lock button inside the vehicle.

i Information

The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle.

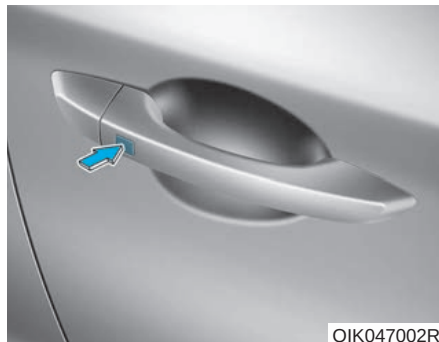
If pressing the outside door handle button, the doors will not lock and the chime will sound for 3 seconds if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is in the vehicle.
- The Engine Start/Stop button is in ACC or ON position.
- Any door except the boot is open.

WARNING

Do not leave the smart key in your vehicle with unsupervised children. Unsupervised children could press the Engine Start/Stop button and may operate power windows or other controls, or even make the vehicle move, which could result in serious injury or death.

Unlocking



To unlock:

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Either press the door handle button or press the Door Unlock button (2) on the smart key.
3. The doors will unlock. The hazard warning lights will blink two times. Also, the outside rearview mirror will unfold, if 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.**

Information

- The door handle button will only operate when the smart key is within 0.7~1 m from the outside door handle. Other people can also open the doors without the smart key in their possession.
- After unlocking the doors, the doors will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless a door is opened.

Boot opening

To open:

1. Carry the smart key.
2. Either press the boot handle button or press the Boot Open button (3) on the smart key for more than 1 second.
3. The hazard warning lights will blink two times.

Once the boot is opened and then closed, the boot will lock automatically.

Information

After unlocking the boot, the boot will lock automatically after 30 seconds unless the boot is opened.

Start-up

You can start the engine without inserting the key. For detailed information refer to the Engine Start/Stop button in chapter 5.

NOTICE

To prevent damaging the smart key:

- Keep the smart key away from water or any liquid and fire. If the inside of the smart key gets damp (due to drinks or moisture), or is heated, internal circuits may malfunction and may not be covered the vehicle warranty.
- Avoid dropping or throwing the smart key.
- Protect the smart key from extreme temperatures.

NOTICE

Always have the smart key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the smart key is left near the vehicle, the vehicle battery may be discharged.

Mechanical key



Press and hold the release button (1) and remove the mechanical key (2). Insert the mechanical key into the key hole on the door.

To reinstall the mechanical key, put the key into the hole and push it until a click sound is heard.

Loss of a smart key

A maximum of two smart keys can be registered to a single vehicle. If you happen to lose your smart key, it is recommended that you should immediately take the vehicle and remaining key to your authorised Genesis dealer or tow the vehicle, if necessary.

Smart key precautions

The smart key will not work if any of the following occur:

- The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
- The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
- Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.

When the smart key does not work correctly, open and close the door with the mechanical key. If you have a problem with the smart key, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

If the smart key is in close proximity to your mobile phone, the signal could be blocked by your mobile phone's normal operational signals. This is especially important when the phone is active such as making and receiving calls, text messaging, and/or sending/receiving emails.

Avoid placing the smart key and your mobile phone in the same location and always try to maintain an adequate distance between the two devices.

WARNING

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices.

Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. If the keyless entry system is inoperative due to changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, it will not be covered by your manufacturer's vehicle warranty.

NOTICE

Keep the smart key away from electromagnetic materials that block electromagnetic waves to the key surface.

Battery replacement



If the smart key is not working properly, try replacing the battery with a new one.

Battery type: CR2032

To replace the battery:

1. Carefully pry open the rear cover of the smart key.
2. Remove the old battery and insert the new battery. Make sure the battery position is correct.
3. Reinstall the rear cover of the smart key.

If you suspect your smart key might have sustained some damage, or you feel your smart key is not working correctly, it is recommended that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

Information



An inappropriately disposed battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Restrictions in handling keys



When leaving keys with car park and valet attendants, the following procedures will ensure your vehicle's glove box compartment can only be opened with the mechanical key.

To lock:

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Lock the glove box using the mechanical key.
3. Leave the smart key with the attendant and keep the mechanical key with you.

The smart key can only be used to start the engine and operate door locks.

To unlock:

Open the glove box with the mechanical key.

Immobiliser system

The immobiliser system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the immobiliser system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, the system does not recognise the coding of the key.

Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, then press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position again.

The system may not recognise your key's coding if another immobiliser key or other metal object (i.e., key chain) is near the key. The engine may not start because the metal may interrupt the transponder signal from transmitting normally.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of the key, it is recommended that you contact your authorised Genesis dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

WARNING

In order to prevent theft of your vehicle, do not leave spare keys anywhere in your vehicle.

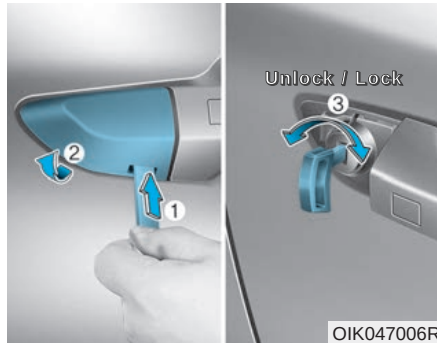
NOTICE

The transponder in your key is an important part of the immobiliser system. It is designed to give years of trouble-free service, however you should avoid exposure to moisture, static electricity and rough handling. Immobiliser system malfunction could occur.

DOOR LOCKS

Operating door locks from outside the vehicle

Mechanical key



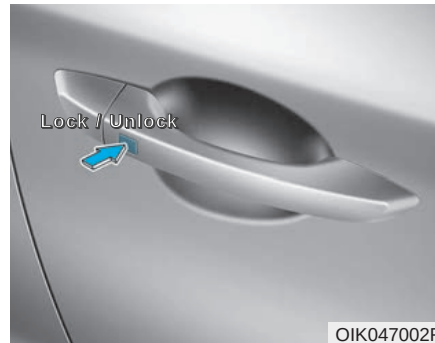
First, remove the cover (1~2), and then turn the key toward the rear of the vehicle to unlock and toward the front of the vehicle to lock (3).

If you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key, all vehicle doors will lock/unlock automatically (if equipped).

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

Smart key



To lock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle when carrying the smart key with you or press the door lock button on the smart key.

To unlock the doors, press the button on the outside door handle when carrying the smart key with you or press the door unlock button on the smart key.

Once the doors are unlocked, they may be opened by pulling the door handle.

When closing the door, push the door by hand. Make sure that doors are closed securely.

i Information

- In cold and wet climates, door lock and door mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- If the door is locked/unlocked multiple times in rapid succession with either the vehicle key or door lock switch, the system may stop operating temporarily in order to protect the circuit and prevent damage to system components.

Operating door locks from inside the vehicle

With the door lock button



- To unlock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Unlock” position. The red mark (2) on the door lock button will be visible.
- To lock a door, push the door lock button (1) to the “Lock” position. If the door is locked properly, the red mark (2) on the door lock button will not be visible.
- To open a door, pull the door handle (3) towards you.

- If the inner door handle of the driver's (or front passenger's) door is pulled when the door lock button is in the lock position, the button is unlocked and the door opens.
- Doors cannot be locked if the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is open.

i Information

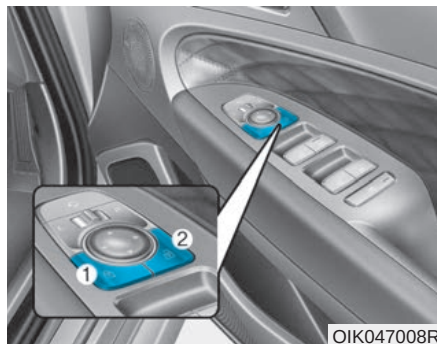
If a power door lock ever fails to function when you are in the vehicle try one or more of the following techniques to exit:

- Operate the door unlock feature repeatedly (both electronic and manual) whilst simultaneously pulling on the door handle.
- Operate the other door locks and handles, front and rear.
- Lower a front window and use the mechanical key to unlock the door from outside.

i Information

When the vehicle's battery leave the vehicle, make sure all the doors are locked. You can lock the driver's door with a key and the rest of the doors with the lock button above the door inside handle.

With the central door lock/unlock switch



When pressing the (🔒) portion (1) of the switch, all vehicle doors will lock. When pressing the (🔓) portion (2) of the switch, all vehicle doors will unlock. If the smart key is in the vehicle and any door is opened, the doors will not lock even though the lock button (1) of the central door lock switch is pressed.

⚠ WARNING

- The doors should always be fully closed and locked when the vehicle is in motion. If the doors are unlocked, the risk of being thrown from the vehicle in a crash is increased.
- Do not pull the inner door handle of the driver's or passenger's door when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

Do not leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle. An enclosed vehicle can become extremely hot, causing death or serious injury to unattended children or animals who cannot escape the vehicle. Children might operate features of the vehicle that could injure them, or they could encounter other harm, possibly from someone gaining entry to the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Leaving your vehicle unlocked can allow theft or entry into the vehicle.

To secure your vehicle, when depressing the brake, shift the vehicle to the P (Park) position, engage the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position, close all windows, lock all doors, and always take the smart key with you.

⚠ WARNING

Opening a door when something is approaching may cause damage or injury. Be careful when opening doors and watch for vehicles, motorcycles, bicycles or pedestrians approaching the vehicle in the path of the door.

WARNING

If you stay in the vehicle for a long time whilst the weather is very hot or cold, there are risks of injuries or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when someone is in the vehicle.

Auto door lock/unlock features

Impact sensing door unlock system

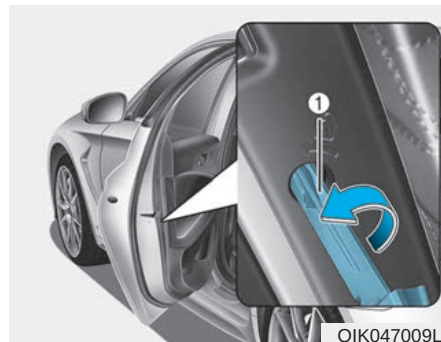
All doors will be automatically unlocked when an impact causes the air bags to deploy.

Speed sensing door lock system

All doors will be automatically locked when vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h.

You can activate or deactivate the Auto Door Lock/Unlock features from the User Settings mode on the LCD display. **For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.**

Child safety rear door locks



The child safety lock is provided to help prevent children seated in the rear seat from accidentally opening the rear doors. The rear door safety locks should be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

The child safety lock is located on the edge of each rear door. When the child safety lock is in the lock position, the rear door will not open if the inner door handle is pulled.

To lock the child safety lock, insert a key (or screwdriver) (1) into the hole and turn it to the lock position.

To allow a rear door to be opened from inside the vehicle, unlock the child safety lock.

WARNING

If children accidentally open the rear doors when the vehicle is in motion, they could fall out of the vehicle. The rear door child safety locks should always be used whenever children are in the vehicle.

THEFT-ALARM SYSTEM

This system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables. The horn will sound and the hazard warning lights will blink continuously if any of the following occur:

- A door is opened without using the smart key.
- The boot is opened without using the smart key.
- The engine bonnet is opened.

The alarm continues for 30 seconds, then the system resets. To turn off the alarm, unlock the doors with the smart key.

The Theft Alarm System automatically sets 30 seconds after you lock the doors and the boot. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the boot from outside the vehicle with the smart key or by pressing the button on the outside of the door handles with the smart key in your possession.

The hazard warning lights will blink once to indicate the system is armed.

Once the security system is set, opening any door, the boot, or the bonnet without using the smart key will cause the alarm to activate.

The Theft Alarm System will not set if the bonnet, the boot, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check that the bonnet, the boot, or the doors are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Information

- **Do not lock the doors until all passengers have left the vehicle. If the remaining passenger leaves the vehicle when the system is armed, the alarm will be activated.**
- **If the vehicle is not disarmed with the smart key, open the doors by using the mechanical key and start the engine and wait for 30 seconds.**
- **When the system is disarmed but a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds, the system will be rearmed.**

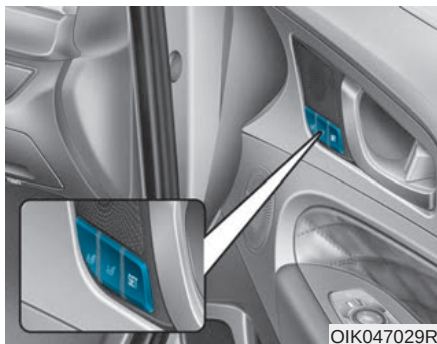


Information

Vehicles equipped with a theft alarm system will have a label attached to the vehicle with the following words:

1. WARNING
2. SECURITY SYSTEM

DRIVER POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The Driver Position Memory System is provided to store and recall the following memory settings with a simple button operation.

- Driver's seat position
- Outside rearview mirror position
- Steering wheel (electric type) position
- Instrument panel illumination intensity
- Head Up Display (HUD) position and brightness (if equipped)

WARNING

Never attempt to operate the Driver Position Memory System when the vehicle is moving.

This could result in loss of control, and an accident causing death, serious injury, or property damage.

Information

- **If the battery is disconnected, the memory settings will be erased.**
- **If the Driver Position Memory System does not operate normally, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.**

Storing memory positions

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Adjust the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity and head-up display height/brightness to the desired position.
3. Press the SET button. The system will beep once and notify you to "Press button to save settings" on the LCD display.
4. Press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) within 4 seconds. The system will beep twice when the memory has been successfully stored.
5. "Driver 1 (or 2) settings saved" will appear on the LCD display.

Recalling memory position

1. Shift to P (Park) whilst the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2). The system will beep once, and then the driver's seat position, outside rearview mirror position, steering wheel position, instrument panel illumination intensity and head-up display height/brightness will automatically adjust to the stored positions.
3. "Driver 1 (or 2) settings applied" will appear on the LCD display.

i Information

- When recalling the "1" memory position, pressing the SET or 1 button temporarily stops the adjustment of the recalled memory position. Pressing the 2 button recalls the "2" memory position.
- When recalling the "2" memory position, pressing the SET or 2 button temporarily stops the adjustment of the recalled memory position. Pressing the 1 button recalls the "1" memory position.

- When recalling the stored positions, pressing one of the control buttons for the driver's seat, outside rearview mirror, steering wheel, instrument panel illumination or head-up display will cause the movement of that component to stop and move in the direction that the control button is pressed.

Easy access function

The system will move the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically as follows:

- Exiting the vehicle:

The driver's seat will move rearward and the steering wheel will move upward when the driver's door is opened and the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position with the gear in P (Park).

However, the driver's seat may not move rearward if there is not enough space between the driver's seat and the rear seats.

Also, on a regular basis, the steering wheel will also move forward to adjust its location by itself.

- Entering the vehicle:

The driver's seat and steering wheel will move back to its original position when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is closed with the smart key in possession or when the Engine Start/Stop button is changed to the ACC/ON/START position from the OFF position.

- When you enter or exit the vehicle, the seat bolster is automatically adjusted (if equipped).
 - When you enter, the seat bolster is adjusted to the position set by the driver.
 - When you exit, the seat bolster is adjusted to the default position.

You can activate or deactivate the Easy Access Function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.

- Seat easy access: 'Convenience → Seat easy access → Off/Normal/Extended'.
- Steering Easy Access: 'Convenience → Steering easy access → On/Off'.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.



CAUTION

The driver should be cautious when using this function to ensure no injury to a passenger or child on the back seat. In case of emergency the driver has to stop movement of the front seat (when easy access feature is activated) by pressing the SET button or any of the driver seat control switches.

Driver position memory system reset

If the Driver position memory system does not work properly, initialise the system as follows.

How to initialise:

1. Stop the vehicle and open the driver's door with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position and the vehicle shifted to P (Park).
2. Pull the driver's seat forward as far as possible and have the seatback upright as much as possible using the driver's seat forward/rearward adjustment and seatback angle (recline) switches.
3. Push the SET button and seat forward movement switch for 2 seconds simultaneously.

Initialisation process:

1. Initialisation begins as the alarm sounds.
2. The seat and seatback will automatically move rearwards. The alarm sound will continue whilst the system is in operation.
3. Initialisation will be complete after the seat and seatback move to the centre with an alarm sound. If, however, any of the following occur, the initialisation process will come to a stop and the alarm sound will stop as well.
 - Pusing the driving position memory system button.
 - Pushing the driver's seat height adjustment switch.
 - Shifting from P (Park) to other positions.
 - Driving speed exceeds 3 km/h.
 - The driver's door is closed.

STEERING WHEEL

Electric power steering (EPS)

This system assists you with steering the vehicle. If the engine is off or if the power steering system becomes inoperative, the vehicle may still be steered, but it will require increased steering effort.

Also, the steering effort becomes heavier as the vehicle's speed increases and becomes lighter as the vehicle's speed decreases for better control of the steering wheel.

Should you notice any change in the effort required to steer during normal vehicle operation, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

- If the electric power steering system does not operate normally, the warning light (⚠) will illuminate or blink on the instrument cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.
- When abnormality is detected in the electric power steering system, to prevent a deadly accident, the steering assist function will stop. At this time, the warning light turns on or blinks on the cluster. The steering wheel may become difficult to control or operate. Have your vehicle checked immediately, after moving the vehicle to a safe zone.

Information

The following symptoms may occur during normal vehicle operation:

- The steering effort may be high immediately after placing the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position. This happens as the system performs the EPS system diagnostics. When the diagnostics are completed, the steering wheel will return to its normal condition.
- When the battery voltage is low, you might have to put more steering effort. However, it is a temporary condition so that it will return to normal condition after charging the battery.
- A click noise may be heard from the EPS relay after the Engine Start/Stop button is placed in the ON or OFF position.
- Motor noise may be heard when the vehicle has stopped or at a low driving speed.
- When you operate the steering wheel in low temperatures, abnormal noise may occur. If the temperature rises, the noise will disappear. This is a normal condition.

- When the vehicle is stationary, if you turn the steering wheel all the way to the left or right continuously, the steering wheel effort increases. This is not a system malfunction. As time passes, the steering wheel effort will return to its normal condition.

Tilt steering / Telescopic steering

WARNING

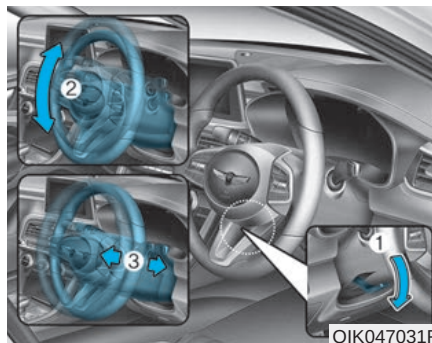
Never adjust the steering wheel whilst driving. You may lose steering control and cause severe personal injury, death or accidents.

Information

After adjustment, sometimes the lock-release lever may not lock the steering wheel.

It is not a malfunction. This occurs when two gears are not engaged correctly. In this case, adjust the steering wheel again and then lock the steering wheel.

Manual type



To change the steering wheel angle and height:

1. Pull down the lock-release lever (1).
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired angle (2) and height (3).
3. Pull up the lock-release lever to lock the steering wheel in place.

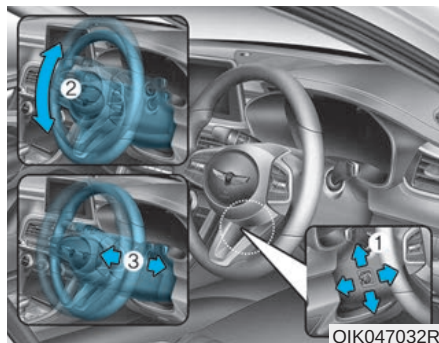
Push the steering wheel both up and down to be certain it is locked in position.



CAUTION

Whilst adjusting the steering wheel height, please do not push or pull it hard since the fixture can be damaged.

Electric type



To change the steering wheel angle and height:

- Move the switch (1) up and down to adjust the angle (2).
- Move the switch forward or rearward to adjust the height (3).

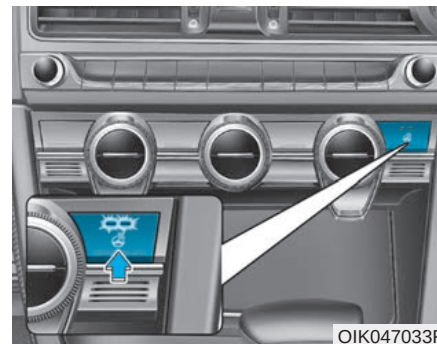
⚠ WARNING

- **NEVER** adjust the steering wheel when driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Always adjust the position of the steering wheel before driving.

NOTICE

Do not adjust the steering wheel longer than necessary when the engine is turned off. This may result in unnecessary battery drain.

Heated steering wheel (if equipped)



When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or when the engine is running, press the heated steering wheel button to warm the steering wheel. The indicator light on the button will illuminate.

To turn the heated steering wheel off, press the button again. The indicator light on the button will turn off.

- Each time you push the switch, the temperature setting changes as follows:

OFF → HIGH () → LOW ()



- When the heated steering wheel switch is pressed to high (): The heated steering wheel switch automatically changes to the low position after 30 minutes. You can turn off the heated steering wheel by pressing the switch to the OFF position.
- When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position with the heated steering wheel switch in the high/low position, the heated steering wheel automatically starts in the high position.
- When the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position with the heated steering wheel OFF, the heated steering wheel will stay OFF.

NOTICE

Do not install any cover or accessory on the steering wheel. This cover or accessory could cause damage to the heated steering wheel system.

Horn



To sound the horn, press the area indicated by the horn symbol on your steering wheel. The horn will operate only when this area is pressed.

NOTICE

Do not strike the horn severely to operate it, or hit it with your fist. Do not press on the horn with a sharp-pointed object.

MIRRORS

Inside rearview mirror

Before you start driving, adjust the rearview mirror to centre the view through the rear window.

WARNING

Make sure your line of sight is not obstructed. Do not place objects in the rear seat, luggage compartment, or behind the rear headrests which could interfere with your vision through the rear window.

WARNING

To prevent serious injury during an accident or deployment of the air bag, do not modify the rearview mirror and do not install a wide mirror.

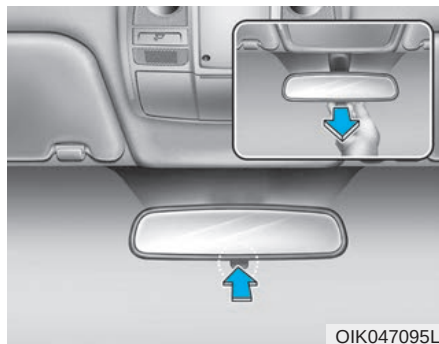
WARNING

NEVER adjust the mirror when driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Day/night rearview mirror (if equipped)



Make this adjustment before you start driving and whilst the day/night lever is in the day position.

Pull the day/night lever towards you to reduce glare from the headlamps of the vehicles behind you during night driving.

Remember that you lose some rearview clarity in the night position.

Electric Chromic Mirror (ECM) (if equipped)

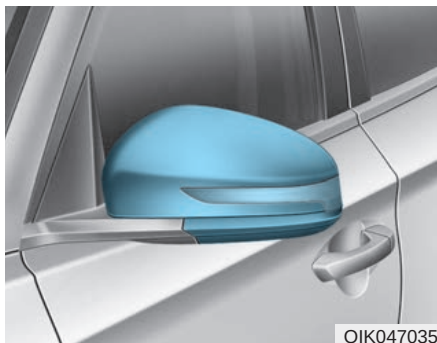


The electric rearview mirror automatically controls the glare from the headlamp of the vehicle behind you in night-time or low light driving conditions.

When the engine is running, the glare is automatically controlled by the sensor mounted in the rearview mirror. The sensor detects the light level around the vehicle, and automatically adjusts to control the headlamp glare from vehicles behind you.

Whenever the shift lever is placed in R (Reverse), the mirror will automatically go to the brightest setting in order to improve the driver's view behind the vehicle.

Outside rearview mirrors



Be sure to adjust mirror angles before driving.

The mirrors can be adjusted remotely with the remote switch.

The mirror heads can be folded to prevent damage during an automatic car wash or when passing through a narrow street.

WARNING

- The outside rearview mirrors are convex. Objects seen in the mirror are closer than they appear.
- Use your interior rearview mirror or turn your head and look to determine the actual distance of following vehicles when changing lanes.

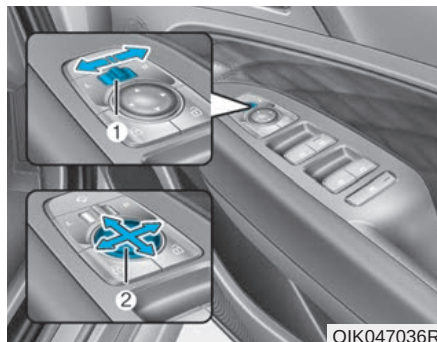
WARNING

Do not adjust or fold the outside rearview mirrors whilst driving. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

- Do not scrape ice off the mirror face; this may damage the surface of the glass.
- If the mirror is jammed with ice, do not adjust the mirror by force. Use an approved spray de-icer (not radiator antifreeze) spray, a sponge or soft cloth with very warm water, or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Adjusting the rearview mirrors



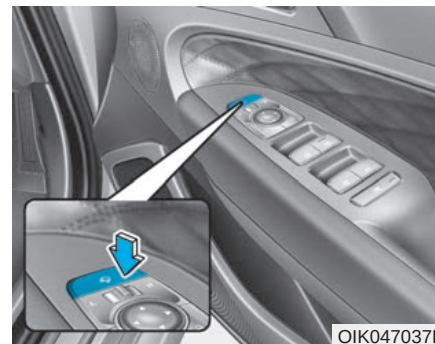
OIK047036R

1. Move the lever (1) either to the L (left side) or R (right side) to select the rearview mirror you would like to adjust.
2. Use the mirror adjustment control (2) to position the selected mirror up, down, left or right.
3. After adjustment, move the lever (1) to the middle to prevent inadvertent adjustment.

NOTICE

- The mirrors stop moving when they reach the maximum adjusting angles, but the motor continues to operate whilst the switch is pressed. Do not press the switch longer than necessary, the motor may be damaged.
- Do not attempt to adjust the outside rearview mirrors by hand otherwise the motor may be damaged.

Folding the outside rearview mirrors



OIK047037R

The outside rearview mirrors can be folded or unfolded by pressing the switch.

- If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the outside mirror will fold or unfold automatically as follows:
 - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the smart key.
 - The mirrors will fold or unfold when the door is locked or unlocked by the button on the outside door handle.

- If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' and 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On driver approach' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the outside mirrors will unfold automatically when you approach the vehicle (all doors closed and locked) with a smart key in possession.

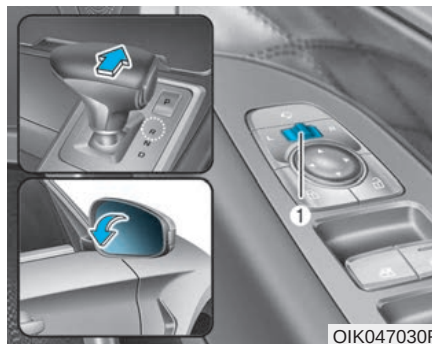
NOTICE

The electric type outside rearview mirrors operate even though the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position. However, to prevent unnecessary battery discharge, do not adjust the mirrors longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

NOTICE

Do not fold the electric type outside rearview mirror by hand. It could cause motor failure.

Reverse parking aid function (if equipped)



When you move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position, the outside rearview mirror(s) will rotate downwards to aid with driving in reverse.

The position of the outside rearview mirror switch (1) determines whether or not the mirrors will move:

Left/Right : When either the L (Left) or R (Right) switch is selected, both outside rearview mirrors will move.

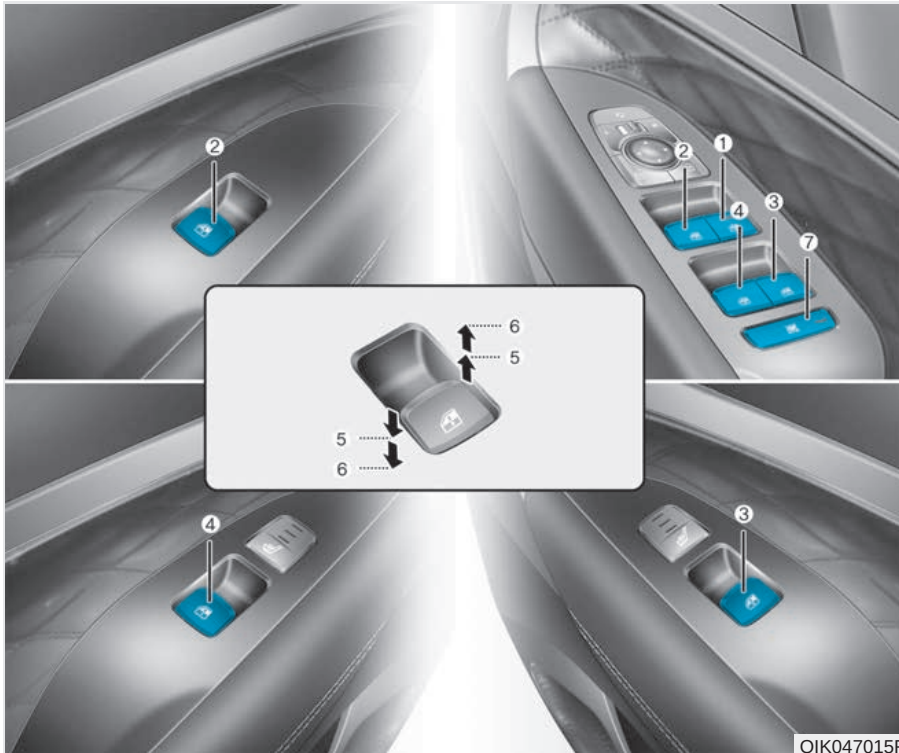
Neutral : When neither switch is selected, the outside rearview mirrors will not move.

The outside rearview mirrors will automatically revert to their original positions if any of the following occur:

- The Engine Start/Stop button is placed to either the OFF position or the ACC position.
- The shift lever is moved to any position except R (Reverse).
- The outside rearview mirror switch is not selected.

WINDOWS

Power windows



The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON or START position to be able to raise or lower the windows. Each door has a power window switch to control that door's window. The driver has a power window Lock switch which can block the operation of rear passenger windows. The power windows will operate for approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is placed in the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front doors are opened, the power windows cannot be operated even within the 30 second period.

WARNING

To avoid serious injury or death, do not extend your head, arms or body outside the windows when driving.

Information

- In cold and wet climates, power windows may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- When driving with the rear windows down or with the sunroof (if equipped) opened (or partially opened), your vehicle may demonstrate a wind buffeting or pulsation noise. This noise is normal and can be reduced or eliminated by taking the following actions. If the noise occurs with one or both of the rear windows down, partially lower both front windows approximately 2.5 cm. If you experience the noise with the sunroof open, slightly close the sunroof.

Window opening and closing



To open:

Press the window switch down to the first detent position (5). Release the switch when you want the window to stop.

To close:

Pull the window switch up to the first detent position (5). Release the window switch when you want the window to stop.

Auto up/down window (if equipped)

Pressing or pulling up the power window switch momentarily to the second detent position (6) completely lowers or lifts the window even when the switch is released. To stop the window at the desired position when the window is in operation, pull up or press down and release the switch.

To reset the power windows

If the power windows do not operate normally, the automatic power window system must be reset as follows:

1. Place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Close the window and continue pulling up on the power window switch for at least one second.

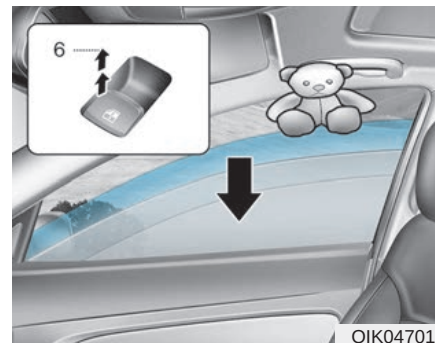
If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, it is recommended that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic reverse feature doesn't activate when resetting the power window system.

Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Automatic reverse (if equipped)



If a window senses any obstacle when it is closing automatically, it will stop and lower approximately 30 cm to allow the object to be cleared.

If the window detects the resistance when the power window switch is pulled up continuously, the window will stop upward movement then lower approximately 2.5 cm.

If the power window switch is pulled up continuously again within 5 seconds after the window is lowered by the automatic window reverse feature, the automatic window reverse will not operate.

i Information

The automatic reverse feature is only active when the “Auto Up” feature is used by fully pulling up the switch to the second detent.

! WARNING

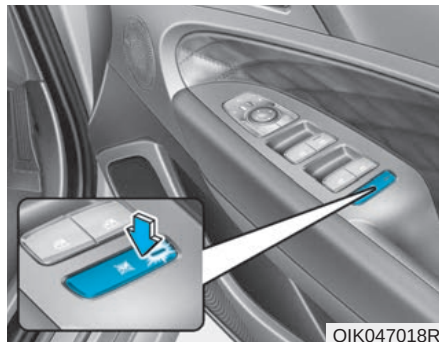
Make sure body parts or other objects are safely out of the way before closing the windows to avoid injuries or vehicle damage.

Objects less than 4 mm in diameter caught between the window glass and the upper window channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse window and the window will not stop and reverse direction.

NOTICE

Do not install any accessories on the windows. The automatic reverse feature may not operate.

Power window lock switch



The driver can disable the power window switches on the rear passengers' doors by pressing the power window lock switch.

When the power window lock switch is pressed:

- The driver's master control can operate all the power windows.
- The front passenger's control can operate the front passenger's power window.
- The rear passenger's control cannot operate the rear passengers' power window.

! WARNING

Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the LOCK position. Serious injury or death can result from unintentional window operation by a child.

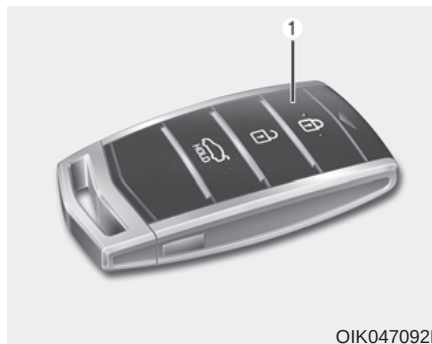
NOTICE

- To prevent possible damage to the power window system, do not open or close two windows or more at the same time. This will also ensure the longevity of the fuse.
- Never try to operate the main switch on the driver's door and the individual door window switch in opposite directions at the same time. If this is done, the window will stop and cannot be opened or closed.

WARNING

- **NEVER** leave the keys in your vehicle with unsupervised children, when the engine is running.
- **NEVER** leave any child unattended in the vehicle. Even very young children may inadvertently cause the vehicle to move, entangle themselves in the windows, or otherwise injure themselves or others.
- Always double check to make sure arms, hands, head and other obstructions are safely out of the way before closing a window.
- Do not allow children to play with the power windows. Keep the driver's door power window lock switch in the **LOCK** position (pressed). Serious injury can result from unintentional window operation by the child.
- Do not extend your head, arms or body outside the windows whilst driving.

Remote window closing function (if equipped)



You can still control the window movement with the engine turned off by pressing the Door Lock button (1) for more than 3 seconds. The window moves up, as long as you press the door lock button. The window movement stops, when you release the door lock button. The hazard warning lights blink 3 times, when the window is completely closed.

Information

- The remote window closing function may abruptly stop, when you move away from your vehicle during the operation. Stay in close proximity of your vehicle, whilst monitoring the window movement.
- One of the windows may stop operating, when the window is interrupted by certain force. However, the other windows will keep operating. Thus, you should make sure that all windows are closed, and that the hazard warning lights blink 3 times.

SUNROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

If your vehicle is equipped with a sunroof, you can slide or tilt your sunroof with the sunroof control lever located on the overhead console.



The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON or START position before you can open or close the sunroof.

The sunroof can be operated for approximately 30 seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is placed to the ACC or OFF position. However, if the front door is opened, the sunroof cannot be operated even within 30 seconds.

i Information

- In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly due to freezing conditions.
- After the vehicle is washed or in a rainstorm, be sure to wipe off any water that is on the sunroof before operating it.

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the sunroof or sunshade when driving. This could result in loss of control and an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or property damage.
- Make sure heads, other body parts or objects are out of the way before using the sunroof.
- Do not extend your head, arms or body outside the sunroof when driving, to avoid serious injury.
- Do not leave the engine running and the key in your vehicle with unsupervised children.

Unsupervised children could operate the sunroof, which could result in serious injury.

- The sunroof is made of glass and may break in the event of an accident. To avoid being seriously injured or death, all passengers must use the appropriate seat belts or Child Restraint Systems, etc.
- Do not sit on the top of the vehicle. It may cause injuries or vehicle damage.

NOTICE

- Do not continue to move the sunroof control lever after the sunroof is fully opened, closed, or tilted. Damage to the motor or system components could occur.
- Make sure the sunroof is closed fully when leaving your vehicle.

If the sunroof is open, rain or snow may leak through the sunroof and wet the interior as well as allow theft.

Sunshade



- To open the sunshade, pull the sunroof control lever rearward to the first detent position.
- To close the sunshade when the sunroof glass is closed, push the sunroof control lever forward.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever either forward or rearward momentarily.

NOTICE

Do not pull or push the sunshade by hand. It could cause sunshade failure.

Sliding the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed

If you push the sunroof control lever rearward past the first detent, the sunshade will slide all the way open and then the sunroof glass will slide all the way open.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever either forward or rearward momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you pull the sunroof control lever rearward, the sunroof glass will slide all the way open. To stop the sunroof movement at any point, pull or push the sunroof control lever momentarily.

i Information

Only the front glass of the panorama sunroof opens and closes.

Tilting the sunroof



When the sunshade is closed

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunshade will slide open then the sunroof glass will tilt open.

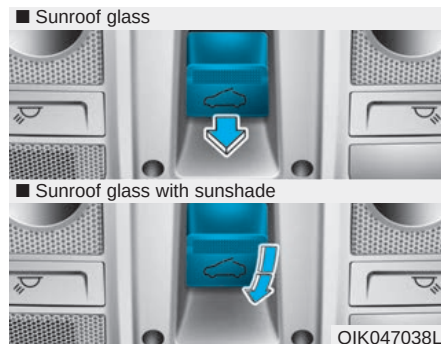
To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever either forward or rearward momentarily.

When the sunshade is opened

If you push the sunroof control lever upward, the sunroof glass will tilt open.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever either forward or rearward momentarily.

Closing the sunroof



To close sunroof glass

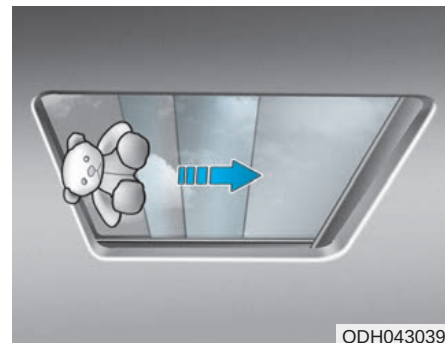
Push the sunroof control lever forward to the first detent position.

To close sunroof glass with sunshade

Push the sunroof control lever forward to the second detent position. The sunroof glass will close and then the sunshade will close automatically.

To stop the sunroof movement at any point, push the sunroof control lever either forward or rearward momentarily.

Automatic reverse (if equipped)



If the sunroof senses any obstacle whilst it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction then stop to allow the object to be cleared.

⚠ WARNING

Small objects that can get caught between the sunroof glass and the front glass channel may not be detected by the automatic reverse system. In this case, the sunroof glass will not detect the object and will not reverse direction.

NOTICE

- Periodically remove any dirt that may accumulate on the sunroof guide rail or between the sunroof and roof panel, which can make a noise.
- Do not try to open the sunroof when the temperature is below freezing or when the sunroof is covered with snow or ice, otherwise the motor could be damaged. In cold and wet climates, the sunroof may not work properly.

Resetting the sunroof

The sunroof may need to be reset if the following conditions occur:

- The battery is discharged or disconnected or the sunroof fuse has been replaced or disconnected
- The sunroof control lever is not operating correctly

To reset the sunroof, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the engine on and close the sunroof glass and sunshade completely.
2. Release the control lever.
3. Push and hold the sunroof control lever forward (to close the sunshade) for about 10 seconds until the sunroof moves slightly, then release the control lever.
4. Push and hold the sunroof control lever forward until the sunroof operates as follows:

Sunshade Open → Glass Tilt Open
→ Glass Slide Open → Glass Slide
Close → Sunshade Close

Then, release the control lever.

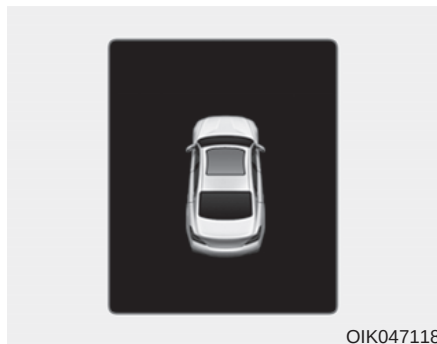
When this is complete, the sunroof system is reset.

For more details, contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

i Information

If you do not reset the sunroof, it may not work properly.

Sunroof open warning (if equipped)



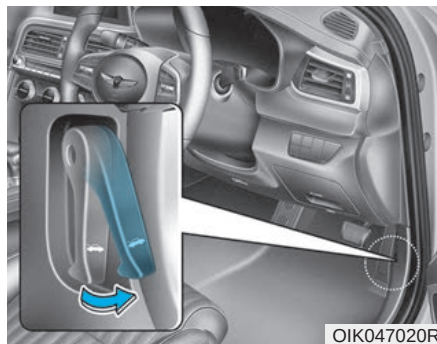
- If the driver turns off the engine when the sunroof is not fully closed, the warning chime will sound for approximately 3 seconds and the sunroof open warning will appear on the LCD display.
- If the driver turns off the engine and opens the door when the sunroof is not fully closed, the sunroof open warning will appear on the LCD display until the door is closed or the sunroof is fully closed.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

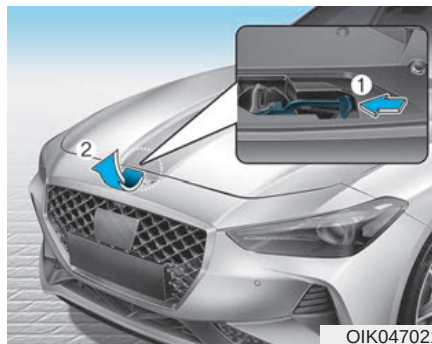
EXTERIOR FEATURES

Bonnet

Opening the bonnet



1. Park the vehicle and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the release lever to unlatch the bonnet. The bonnet should pop open slightly.



3. Go to the front of the vehicle, raise the bonnet slightly, push the secondary latch up (1) inside of the bonnet centre and lift the bonnet (2). After it has been raised about halfway, it will raise completely by itself.

Closing the bonnet

1. Before closing the bonnet, check the following:
 - All filler caps in the engine compartment must be correctly installed.
 - Gloves, rags or any other combustible material must be removed from the engine compartment.
2. Lower the bonnet halfway (raised approximately 30cm from the closed position) and push down to securely lock in place. Then double check to be sure the bonnet is secure.

If the bonnet can be raised slightly, it is not securely locked. Open it again and close it with more force.

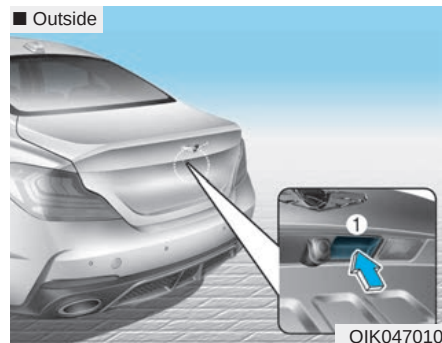
WARNING

- Before closing the bonnet, ensure all obstructions are removed from around the bonnet opening.
- Always double check to be sure that the bonnet is firmly latched before driving away. Check there is no bonnet open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster. If the bonnet is not latched whilst the vehicle is moving, the chime will sound to warn the driver the bonnet is not fully latched. Driving with the bonnet opened may cause a total loss of visibility, which might result in an accident.
- Do not move the vehicle with the bonnet in the raised position, as vision will be obstructed, which might result in an accident, and the bonnet could fall or be damaged.

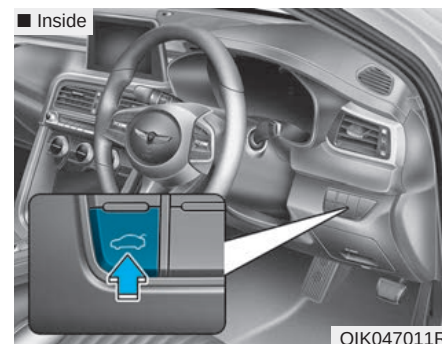
Non-Powered Boot

Opening the boot

1. Make sure the vehicle is shifted to P (Park) and engage the parking brake.



2. Then do one of the following :
 - Press the smart key boot open button for more than 1 second.
 - Press the button (1) on the boot itself with the smart key in your possession.



- Use the boot release button.
3. Lift the boot lid up.

Closing the boot

Lower the boot lid and press down until it locks. To be sure the boot lid is securely fastened, always check by trying to pull it up again.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep the boot lid completely closed when the vehicle is in motion. If it is left open or ajar, poisonous exhaust gases containing carbon monoxide (CO) may enter the vehicle and serious illness or death may result.

***i* Information**

To prevent damage to the boot lift cylinders and the attached hardware, always close the boot before driving.

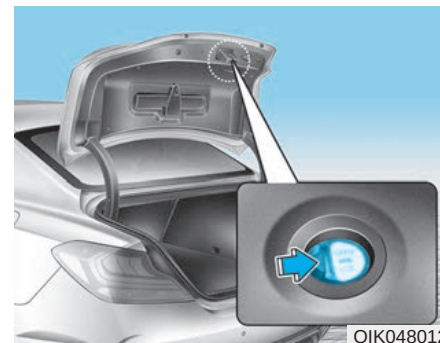
NOTICE

In cold and wet climates, boot lock and boot mechanisms may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Your vehicle should be kept locked and keys should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in the boot.

Emergency boot safety release



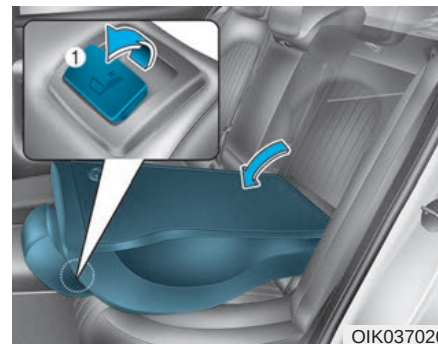
Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency boot safety release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot open.

WARNING

- You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the emergency boot safety release lever in this vehicle and how to open the boot in case you are accidentally locked in the boot.
- NEVER allow anyone to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time. If the boot is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The boot is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crush zone.

- Your vehicle should be kept locked and the smart key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in boots.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only.

When the vehicle battery is discharged or the boot needs to be opened manually

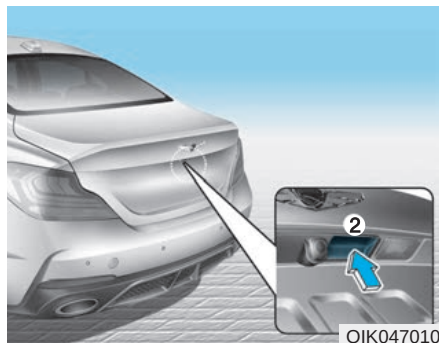


1. Fold the rear seats using the seat-back folding lever (1).
2. Open the boot using the emergency boot safety release lever.

Power Boot (if equipped)



(1) Power Boot button



(2) Power Boot handle switch



(3) Power Boot close button



(4) Power Boot Lock button

WARNING

Never leave children or animals unattended in your vehicle.

Children or animals might operate the power boot that could result in injury to themselves or others, or damage the vehicle.

WARNING

Make sure there are no people or objects around the boot before operating the power boot. Wait until the boot is opened fully and stopped before loading or unloading luggage compartment or passengers from the vehicle.



CAUTION

Do not close or open the power boot manually. This may cause damage to the power boot. If it is necessary to close or open the power boot manually when the battery is discharged or disconnected, do not apply excessive force.

NOTICE

For emergency stop whilst operating, press the Power Boot close button (3) or Power Boot Lock button (4) shortly.

When the power boot stops moving, press Power Boot close button (3) or Power Boot Lock button (4) to close it.

When the power boot stops moving, press Power Boot handle switch (2) to open it.

Opening the boot

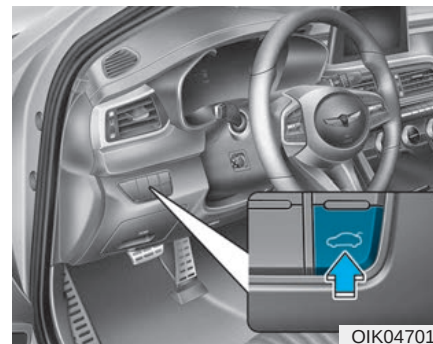
The power boot will open automatically by doing one of the following:



OIK048432

Smart key boot unlock button

Press the boot unlock button on the smart key for approximately one second.

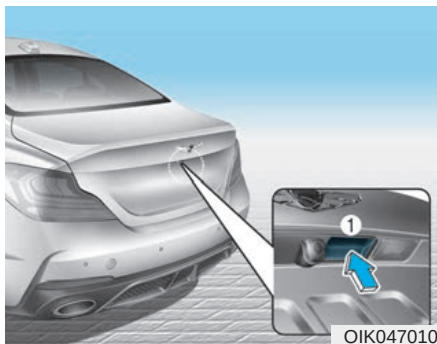


OIK047011

Power Boot button

Press the power boot button within one second.

Power boot may not work if you press the power boot button too shortly.



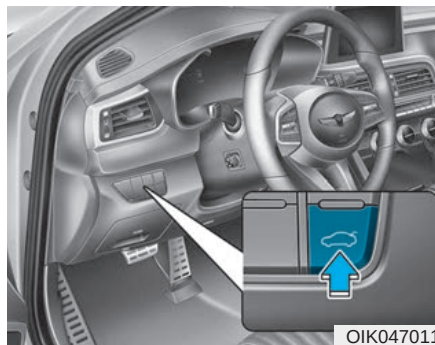
Power Boot handle switch

Press the boot handle switch (1) whilst having the smart key with you.

OIK047010

Closing the boot

The power boot will close automatically by doing one of the following:



OIK047011

Power Boot button

Press the power boot button and hold it until the boot is fully closed.

As soon as the power boot button is released, the boot stops moving.

For emergency stop whilst the power boot operating, release the power boot button.



OIK048430

Power Boot close button

Press the power boot close button when the boot is opened.

Power boot lock button



- Press the Lock button on the boot whilst carrying the Smart Key with all the vehicle's doors closed. All doors will lock and arm the theft alarm system.
- The Power Boot Lock button will not work if the following occurs:
 - Any door is open.
 - The Engine Start/Stop button is not in the OFF position.
 - The Smart Key is in the vehicle.

Power boot non-opening conditions

The boot does not open when the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The chime will sound if you drive with the boot opened.

Stop your vehicle immediately at a safe place and check if your boot is opened.

CAUTION

Operating the power boot more than 5 times continuously could cause damages to the operating motor. In this case, the system enters into a thermal protection mode. In thermal protection mode, the power boot can not operate and the chime will sound for 3 times by any switch inputs. Leave your power boot system for rest about 1 minute and then operate.

Information

- The power boot can be operated when the engine is not running. However the power boot operation consumes large amounts of vehicle electric power. To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not operate it excessively. (e.g.: more than approximately 10 times repeatedly.)
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the power boot in the open position for a long time.
- Do not modify or repair any part of the power boot by yourself. We recommend that you contact an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.
- When jacking up the vehicle to change a tyre or repair the vehicle, do not operate the power boot. This could cause the power boot to operate improperly.
- In cold and wet climates, the power boot may not work properly due to freezing conditions.

Automatic reversal



During power opening and closing if the power boot is blocked by an object or part of the body, the power boot will detect the resistance.

- If the resistance is detected whilst opening the boot, it will stop and move in the opposite direction.
- If the resistance is detected whilst closing the boot, it will stop and move in the opposite direction.

However, if the resistance is weak such as from an object that is thin or soft, or the boot is near the latched position, the automatic stop and reversal may not detect the resistance.

If the automatic reversal feature operates continuously more than twice during opening or closing operation, the power boot may stop at that position. At this time, close the boot manually and operate the boot automatically again.

WARNING

Never intentionally place any object or part of your body in the path of the power boot to make sure the automatic reversal operates.

CAUTION

**Do not put heavy stuffs on the power boot before you operate the power boot.
Additional weight on boot could cause damages to the system.**

How to reset the power boot

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, or if the related fuse has been replaced or disconnected, for the power boot to operate normally, reset the power boot as follow:

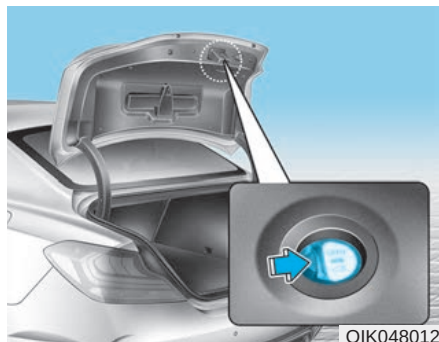
1. Put the shift lever in P (Park).
2. Whilst Pressing the power boot inner switch, press the boot handle switch for more than 3 seconds. (the chime will sound)
3. Close the boot manually.

If the power boot does not work properly after the above procedure, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products.

Information

If the power boot does not operate normally, check again if the gear position is in right position.

Emergency boot safety release



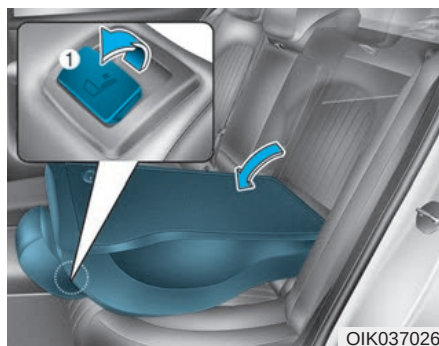
Your vehicle is equipped with an emergency boot safety release lever located inside the boot. When someone is inadvertently locked in the boot, the boot can be opened by moving the lever in the direction of the arrow and pushing the boot open.

WARNING

- You and your passengers must be aware of the location of the emergency boot safety release lever in this vehicle and how to open the boot in case you are accidentally locked in the boot.
- **NEVER** allow anyone to occupy the boot of the vehicle at any time. If the boot is partially or totally latched and the person is unable to get out, serious injury or death could occur due to lack of ventilation, exhaust fumes and rapid heat build-up, or because of exposure to cold weather conditions. The boot is also a highly dangerous location in the event of a crash because it is not a protected occupant space but is a part of the vehicle's crush zone.

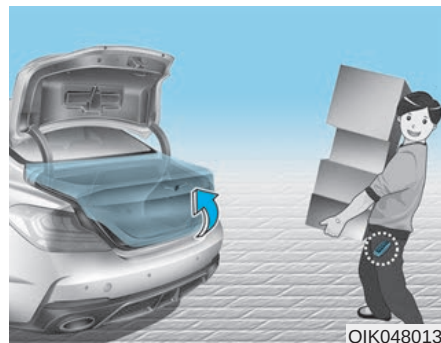
- Your vehicle should be kept locked and the smart key should be kept out of the reach of children. Parents should teach their children about the dangers of playing in boots.
- Use the release lever for emergencies only.

When the vehicle battery is discharged or the boot needs to be opened manually



1. Fold the rear seats using the seat-back folding lever (1).
2. Open the boot using the emergency boot safety release lever.

Smart boot (if equipped)



On a vehicle equipped with a smart key, the boot can be opened with no-touch activation using the smart boot system.

How to use the smart boot

The boot can be opened with no-touch activation satisfying all the conditions below.

- After 15 seconds when all doors are closed and locked
- Positioned in the detecting area for more than 3 seconds

i Information

The Smart Boot does not operate when:

- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and is continuously detected.
- The smart key is detected within 15 seconds after the doors are closed and locked, and 1.5 m from the front door handles (for vehicles equipped with welcome light).
- A door is not locked or closed.
- The smart key is in the vehicle.

1. Setting

To activate the smart boot, go to User Settings mode and select smart boot on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

2. Detect and Alert

If you are positioned in the detecting area (50 ~100 cm behind the vehicle) carrying a smart key, the hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound to alert you the smart key has been detected and the boot will open.

i Information

Do not approach the detecting area if you do not want the boot to open. If you have unintentionally entered the detecting area and the hazard warning lights and chime starts to operate, leave the detecting area with the smart key. The boot will stay closed.

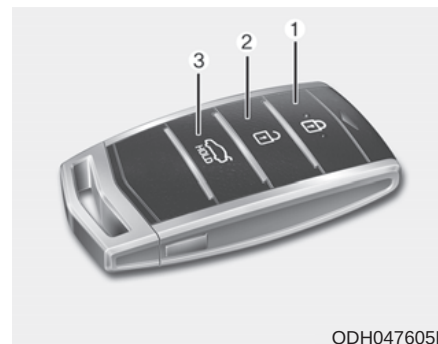
3. Automatic opening

The hazard warning lights will blink and chime will sound several times and then the boot will slowly open.

⚠ WARNING

- **Make sure you close the boot before driving your vehicle.**
- **Make sure there are no people or objects around the boot before opening or closing the boot.**
- **Make sure objects in the boot do not come out when opening the boot on a slope. It may cause serious injury.**
- **Make sure to deactivate the smart boot when washing your vehicle. Otherwise, the boot may open inadvertently.**
- **The key should be kept out of reach of children. Children may inadvertently open the smart boot whilst playing around the rear area of the vehicle.**

How to deactivate the smart boot function using the smart key



1. Door lock
2. Door unlock
3. Boot open

If you press any button of the smart key during the Detect and Alert stage, the smart boot function will be deactivated.

Make sure to be aware of how to deactivate the smart boot function for emergency situations.

i Information

- If you press the door unlock button (2), the smart boot function will be deactivated temporarily. But, if you do not open any door for 30 seconds, the smart boot function will be activated again.
- If you press the boot open button (3) for more than 1 second, the boot opens.
- If you press the door lock button (1) or boot open button (3) when the smart boot function is not in the detect and alert stage, the smart boot function will not be deactivated.
- If you have deactivated the smart boot function by pressing the smart key button and/or opened a door, the smart boot function can be activated again by closing and locking all doors.

Detecting area



OIK047014

- The smart boot operates with a welcome alert if the smart key is detected within 50~100 cm from the boot.
- The alert stops at once if the smart key is positioned outside the detecting area during the detect and alert stage.

i Information

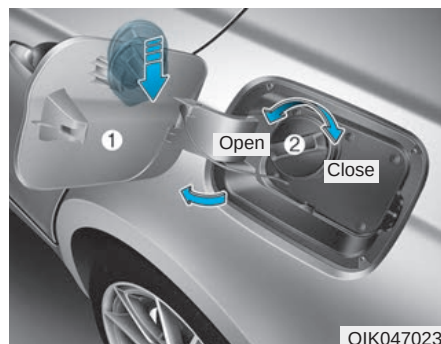
- The smart boot function will not work if any of the following occurs:
 - The smart key is close to a radio transmitter such as a radio station or an airport which can interfere with normal operation of the transmitter.
 - The smart key is near a mobile two way radio system or a mobile phone.
 - Another vehicle's smart key is being operated close to your vehicle.
- The detecting range may decrease or increase when :
 - One side of the tyre is raised to replace a tyre or to inspect the vehicle.
 - The vehicle is parked at an angle on a slope or unpaved road, etc.

Fuel filler door

Opening the fuel filler door



1. Turn the engine off.
2. Push the fuel filler door opener button.



3. Pull the fuel filler door (1) out to fully open.
4. To remove the fuel tank cap (2), turn it anti-clockwise. You may hear a hissing noise as the pressure inside the tank equalises.
5. Place the cap on the fuel filler door.

Information

If the fuel filler door does not open because ice has formed around it, tap lightly or push on the door to break the ice and release the door. Do not pry on the door. If necessary, spray around the door with an approved de-icer fluid (do not use radiator anti-freeze) or move the vehicle to a warm place and allow the ice to melt.

Closing the fuel filler door

1. To install the fuel tank cap, turn it clockwise until it “clicks” one time.
2. Close the fuel filler door until it is latched securely.

WARNING

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH:

- Read and follow all warnings posted at the service station.
- Before refuelling, note the location of the Emergency Petrol Shut-Off, if available, at the service station.
- Before touching the fuel nozzle, you should eliminate the potential build-up of static electricity by touching a metal part of the vehicle, a safe distance away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle, or other gas source, with your bare hand.

- Do not use mobile phones when refuelling. Electric current and/or electronic interference from mobile phones can potentially ignite fuel vapours and cause a fire.
- Do not get back into a vehicle once you have begun refuelling. You can generate a build-up of static electricity by touching, rubbing or sliding against any item or fabric capable of producing static electricity. Static electricity discharge can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. If you must re-enter the vehicle, you should once again eliminate potentially dangerous static electricity discharge by touching a metal part of the vehicle, away from the fuel filler neck, nozzle or other fuel source, with your bare hand.

- When refuelling, always shift the vehicle to P (Park), engage the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position. Sparks produced by electrical components related to the engine can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire.
- When using an approved portable fuel container, be sure to place the container on the ground prior to refuelling. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite fuel vapours causing a fire. Once refuelling has begun, contact between your bare hand and the vehicle should be maintained until the filling is complete.

- Use only approved portable plastic fuel containers designed to carry and store petrol.
- Do not use matches or a lighter and do not smoke or leave a lit cigarette in your vehicle when at a service station, especially during refuelling.
- Do not over-fill or top-off your vehicle tank, which can cause petrol spillage.
- If a fire breaks out during refuelling, leave the vicinity of the vehicle, and immediately contact the manager of the service station and then contact the local fire department. Follow any safety instructions they provide.

- If pressurised fuel sprays out, it can cover your clothes or skin and thus subject you to the risk of fire and burns. Always remove the fuel cap carefully and slowly. If the cap is venting fuel or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until the condition stops before completely removing the cap.
- Always check that the fuel cap is installed securely to prevent fuel spillage in the event of an accident.

Information

Make sure to refuel your vehicle according to the "Fuel Requirements" suggested in the Introduction chapter.

NOTICE

- Do not spill fuel on the exterior surfaces of the vehicle. Any type of fuel spilled on painted surfaces may damage the paint.
- If the fuel filler cap requires replacement, use only a genuine Genesis cap or the equivalent specified for your vehicle. An incorrect fuel filler cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel system or emission control system.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

■ Type A



1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display (including Trip Computer)

■ Type B



The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges and Meters" in this chapter.

OIK047100AU/OIK047101AU

■ Type C



1. Tachometer
2. Speedometer
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Fuel gauge
5. Warning and indicator lights
6. LCD display (including Trip Computer)

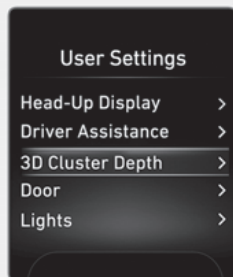
**The actual cluster in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.
For more details, refer to the "Gauges and Meters" in this chapter.**

✱ To obtain the source code under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licences, that is contained in this product, please visit <http://opensource.lge.com>. In addition to the source code, all referred licence terms, warranty disclaimers and copyright notices are available for download. They will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to open-source@lge.com. This offer is valid for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information.

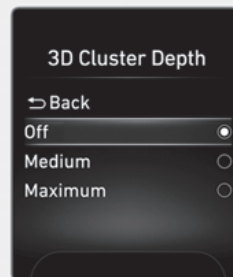
OIK049200AU

3D Cluster (for Cluster type C)

3D Cluster setting



OIK049184N



OIK049107N

To use the 3D cluster, set the ignition switch to the ON position, and then select 'User Settings → 3D Cluster Depth → Medium/Maximum' in the LCD display.

To use the cluster 2D, select 'Off'.

After the 3D cluster is selected, you may select the theme for the 3D cluster.



OIK049105N

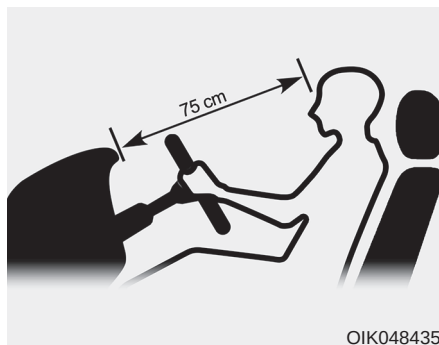
Using the steering wheel MODE button (), select 'Theme Selection'.

The following themes can be selected.

- Link to Drive Mode: The theme changes according the drive mode selected.
- Modern
- Space
- Edge

According to the theme selected, the design of the speedometer, tachometer, engine coolant temperature gauge and fuel gauge changes.

Recommendations to optimize the 3D effect



- Adjust the height of the seat and steering wheel so that the instrument cluster and camera module can be seen at a glance.
- The optimal distance to maximize the 3D effect is 75 cm. Adjust the distance between the driver's seat and the instrument cluster.
- Hold the steering wheel with both hands and drive in an upright position.

i Information

- When your face gets too close or far to the instrument cluster, or the camera on the instrument cluster is blocked by the steering wheel or other objects, the 3D cluster changes to 2D automatically. However if the object blocking the camera is removed, the cluster changes back to 3D automatically.
- If the outside temperature is below 4°C (39°F), it may change to 2D about 1 to 10 minutes.
- Two red lights may appear on the camera in the following conditions when:
 - The outside brightness is dim or driving at night
 - The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement parking lot
 - The camera case of the instrument cluster is partially broken



CAUTION

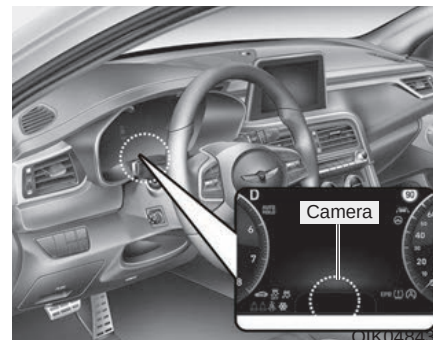
- It may sometimes be difficult to read information on the 3D cluster in the following situations. You must change the cluster to 2D for safe driving.
 - The driver is wearing sunglasses, special glasses, infrared cutoff glasses, refracting glasses or thick glasses
 - The driver has heavy eye makeup (eyeliner, mascara, colour makeup, false eyelash) or eye piercing
 - The driver's view is blocked by his/her hair, etc.
 - The driver is wearing an eye patch on one eye
 - The driver's view is blocked by incoming light from outside of the vehicle
 - The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat

- The driver shakes his/her head up and down, or adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- The driver is too tall or short
- More than two people are looking at the instrument cluster simultaneously from the driver's seat
- The driver's eyesight of both eyes are severely different
- The driver has a severe headache
- Do not look toward the camera within 20 cm for longer than a minute.
- If you use the 3D cluster whilst your vehicle is stopped, it can cause eye strains or dizziness.
- We recommend people who are pregnant elderly or has motion sickness, avoid using the cluster in 3D.

⚠ WARNING

- You should not use the 3D cluster if you or any of your family members or relatives has a history of epilepsy, convulsions, etc. Flashing or flickering lights or specific or regular patterns shown on the cluster may stimulate epilepsy, convulsions, etc.
- You should not apply the 3D effect immediately if you feel any of the following symptoms:
Haziness, unconsciousness, disorientation, nausea, headache, fatigue, dizziness, etc.

NOTICE

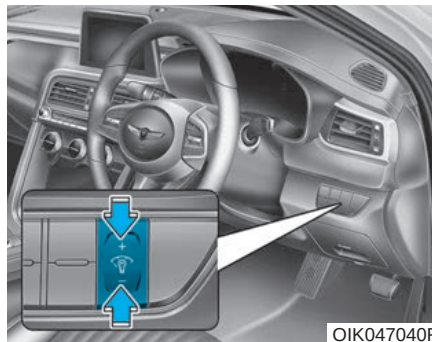


- Do not apply any impact on the surface of the instrument cluster, camera or around the area of the camera. If the camera is damaged, the system may not work properly.
- Do not place anything on the camera or in front of the camera whilst driving. The camera may not operate properly.
- Always keep the camera clean and dry.

- When cleaning the instrument cluster or camera, wipe with a soft and clean cloth to prevent damages on the surface of the cluster or camera lens. In addition, you should not use sharp tools near the cluster or camera, or use chemicals to clean the cluster or camera.
- Whilst replacing the instrument cluster by yourself, please be cautious of the heat from the top and backside of the instrument cluster.

Instrument cluster control

Instrument panel illumination

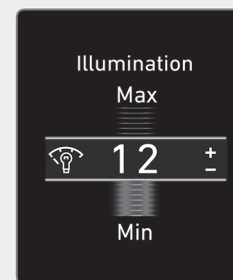


When the vehicle's parking lights or headlamps are on, press the illumination control button to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel illumination.

When pressing the illumination control button, the interior switch illumination intensity is also adjusted.

⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the instrument cluster when driving. This could result in loss of control and lead to an accident that may cause death, serious injury, or vehicle damage.



- The brightness of the instrument panel illumination is displayed.
- If the brightness reaches the maximum or minimum level, a chime will sound.

Gauges and metres

Speedometer

■ Type A, B



OIK047102/OIK047103

■ Type C



OIK049438/OIK048183

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle and is calibrated in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Tachometer

■ Type A, B



OIK047104

■ Type C



OIK048102

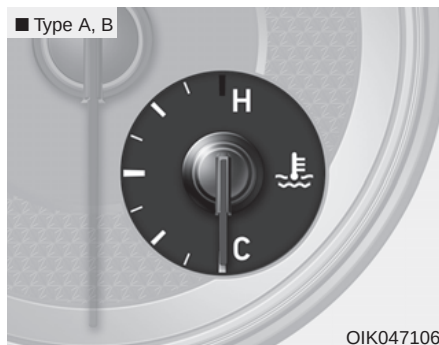
The tachometer indicates the approximate number of engine revolutions per minute (rpm).

Use the tachometer to select the correct shift points and to prevent lugging and/or over-revving the engine.

NOTICE

Do not operate the engine within the tachometer's RED ZONE. This may cause severe engine damage.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the START position.

NOTICE

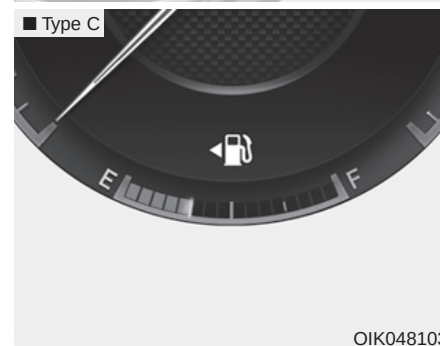
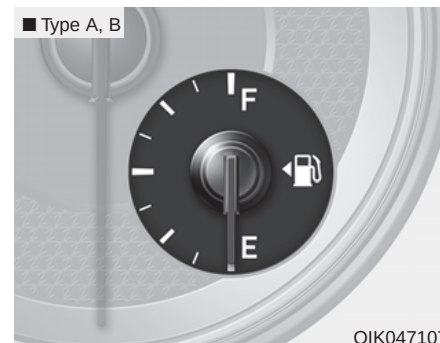
If the gauge pointer moves beyond the normal range area toward the "H (Hot)" position, it indicates overheating that may damage the engine.

Do not continue driving with an overheated engine. If your vehicle overheats, refer to "If the Engine Overheats" in chapter 6.

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the radiator cap or engine coolant reservoir cap when the engine is hot. The engine coolant is under pressure and could cause severe burns. Wait until the engine is cool before adding coolant to the reservoir.

Fuel gauge



This gauge indicates the approximate amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

i Information

- The fuel tank capacity is given in chapter 8.
- A low fuel level is also indicated by a low fuel warning light, which will illuminate when the fuel tank is nearly empty.
- On inclines or corners, the fuel gauge pointer may fluctuate or the low fuel warning light may come on earlier than usual due to the movement of fuel in the tank.

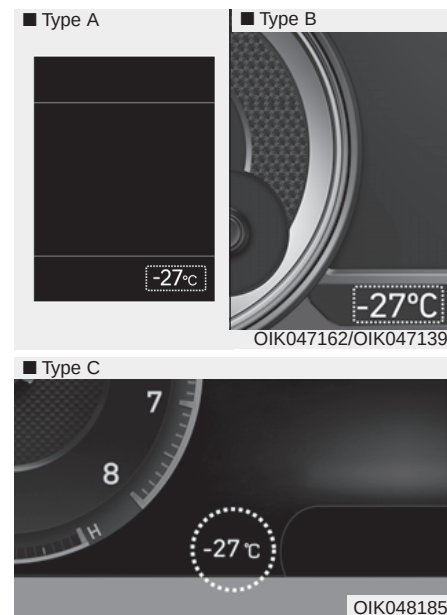
⚠ WARNING

Running out of fuel can expose vehicle occupants to danger. You must stop and obtain additional fuel as soon as possible after the warning light comes on or when the gauge indicator comes close to the "E (Empty)" level.

NOTICE

Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire damaging the catalytic converter.

Outside temperature



This display indicates the current outside air temperatures either in Celsius (°C) or Fahrenheit (°F).

- Temperature range : -40°C ~ 60°C
(-40°F ~ 140°F)

Convenient features of your vehicle

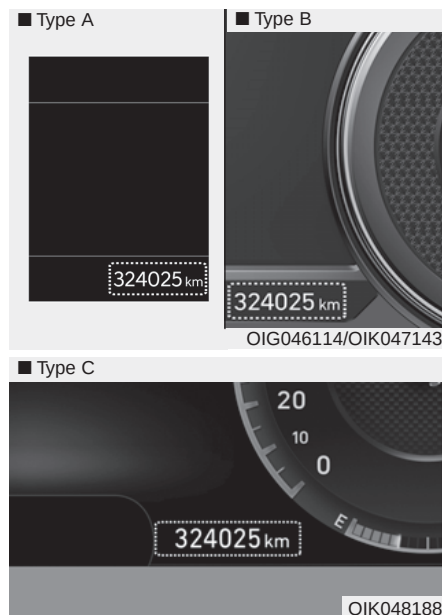
The outside temperature on the display may not immediately change, so as to not distract the driver.

The temperature unit (from °C to °F or from °F to °C) can be changed by:

- User Settings mode in the instrument cluster: You can change the temperature unit in the "Other features - Temperature unit".
- Automatic climate control system: Whilst pressing the OFF button, press the AUTO button for 3 seconds or more.

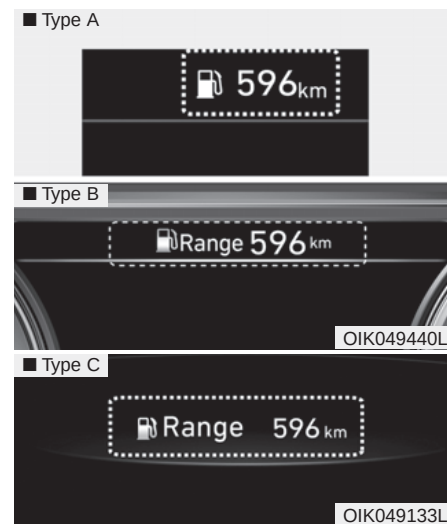
The temperature unit of the instrument cluster and climate control system will change at once.

Odometer



The odometer indicates the total distance that the vehicle has been driven and should be used to determine when periodic maintenance should be performed.

Distance to empty



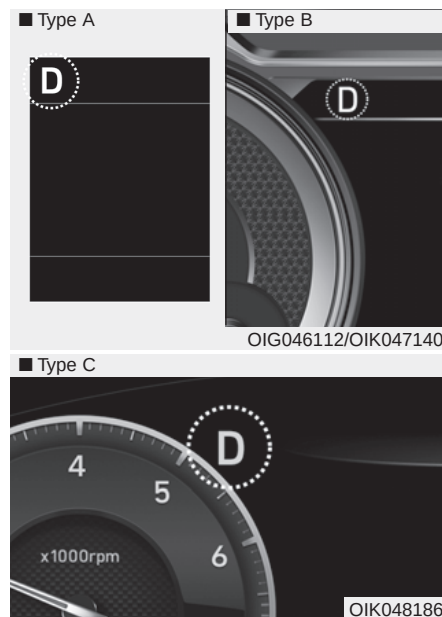
- The distance to empty is the estimated distance the vehicle can be driven with the remaining fuel.
- If the estimated distance is below 1 km, the trip computer will display "---" as distance to empty.

i Information

- If the vehicle is not on level ground or the battery power has been interrupted, the distance to empty function may not operate correctly.
- The distance to empty may differ from the actual driving distance as it is an estimate of the available driving distance.
- The trip computer may not register additional fuel if less than 6 litres of fuel are added to the vehicle.
- The distance to empty may vary significantly based on driving conditions, driving habits, and condition of the vehicle.

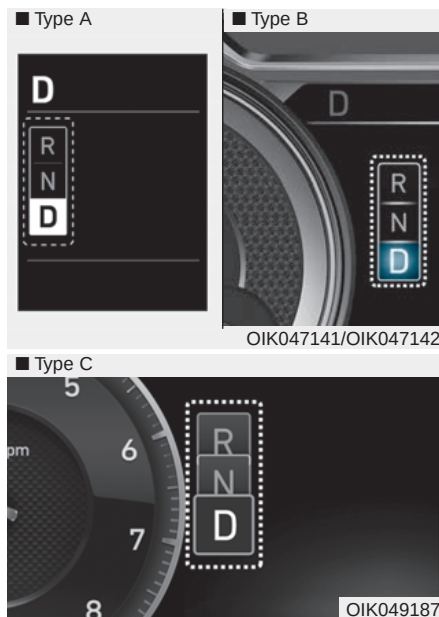
Transmission shift indicator

Automatic transmission shift indicator



This indicator informs the current gear engaged.

- Park : P
- Reverse : R
- Neutral : N
- Drive : D
- Manual shift mode :
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8



Shift Indicator Pop-up (if equipped)

The pop-up that indicates the current gear position is displayed in the cluster for about 2 seconds when shifting into other positions (P/R/N/D).

Warning and indicator lights

i Information

Make sure that all warning lights are OFF after starting the engine. If any light is still ON, this indicates a situation that needs attention.

Seat Belt Warning Light



This warning light informs the driver that the seat belt is not fastened.

For more details, refer to "Seat Belts" in chapter 2.

Air Bag Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 6 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the SRS.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds
 - It remains on if the parking brake is applied.
- When the parking brake is applied.
- When the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.
 - If the warning light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low.

If the brake fluid level in the reservoir is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. With the engine stopped, check the brake fluid level immediately and add fluid as required (**For more details, refer to "Brake Fluid" in chapter 7**). After adding brake fluid, check all brake components for fluid leaks. If a brake fluid leak is found, or if the warning light remains on, or if the brakes do not operate properly, do not drive the vehicle. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Dual-diagonal braking system

Your vehicle is equipped with dual-diagonal braking systems. This means you still have braking on two wheels even if one of the dual systems should fail.

With only one of the dual systems working, more than normal pedal travel and greater pedal pressure are required to stop the vehicle.

Also, the vehicle will not stop in as short a distance with only a portion of the brake system working.

If the brakes fail whilst you are driving, shift to a lower gear for additional engine braking and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

 WARNING

Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light

Driving the vehicle with a warning light ON is dangerous. If the Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Light illuminates with the parking brake released, it indicates that the brake fluid level is low.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ABS (The normal braking system will still be operational without the assistance of the anti-lock brake system).

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light



These two warning lights illuminate at the same time whilst driving:

- When the ABS and regular brake system may not be working normally.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

WARNING

Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When both the ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the brake system will not work normally and you may experience an unexpected and dangerous situation during sudden braking.

In this case, avoid high speed driving and abrupt braking.

We recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Information - Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD) System Warning Light

When the ABS Warning Light is on or both the ABS and Parking Brake & Brake Fluid Warning Lights are on, the speedometer, odometer, or trip meter may not work. Also, the EPS Warning Light may illuminate and the steering effort may increase or decrease.

In this case, we recommend you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light

EPB

This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPB.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Information

The Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Light may illuminate when the Electronic Stability control (ESC) Indicator Light comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly (This does not indicate malfunction of the EPB).

Electric Power Steering (EPS) Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the EPS.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the emission control system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

Driving with the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) on may cause damage to the emission control system which could affect drivability and/or fuel economy.

NOTICE - Petrol Engine

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) illuminates, potential catalytic converter damage is possible which could result in loss of engine power.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Charging System Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system.

If there is a malfunction with either the alternator or electrical charging system:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the alternator drive belt for looseness or breakage.

If the belt is adjusted properly, there may be a problem in the electrical charging system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the engine oil pressure is low.

If the engine oil pressure is low:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and check the engine oil level (**For more details, refer to "Engine Oil" in chapter 7**). If the level is low, add oil as required. If the warning light remains on after adding oil or if oil is not available, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

- If the engine does not stop immediately after the Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light is illuminated, severe damage could result.
- If the warning light stays on when the engine is running, it indicates that there may be serious engine damage or malfunction. In this case:
 1. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
 2. Turn off the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, fill the engine oil to the proper level.
 3. Start the engine again. If the warning light stays on after the engine is started, turn the engine off immediately. In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Low Fuel Level Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When the fuel tank is nearly empty.
Add fuel as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with the Low Fuel Level warning light on or with the fuel level below "E (Empty)" can cause the engine to misfire and damage the catalytic converter (if equipped).

Master Warning Light



This warning light illuminates:

- When there is a malfunction in the below systems.
 - LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
 - Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go malfunction (if equipped)
 - Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist malfunction (if equipped)
 - Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blocked (if equipped)
 - Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go radar blocked (if equipped)
 - Lamp malfunction
 - High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)

The details of the warning will be displayed on the LCD display.

Low Tyre Pressure Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When one or more of your tyres are significantly underinflated (The location of the underinflated tyres are displayed on the LCD display).

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.

This warning light remains on after blinking for approximately 60 seconds or repeatedly blinks on and off at approximately 3 second intervals:

- When there is a malfunction with the TPMS.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.

WARNING

Safe Stopping

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors.
- If you notice any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator pedal, apply the brakes gradually with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) System Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the FCA.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system" in chapter 5.

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- [Green] When the system operating conditions are satisfied.
- [White] The system operating conditions are not satisfied.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the lane keeping assist system.

In this case, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system" in chapter 5.

Adaptive Front-Lighting System (AFS) Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop Button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the AFS.

If there is a malfunction with the AFS:

1. Drive carefully to the nearest safe location and stop your vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and restart the engine. If the warning light remains on, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

LED Headlamp Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the LED headlamps.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

This warning light blinks:

When there is a malfunction with a LED headlamp related part.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

Continuous driving with the LED Headlamp Warning Light on or blinking can reduce LED headlamp life.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When there is a malfunction with the ESC system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- Whilst the ESC is operating.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
 - It illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then goes off.
- When you deactivate the ESC system by pressing the ESC OFF button.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Stability Control (ESC)" in chapter 5.

Immobiliser Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates for up to 30 seconds:

- When the vehicle detects the smart key in the vehicle when the Engine Start/Stop button to the ACC or ON position.
 - At this time, you can start the engine.
 - The indicator light goes off after starting the engine.

This indicator light blinks for a few seconds:

- When the smart key is not in the vehicle.
 - At this time, you cannot start the engine.

This indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and goes off:

- If the smart key is in the vehicle and the Engine Start/Stop button is ON, but the vehicle cannot detect the smart key.

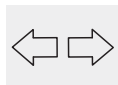
In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

This indicator light blinks:

- When the battery voltage of the smart key is low.
 - At this time, you cannot start the engine. However, you can start the engine if you press the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key. **(For more details, refer to "Starting the Engine" in chapter 5).**
- When there is a malfunction with the immobiliser system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Turn Signal Indicator Light



This indicator light blinks:

- When you operate the turn signals.

If any of the following occur, there may be a malfunction with the turn signal system.

- The turn signal indicator light illuminates but does not blink
- The turn signal indicator light blinks rapidly
- The turn signal indicator light does not illuminate at all

If any of these conditions occur, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Low Beam Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlamps are on.

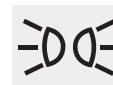
High Beam Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the headlamps are on and in the high beam position.
- When the turn signal lever is pulled into the Flash-to-Pass position.

Light ON Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the tail lights or headlamps are on.

High Beam Assist (HBA) indicator light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When the high-beam is on with the light switch in the AUTO light position.
- If your vehicle detects oncoming or preceding vehicles, the High Beam Assist (HBA) system will switch the high beam to low beam automatically.

For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA)" in this chapter.

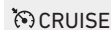
AUTO HOLD Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- [White] When you activate the Auto Hold system by pressing the AUTO HOLD button.
- [Green] When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal with the Auto Hold system activated.
- [Yellow] When there is a malfunction with the Auto Hold system.

In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Auto Hold" in chapter 5.

Cruise Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When the cruise control system is enabled.

For more details, refer to "Cruise Control System" in chapter 5.

SPORT Mode Indicator Light

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "SPORT" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

SPORT+ Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)

This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "SPORT+" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

ECO Mode Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "ECO" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

COMFORT Mode Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "COMFORT" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

SMART Mode Indicator Light



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "SMART" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

CUSTOM Mode Indicator Light (if equipped)



This indicator light illuminates:

- When you select "CUSTOM" mode as drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

Icy Road Warning Light (if equipped)



This warning light is to warn the driver the road may be icy.

When the temperature on the outside temperature gauge is approximately below 4°C (40°F), the Icy Road Warning Light and Outside Temperature Gauge blinks and then illuminates. Also, the warning chime sounds 1 time.

i Information

If the icy road warning light appears whilst driving, you should drive more attentively and safely, refraining from over-speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden braking or sharp turning, etc.

LCD display messages

Press P

This warning message is displayed if you try to turn off the vehicle with the gear in N (Neutral).

At this time, the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position. If you press the Engine Start/Stop button once more, it will turn to the ON position.

Low key battery

This warning message is displayed if the battery of the smart key is discharged whilst changing the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

Press START button while turning wheel

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel does not unlock normally when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed.

You should press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left.

Steering wheel unlocked

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel is not locked whilst the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position.

Check steering wheel lock system

This warning message is displayed if the steering wheel does not lock normally whilst the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the OFF position.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This warning message is displayed if the Engine Start/Stop button changes to the ACC position by pressing the button repeatedly without depressing the brake pedal.

You can start the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.

Key not in vehicle

This warning message is displayed if the smart key is not in the vehicle when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

When attempting to start the vehicle always have the smart key with you.

Key not detected

This warning message is displayed if the smart key is not detected when you press the Engine Start/Stop button.

Press START button with key

This warning message is displayed if you press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst the warning message "Key not detected" is displayed.

At this time, the immobiliser indicator light blinks.

Press START button again

This message is displayed if you were unable to start the vehicle when the Engine Start/Stop button was pressed.

If this occurs, attempt to start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button again.

If the warning message appears each time you press the Engine Start/Stop button, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check BRAKE SWITCH fuse

This warning message is displayed if the brake switch fuse is disconnected.

You need to replace the fuse with a new one. If that is not possible, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds in the ACC position.

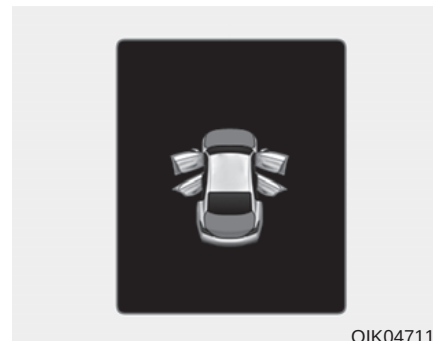
Shift to P or N to start engine

This warning message is displayed if you try to start the engine without shifting to the P (Park) or N (Neutral) position.

***i* Information**

You can start the engine with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position. But, for your safety, we recommend that you start the engine with the vehicle shifted to P (Park).

Door, Bonnet, Boot open



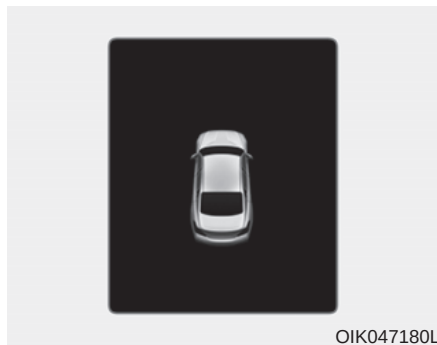
This warning is displayed indicating which door, the bonnet, or the boot is open.



CAUTION

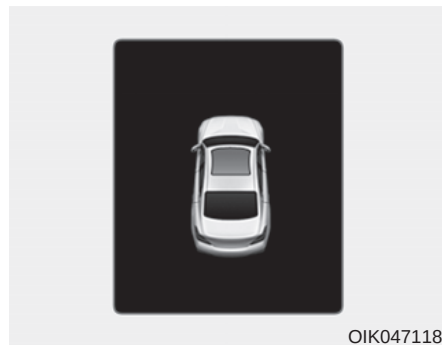
Before driving the vehicle, you should confirm that the door/bonnet/boot is fully closed. Also, check there is no door/bonnet/boot open warning light or message displayed on the instrument cluster.

Window open



This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when any window is open.

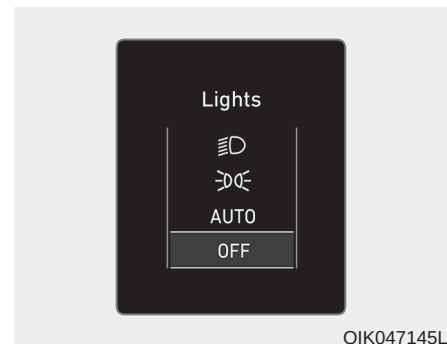
Sunroof open (if equipped)



This warning is displayed if you turn off the engine when the sunroof is open.

Close the sunroof securely when leaving your vehicle.

Lights mode



This indicator displays which exterior light is selected using the lighting control.

Wiper mode



This indicator displays which wiper speed is selected using the wiper control.

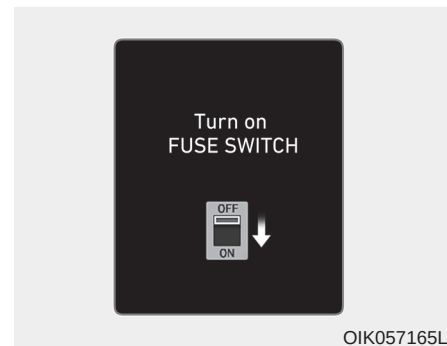
Low Pressure



This warning message is displayed if the tyre pressure is low. The corresponding tyre on the vehicle will be illuminated.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.

Turn on FUSE SWITCH



This warning message is displayed if the fuse switch located in the fuse box under the steering wheel is OFF. You should turn the fuse switch on.

For more details, refer to "Fuses" in chapter 7.

Low Washer Fluid

This warning message is displayed if the washer fluid level in the reservoir is nearly empty.

Have the washer fluid reservoir refilled.

Low Fuel

This warning message is displayed if the fuel tank is almost out of fuel.

When this message is displayed, the low fuel level warning light in the cluster will come on.

It is recommended to look for the nearest service station and refuel as soon as possible.

Add fuel as soon as possible.

Engine has overheated

This warning message is displayed when the engine coolant temperature is above 120°C (248°F). This means that the engine is overheated and may be damaged.

If your vehicle is overheated, refer to "Overheating" in chapter 6.

Check headlight (High/Low) (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if the headlamps are not operating properly. A headlamp bulb may need to be replaced.

Check turn signal (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if the turn signal lamps are not operating properly. A lamp may need to be replaced.

Information

Make sure to replace the burned out bulb with a new one of the same wattage rating.

Check headlamp LED (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the LED headlamps. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check HBA (High Beam Assist) system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the High Beam Assist (HBA) System. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "High Beam Assist (HBA) System" in chapter 3.

Check Active Hood System (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the active bonnet system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check haptic steering wheel system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the haptic steering wheel system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check shift lever

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the shift lever. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Automatic Transmission" in chapter 5.

Shifter system error

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the shift lever. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Automatic Transmission" in chapter 5.

Check electronic suspension

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Electronic Control Suspension (ECS)" in chapter 5.

Check FCA (Forward Collision Avoidance Asst.) (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system" in chapter 5.

Check BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Blind-Spot Collision Warning system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision Warning" in chapter 5.

Check DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system" in chapter 5.

Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system" in chapter 5.

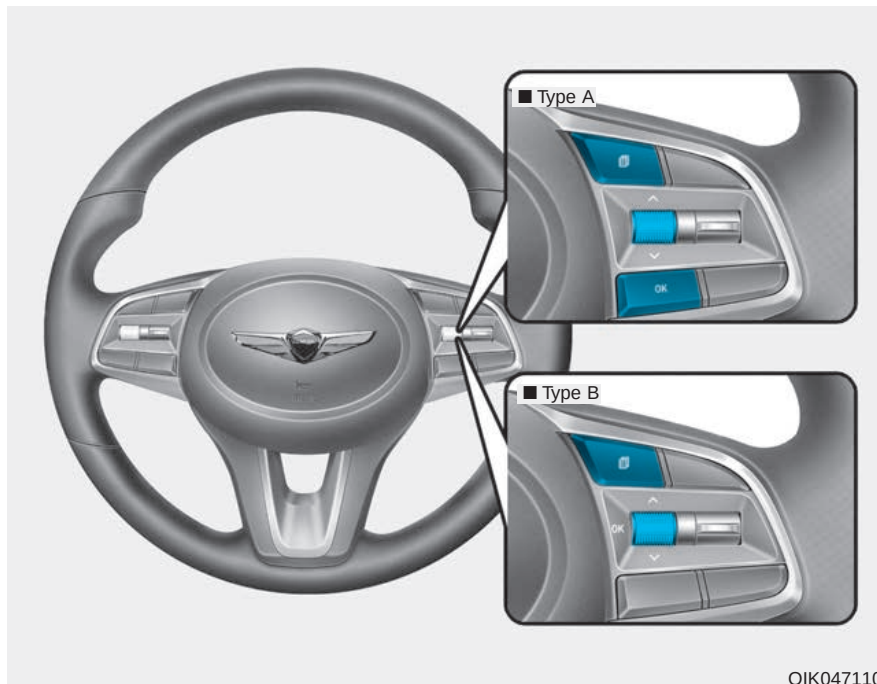
Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system (if equipped)

This warning message is displayed if there is a problem with the Smart Cruise Control system. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to "Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go" in chapter 5.

LCD DISPLAY

LCD display control



The LCD display modes can be changed by using the control buttons.

-  : MODE button for changing modes
-  ,  : MOVE switch for changing items
- OK : SELECT/RESET button for setting or resetting the selected item

OIK047110

LCD display modes

Modes	Symbol	Explanation
Sport		This mode displays Gauge, Lap Timer and G-Force. For more details, refer to the following pages.
Trip Computer		This mode displays driving information such as the tripmeter, fuel economy, etc. For more details, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.
Turn By Turn (TBT)		This mode displays the state of the navigation.
Assist		This mode displays the state of : - Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system - Smart Cruise Control - Driver Attention Warning (DAW) - Tyre Pressure For more details, refer to "Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go", "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)", "Driver Attention Warning (DAW)" in chapter 5 and "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.
Theme Selection (if equipped)		The theme selection mode provides variety of themes for 3D instrument cluster.
User Settings		In this mode, you can change settings of the doors, lamps, etc.
Master Warning		This mode displays warning messages related to the High Beam Assist system, etc.

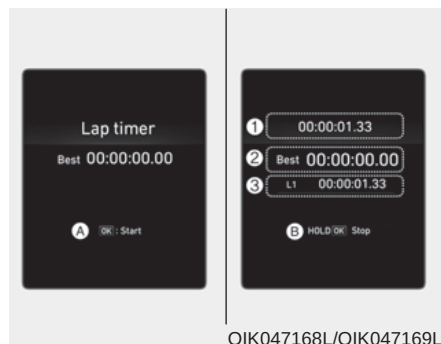
The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Sport mode



Gauges

This mode displays information related to your engine such as engine oil temperature (1), current torque (2) and turbo boost pressure (3).



Lap timer

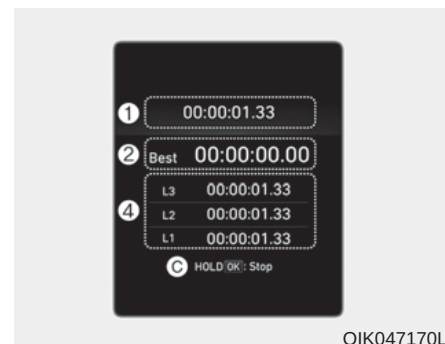
- (1) Total time
- (2) Best lap
- (3) Current lap

To start (A):

Press the OK button briefly on the steering wheel. The lap timer will start counting the current lap (3).

To stop (B):

Press and hold the OK button for more than 1 second on the steering wheel whilst the lap timer is counting the current lap (3).



To reset (C):

Press and hold the OK button for more than 1 second on the steering wheel when the lap timer has stopped counting the current lap (3). If the OK button is pressed briefly, the lap timer will continue counting from the time it has been stopped.

To save laps:

Press the OK button briefly on the steering wheel whilst the lap timer is counting the current lap (3).

The timer can save L1~ L3 (4).

The best lap (2) will be displayed automatically.

The saved laps can be reset when the current lap is reset.

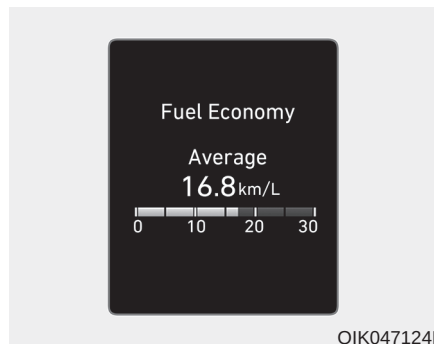
To start a new lap press the OK button when the current lap is reset.



G-Force

This mode displays the force delivered to the vehicle laterally whilst the vehicle is in motion.

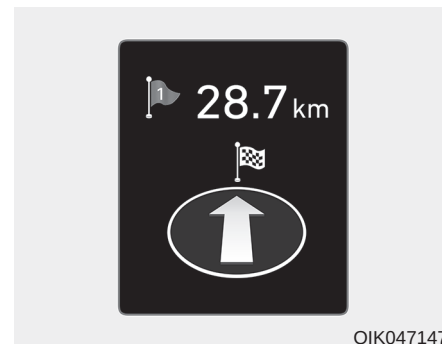
Trip computer mode



The trip computer mode displays information related to vehicle driving parameters including fuel economy, tripmeter information and vehicle speed.

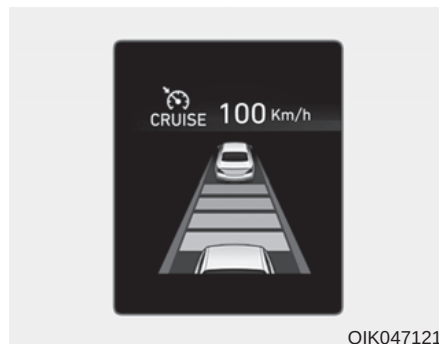
For more details, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.

Turn By Turn (TBT) mode



This mode displays the state of the navigation.

Assist mode



SCC/LKA/DAW

This mode displays the state of the Smart Cruise Control (SCC), Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) and Driver Attention Warning (DAW).

For more details, refer to each system information in chapter 5.

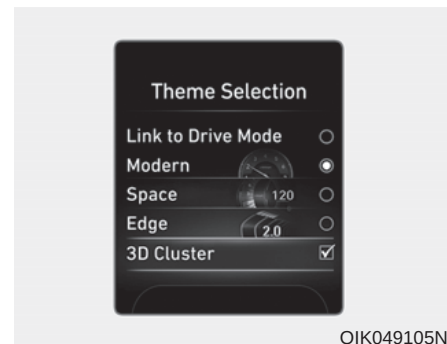


Tyre Pressure

This mode displays information related to Tyre Pressure.

For more details, refer to "Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)" in chapter 6.

Theme Selection (if equipped)



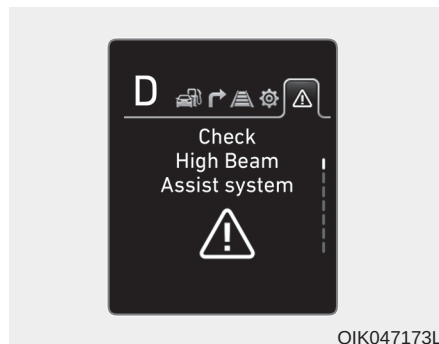
After the 3D cluster is selected, you may select the theme for the 3D cluster.

The following themes can be selected.

- Link to Drive Mode:
The theme changes according the drive mode selected.
- Modern
- Space
- Edge

According to the theme selected, the design of the speedometer, tachometer, engine coolant temperature gauge and fuel gauge changes.

Master warning mode

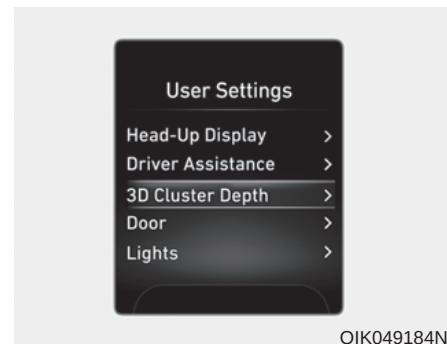


If one of following occurs, warning messages will be displayed on the LCD display for several seconds.

- LED headlamp malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist system malfunction (if equipped)
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist radar blocked (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning system malfunction (if equipped)
- Blind-Spot Collision Warning radar blocked (if equipped)

- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go malfunction (if equipped)
- Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go radar blocked (if equipped)
- Active bonnet system malfunction (if equipped)
- Lamp malfunction
- High Beam Assist malfunction (if equipped)
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) malfunction

User settings mode



In this mode, you can change the settings of the instrument cluster, doors, lamps, etc.

1. Head-Up display
2. Driver assistance
3. 3D Cluster Depth (for Cluster type C)
4. Door
5. Lights
6. Sound

- 7. Convenience
- 8. Service interval
- 9. Other features
- 10. Reset

The information provided may differ depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

Information

- **Settings available after shifting to P**

This warning message illuminates if you try to select an item from the User Settings mode when driving.

For your safety, change the User Settings after parking the vehicle, applying the parking brake and shifting the vehicle to P (Park).

- **Quick guide (Help)**

This mode provides quick guides for the systems in the User Settings mode. Select an item, press and hold the OK button.

1. Head-Up Display

Items	Explanation
Display Height	To adjust the height of the image displayed.
Rotation	To adjust the angle of the image displayed.
Brightness	To adjust the brightness of the image displayed.
Content selection	To select the content to be displayed.
Speedometer size	- Large/Medium/Small To select the speedometer size displayed.
Speedometer colour	- White/Orange/Green To select the speedometer colour displayed.

2. Driver Assistance

Items	Explanation
SCC response	- Fast/Normal/Slow To adjust the sensitivity of the Smart Cruise Control system. For more details, refer to "Smart Cruise Control with Stop & Go" in chapter 5.
DAW (Driver Attention Warning)	- Off/Normal sensitivity/High sensitivity To adjust the sensitivity of the Driver Attention Warning (DAW). For more details, refer to the "Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system" in chapter 5.
Lane safety	- Active LKA - Standard LKA - LDW (Lane Departure Warning) To adjust the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) function. For more details, refer to the "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system" in chapter 5.
FCA (Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist)	To activate or deactivate the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA). For more details, refer to the "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system" in chapter 5.
FCW (Forward Collision Warning)	- Early/Normal/Late To adjust the initial warning alert time for Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system. For more details, refer to "Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system" in chapter 5.
Sound for BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)	To activate or deactivate the Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) sound. For more details, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system" in chapter 5.
RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)	To activate or deactivate the Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning function. For more details, refer to "Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system" in chapter 5.

3. 3D Cluster Depth (for Cluster type C)

Items	Explanation
Off	To deactivate the 3D effect.
Medium	To turn on the 3D effect, and adjust the 3D cluster depth to medium.
Maximum	To activate the 3D effect, and adjust the 3D cluster depth to maximum.

4. Door

Items	Explanation
Auto lock	- Disable: The auto door lock operation will be cancelled. - Enable on Speed: All doors will be automatically locked when the vehicle speed exceeds 15km/h. - Enable on Shift: All doors will be automatically locked if the automatic transmission shift lever is shifted from the P (Park) position to the R (Reverse), N (Neutral), or D (Drive) position.
Auto unlock	- Disable: The auto door unlock operation will be cancelled. - Vehicle Off: All doors will be automatically unlocked when the Engine Star/Stop button is set to the OFF position. - On Shift to P: All doors will be automatically unlocked if the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position.
Smart Trunk	To activate or deactivate the smart boot system. For more details, refer to "Smart Boot" in this chapter.

5. Lights

Items	Explanation
One touch turn indicator	- Off: The one touch turn signal function will be deactivated. - 3, 5, 7 Flashes: The turn signal indicator will blink 3, 5, or 7 times when the turn signal lever is moved slightly. For more details, refer to "Lighting" in this chapter.
Ambient light brightness	- Off/Level 1/Level 2/Level 3/Level 4 To adjust the brightness of the Ambient Light (cabin mood light setting).
Head lamp delay	To activate or deactivate the headlamp delay function. For more details, refer to "Lighting" in this chapter.
Travel Mode	To activate or deactivate the traffic change function. For more details, refer to "Lighting" in this chapter.

6. Sound

Items	Explanation
Volume for PDW (Parking Distance Warning)	- Level 1/Level 2/Level 3 To adjust the Parking Distance Warning system volume.
Welcome sound	To activate or deactivate the welcome sound.

7. Convenience

Items	Explanation
Seat easy access	- Off: The seat easy access function is deactivated. - Normal/Extended: When you turn off the engine, the driver's seat will automatically move rearward short (Normal) or long (Extended) for you to enter or exit the vehicle more comfortably. For more details, refer to "Driver Position Memory System" in this chapter.
Steering easy access	- On: The steering wheel will automatically move when the driver enters or exits the vehicle. - Off: The steering easy access function will be deactivated. For more details, refer to "Driver Position Memory System" in this chapter.
Welcome mirror/light	- On door unlock: The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the doors are unlocked. - On driver approach: The outside rearview mirrors are unfolded and the welcome light turns on automatically when the vehicle is approached with the smart key. For more details, refer to "Welcome System" in this chapter.
Wireless charging system	To activate or deactivate the wireless charging system in the front seat. For more details, refer to "Wireless Charging System" in this chapter.

7. Convenience

Items	Explanation
Wiper/Lights display	To activate or deactivate the Wiper/Light mode. When activated, the LCD display shows the selected Wiper/Light mode whenever you change the mode.
Gear position pop-up	To activate or deactivate the gear position pop-up. When activated, the gear position will be displayed on the LCD display.
Icy road warning	To activate or deactivate the icy road warning.
Lateral seat support for SPORT mode	To activate or deactivate the lateral seat support for SPORT mode. When activated, it increases lateral seat bolster support when SPORT mode is selected.

8. Service Interval

Items	Explanation
Service interval	To activate or deactivate the service interval function.
Adjust interval	If the service interval menu is activated, you may adjust the time and distance.

Information

To use the service interval menu, consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

If the service interval is activated and the time and distance is adjusted, messages are displayed in the following situations each time the vehicle is turned on.

- Service in: Displayed to inform the driver the remaining mileage and days to service.
- Service required: Displayed when the mileage and days to service has been reached or passed.

Information

If any of the following conditions occur, the mileage and number of days to service may be incorrect.

- **The battery cable is disconnected.**
- **The fuse switch is turned off.**
- **The battery is discharged.**

9. Other features

Items	Explanation
Fuel economy auto reset	- Off: The average fuel economy will not reset automatically whenever refuelling. - After ignition: The average fuel economy will reset automatically whenever it has passed 4 hours after turning OFF the engine. - After refuelling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically when refuelling. For more details, refer to "Trip Computer" in this chapter.
Fuel economy unit	To select the fuel economy unit. (km/L, L/100km)
Temperature unit	To select the temperature unit. (°C, °F)
Tyre pressure unit	To select the tyre pressure unit. (psi, kPa, bar)
Torque unit	To select the torque unit. (Nm/lb·ft)
Language	To select language.

10. Reset

Items	Explanation
Reset	You can reset the menus in the User Settings Mode. All menus in the User Settings Mode are initialised, except language and service interval.

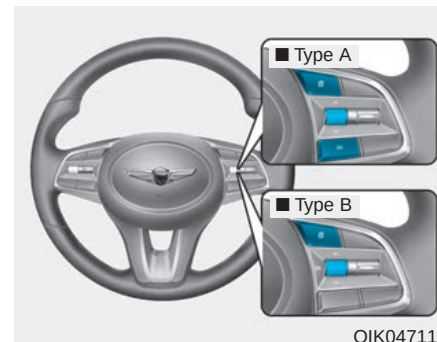
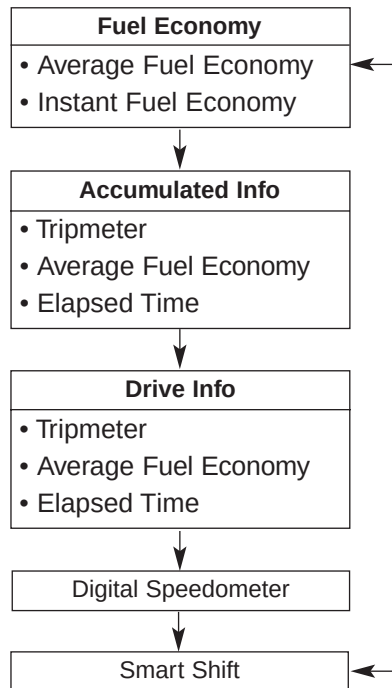
TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer is a microcomputer-controlled driver information system that displays information related to driving.

i Information

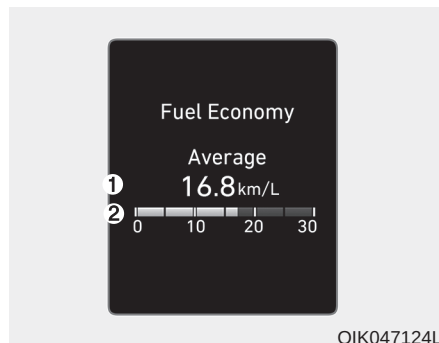
Some driving information stored in the trip computer (for example Average Vehicle Speed) resets if the battery is disconnected.

Trip modes



To change the trip mode, toggle the “^, v” switch on the steering wheel.

Fuel economy



Average Fuel Economy (1)

- The average fuel economy is calculated by the total driving distance and fuel consumption since the last average fuel economy reset.
- The average fuel economy can be reset both manually and automatically.

Manual reset

To clear the average fuel economy manually, press the OK button on the steering wheel for more than 1 second when the average fuel economy is displayed.

Automatic reset

To automatically reset the average fuel economy after refuelling, select the "Fuel economy auto reset" mode in the User Settings menu on the LCD display.

- After ignition: The average fuel economy will reset automatically whenever it has passed 4 hours after turning OFF the engine.
- After refuelling: The average fuel economy will reset automatically when driving speed exceeds 1 km/h, after adding 6 litres of fuel or more.

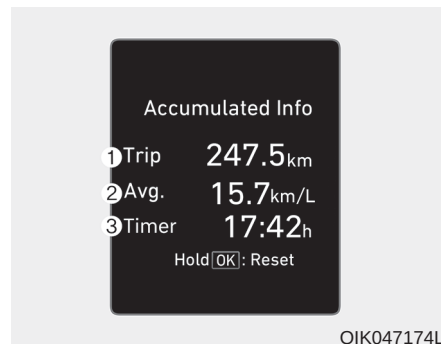
i Information

The average fuel economy may be inaccurate, when the vehicle drives shorter than 300 metres after turning ON the Engine Start/Stop button.

Instant Fuel Economy (2)

- This mode displays the instant fuel economy during the last few seconds when the vehicle speed is more than 10 km/h.

Accumulated Info display



This display shows the accumulated trip distance (1), the average fuel economy (2), and the total driving time (3).

The information is calculated starting from the last reset.

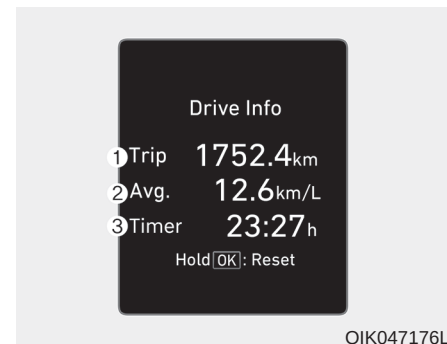
To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the accumulated driving info. The trip distance, the average fuel economy, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The accumulated driving information will continue to be counted when the engine is still running (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light).

Information

The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the average fuel economy will be recalculated.

Driving Info display



This display shows the trip distance (1), the average fuel economy (2), and the total driving time (3).

The information is calculated for each ignition cycle. The driving information data gets initialised, when it has passed 4 hours after turning OFF the engine. In other words, the last driving information is available 4 hours after you have turned on the engine.

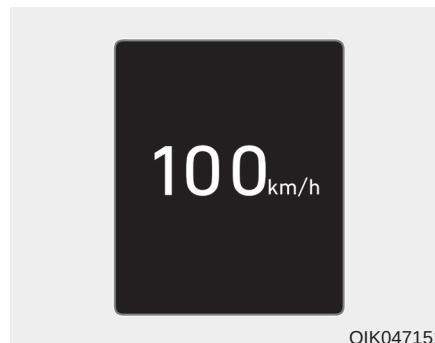
To manually reset the information, press and hold the OK button when viewing the driving information. The trip distance, the average fuel economy, and total driving time will reset simultaneously.

The driving information will continue to be counted when the engine is still running (for example, when the vehicle is in traffic or stopped at a stop light.)

Information

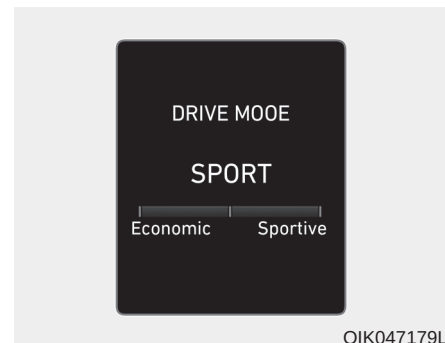
The vehicle must be driven for a minimum of 300 metres since the last ignition key cycle before the average fuel economy will be recalculated.

Digital Speedometer



This message shows the speed of the vehicle (km/h).

Smart Shift



This mode displays the currently selected drive mode.

For more details, refer to "Drive Mode Integrated Control System" in chapter 5.

HEAD UP DISPLAY (HUD) (IF EQUIPPED)



The head up display is a transparent display which projects a shadow of information of the instrument cluster and navigation on the windscreen glass.

Precautions when using the head up display

It may be difficult to read information on the head up display in the following situations.

- The driver is improperly positioned in the driver's seat.
- The driver wears polarizing-filter sunglasses.
- An object is located above the head up display cover.
- The vehicle is driven on a wet road.
- Any improper lighting accessory is installed inside the vehicle, or there is incoming light from outside of the vehicle.
- The driver wears glasses.
- The driver wears contact lenses.

When it is difficult to read the head up display information, adjust the head up display angle or the head up display brightness level in the User Settings mode.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not tint the front windscreen glass or add other types of metallic coating. Otherwise, the head up display image may be invisible.
- Do not place any accessories on the crash pad or attach any objects on the windscreen glass.
- The Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system warnings on the head up display are mere supplemental. Do not solely depend on them to change lanes. Always check the surroundings before changing lanes.



CAUTION

When replacing the front wind-screen glass of the vehicles equipped with the head up display, replace it with a wind-screen glass designed for the head up display operation. Otherwise, duplicated images may be displayed on the wind-screen glass.

Head-Up display ON/OFF



To activate the head up display, select 'Head-Up display' on the User Settings mode on the instrument cluster LCD display.

If you do not select 'Head-Up display', the head up display will be deactivated.

Head-Up display information



1. Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information
2. Road signs
3. Speedometer
4. Cruise setting speed
5. Smart Cruise Control (SCC) information (if equipped)
6. Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system information (if equipped)
7. Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system information (if equipped)
8. Warning lights (Low fuel)
9. Audio/Video information

Information

If you select the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information as HUD contents, the Turn By Turn (TBT) navigation information will not be displayed on the instrument cluster LCD display.

Head-Up display setting

On the LCD display, you can change the head up display settings as follows.

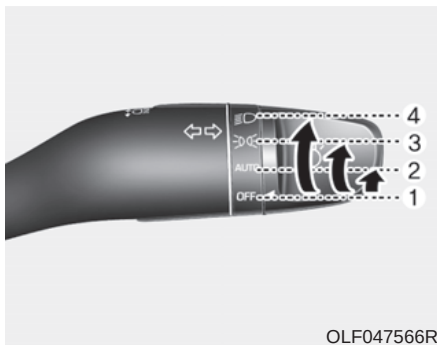
- Display height
- Rotation
- Brightness
- Content selection
- Speedometer size
- Speedometer colour

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

LIGHTING

Exterior lights

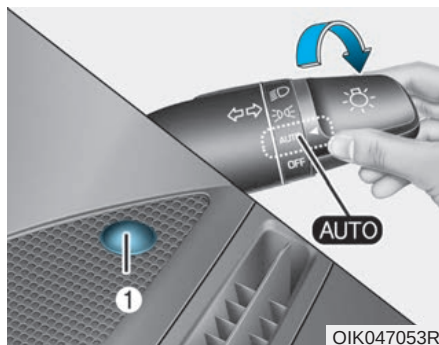
Lighting control



OLF047566R

To operate the lights, turn the knob at the end of the control lever to one of the following positions:

- (1) OFF (O) position
- (2) AUTO light position
- (3) Parking lamp position
- (4) Headlamp position



OIK047053R

AUTO light position

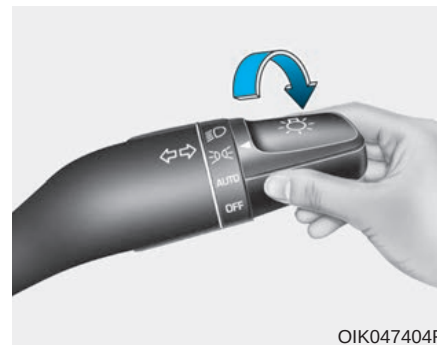
When the light switch is in the AUTO position, the parking lamp and headlamp will be turned ON or OFF automatically depending on the amount of light outside the vehicle.

Even with the AUTO light feature in operation, it is recommended to manually turn ON the lamps when driving at night or in fog, or when you enter dark areas, such as tunnels and parking facilities.

NOTICE

- Do not cover or spill anything on the sensor (1) located on the instrument panel.

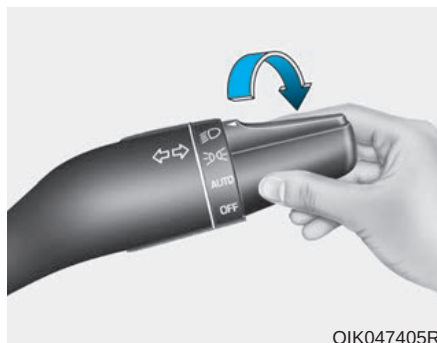
- Do not clean the sensor using a window cleaner, as the cleanser may leave a light film which could interfere with sensor operation.
- If your vehicle has window tint or other types of metallic coating on the front windscreen, the AUTO light system may not work properly.



OIK047404R

Parking lamp position (驻车灯)

The parking lamp, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.



OIK047405R

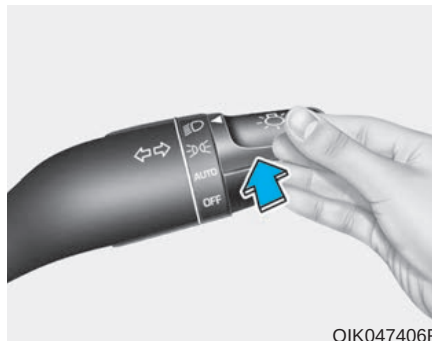
Headlamp position (ON)

The headlamp, parking lamp, licence plate lamp and instrument panel lamp are turned ON.

i Information

The Engine Start/Stop button must be in the ON position to turn on the headlamp.

High beam operation

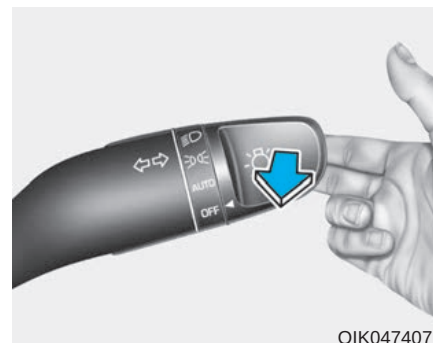


OIK047406R

To turn on the high beam headlamp, push the lever away from you. The lever will return to its original position.

The high beam indicator will light when the headlamp high beams are switched on.

To turn off the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you. The low beams will turn on.



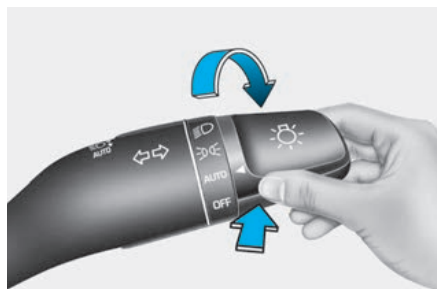
OIK047407R

To flash the high beam headlamp, pull the lever towards you, then release the lever. The high beams will remain ON as long as you hold the lever towards you.

⚠ WARNING

Do not use high beam when there are other vehicles approaching you. Using high beam could obstruct the other driver's vision.

High Beam Assist (HBA) system (if equipped)



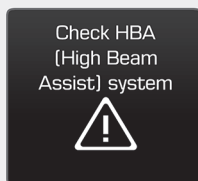
OIK047090R

High Beam Assist (HBA) is a system that automatically adjusts the headlamp range (switches between high beam and low beam) according to the brightness of other vehicles and road conditions.

Operating condition

1. Place the light switch in the AUTO position.
 2. Turn on the high beam by pushing the lever away from you.
 3. The High Beam Assist (HBA) () indicator will illuminate.
 4. The High Beam Assist (HBA) will turn on when vehicle speed is above 45km/h.
 - 1) If the light switch is pushed away when the High Beam Assist (HBA) is operating, the High Beam Assist (HBA) will turn off and the high beam will be on continuously.
 - 2) If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is off, the high beam will turn on without the High Beam Assist (HBA) cancelled. When you let go of the light switch, the lever will move to the middle and the high beam will turn off.
 - 3) If the light switch is pulled towards you when the high beam is on by the High Beam Assist (HBA), the low beam will be on and the High Beam Assist (HBA) will turn off.
 - 4) If the light switch is placed to the headlamp position, the High Beam Assist (HBA) will turn off and the low beam will be on continuously.
- When the High Beam Assist (HBA) is operating, the high beam switches to low beam in the following conditions.
- When the headlamp of an on-coming vehicle is detected.
 - When the tail lamp of a vehicle in front is detected.
 - When the headlamp/tail lamp of a bicycle/motorcycle is detected.
 - When the surroundings are bright enough high beams are not needed.
 - When streetlights or other lights are detected.
 - When the light switch is not in the AUTO position.
 - When the High Beam Assist (HBA) is off.
 - When vehicle speed is below 35 km/h.

Warning light and message



OOS047127R

When the High Beam Assist (HBA) is not working properly, the warning message will come on for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light (⚠) will illuminate.

We recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked.

⚠ CAUTION

The system may not operate normally in the following conditions.

When the light from an on-coming or vehicle in front is dim

- When the light from the on-coming or vehicle in front is not detected because of lamp damage, hidden from sight, etc.
- When the lights of an on-coming or vehicle in front are covered with dust, snow or water.
- When the on-coming or vehicle in front headlamps are off but the fog lamps are on.

When it is affected by an external condition

- When there is a similar shaped lamp with the front vehicle's lamps.
- When the headlamp is not repaired or replaced at an authorised dealer.
- When headlamp aiming is not properly adjusted.
- When driving on a narrow winding road or rough road.
- When driving downhill or uphill.
- When only part of the vehicle in front is visible on a cross-road or on a corner.
- When there is a traffic light, reflecting sign, flashing sign or mirror.
- When the road conditions are bad such as being wet or covered with snow.
- When a vehicle suddenly appears from around a corner.
- When the vehicle is tilted from a flat tyre or being towed.

- When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system warning light illuminates. (if equipped)

When the front visibility is poor

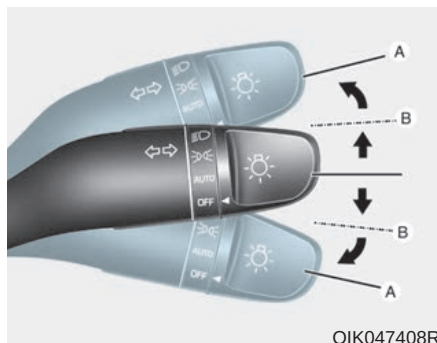
- When the lights of an on-coming or vehicle in front are covered with dust, snow or water.
- When the light from an on-coming or vehicle in front is not detected because of exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, etc.
- When the front window is covered with foreign matter.
- When it is hard to see because of fog, heavy rain or snow etc.

WARNING

- Do not disassemble the front view camera temporarily to tint the window or attach any types of coatings or accessories. If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked to be calibrated.
- When you replace or reinstall the windscreen glass, front view camera, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked.
- Be careful that water doesn't get into the High Beam Assist (HBA) unit and do not remove or damage related parts of the High Beam Assist (HBA) system.

- Do not place objects on the instrument panel that reflect light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if sunlight is reflected.
- At times, the High Beam Assist (HBA) may not work properly. The system is for your convenience only. It is the responsibility of the driver to follow safe driving practices and always check the road conditions for your safety.
- When the system does not operate normally, change the lamp position manually between the high beam and low beam.

Turn signals and lane change signals



To signal a turn, push down on the lever for a right turn or up for a left turn in position (A). To signal a lane change, move the turn signal lever slightly and hold it in position (B). The lever will return to the OFF position when released or when the turn is completed.

If an indicator stays on and does not flash or if it flashes abnormally, one of the turn signal bulbs may be burned out and will require replacement.

One-touch turn signal function

To activate a one-touch turn signal function, move the turn signal lever slightly and then release it. The lane change signals will blink 3, 5 or 7 times.

You can activate/deactivate the One Touch Turn Signal function or choose the number of blinks (3, 5, or 7) from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

Battery saver function

The purpose of this feature is to prevent the battery from being discharged. The system automatically turns off the parking lamp when the driver turns the engine off and opens the driver-side door.

With this feature, the parking lamps will turn off automatically if the driver parks on the side of road at night.

If it is necessary to keep the lamps on when the engine is turned off, perform the following:

- 1) Open the driver-side door.
- 2) Turn the parking lamps OFF and ON again using the light switch on the steering column.

Headlamp delay function (if equipped)

If you place the Engine Start/Stop button to the ACC or OFF position with the headlamps ON, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) remain on for about 5 minutes. However, with the engine off if the driver's door is opened and closed, the headlamps (and/or parking lamps) are turned off after 15 seconds.

The headlamps (and/or parking lamps) can be turned off by pressing the lock button on the smart key twice or turning the light switch to the OFF or AUTO position. However, if you turn the light switch to the AUTO position when it is dark outside, the headlamps will not be turned off.

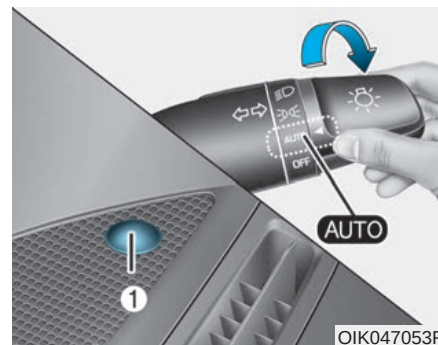
You can activate or deactivate the Headlamp Delay function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

NOTICE

If the driver gets out of the vehicle through other doors (except driver's door), the battery saver function does not operate and the headlamp delay function does not turn off automatically. Therefore, it causes the battery to be discharged. In this case, make sure to turn off the lamps before getting out of the vehicle.

Adaptive Front-Lighting System (AFS) (if equipped)



Adaptive front lighting system uses the steering angle and vehicle speed, to keep your field of vision wide by swiveling and levelling the headlamp.

Change the switch to the AUTO position when the engine is running. The adaptive front lighting system will operate when the headlamp is ON.

To turn off the AFS, change the switch to other positions. After turning the AFS off, headlamp swiveling no longer occurs, but levelling operates continuously.



If the AFS malfunction indicator comes on, the AFS is not working properly.

Drive to the nearest safe location and restart the engine. If the indicator continuously remains on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Daytime running light (DRL) (if equipped)

The Daytime Running Lights (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day, especially after dawn and before sunset.

The DRL system will turn the dedicated lamps OFF when:

1. The headlamps are ON.
2. The parking brake is applied.
3. The engine is turned off.

Headlamp levelling device (if equipped)



Manual type

To adjust the headlamp beam level according to the number of the passengers and loading weight in the luggage compartment, turn the beam levelling switch.

The higher the number on the switch position, the lower the headlamp beam level. Always keep the headlight beam at the proper levelling position, or headlamps may dazzle other road users.

Listed below are examples of appropriate switch settings for varying loads. For loading conditions other than those listed, adjust the switch position to the most similar situation.

Loading condition	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver + Front passenger	0
Full passengers (including driver)	1
Full passengers (including driver) + Maximum permissible loading	2
Driver + Maximum permissible loading	3

Automatic type

It automatically adjusts the headlamp beam level according to the number of passengers and loading weight in the luggage compartment.

It also adjusts to the appropriate headlamp beam level for various situations.

WARNING

If the function does not work properly, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer. Do not attempt to inspect or replace the wiring yourself.

Welcome system (if equipped)

Welcome light (if equipped)



OIK047054

Puddle lamp and door handle lamp

With all the doors (and boot) closed and locked, the puddle lamp and door handle lamp will come on for about 15 seconds if any of the below is performed.

1. If 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display,
 - the lamps will turn on when the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

- the lamps will turn on when the button of the outside door handle is pressed with the smart key in possession.
2. If both 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On door unlock' and 'Convenience → Welcome mirror/light → On driver approach' is selected in the User Settings mode on the LCD display, the lamps will turn on when the vehicle is approached with the smart key in possession.

You can activate or deactivate Welcome Light function from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display" in this chapter.

Headlamp and parking lamp

When the headlamp (lamp switch in the headlamp or AUTO position) is on and all doors (and boot) are locked and closed, the parking lamp and headlamp will come on for 15 seconds when the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the parking lamp and headlamp will turn off immediately.

Interior lamp

When the interior lamp switch is in the DOOR position and all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the passenger compartment lamp will come on for 30 seconds if any of the below is performed.

- When the door unlock button is pressed on the smart key.
- When the button of the outside door handle is pressed with the smart key in possession.

At this time, if you press the door lock or unlock button, the passenger compartment lamp will turn off immediately.

Interior lights

NOTICE

Do not use the interior lights for extended periods when the engine is turned off otherwise the battery will discharge.

WARNING

Do not use the interior lights when driving in the dark. The interior lights may obscure your view and cause an accident.

Interior lamp AUTO cut

The interior lamps will automatically go off approximately 20 minutes after the engine is turned off and the doors are closed. If a door is opened, the lamp will go off 40 minutes after the engine is turned off. If the doors are locked and the vehicle enters the armed stage of the theft alarm system, the lamps will go off 5 seconds later.

Front lamps



- (1) Front Map Lamp
- (2) Front passenger compartment Lamp
- (3) Front Door Lamp

Front map lamp (☞ ☜)

Press either buttons to turn the map lamp on or off. This light produces a spot beam for convenient use as a map lamp at night or as a personal lamp for the driver and the front passenger.

Front passenger compartment lamp



Press this button to turn the front and rear passenger compartment lamps on or off.

Front door lamp (☞ ☜)

The front or rear passenger compartment lamps come on when the front or rear doors are opened if the engine is running or not. When doors are unlocked using the smart key, the front and rear lamps come on for approximately 30 seconds as long as any door is not opened. The front and rear passenger compartment lamps go out gradually after approximately 30 seconds if the door is closed. However, if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position or all doors are locked, the front and rear lamps will turn off. If a door is opened with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position or the OFF position, the front and rear lamps stay on for about 20 minutes.

Rear lamps



-  :

Press this button to turn the passenger compartment lamp on or off.

-   :

Press either of these buttons to turn either side of the rear lamp on or off.

NOTICE

Do not leave the lamp switches on for an extended period of time when the engine is turned off.

Boot lamp

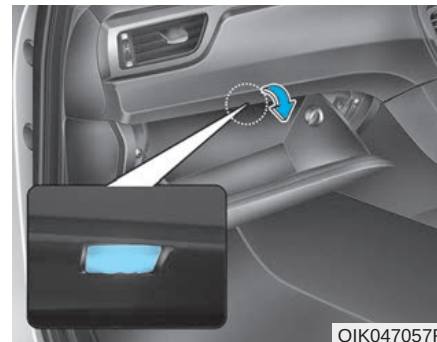


The boot lamp comes on when the boot is opened.

NOTICE

The boot lamp comes on as long as the boot is open. To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the boot securely after using the boot.

Glove box lamp



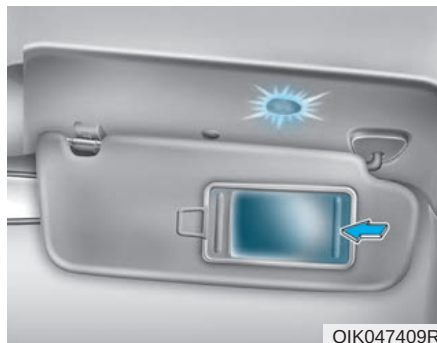
The glove box lamp comes on when the glove box is opened.

If the glove box is not closed, the lamp will turn off after 20 minutes.

NOTICE

To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the glove box securely after using the glove box.

Vanity mirror lamp

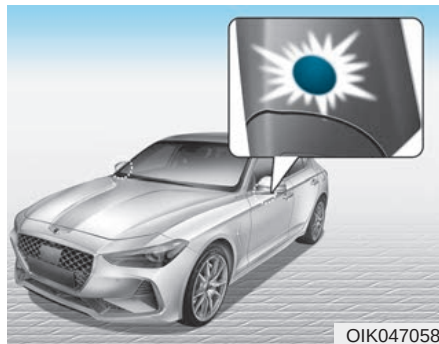


Opening the lid of the vanity mirror will automatically turn on the mirror light.

NOTICE

To prevent unnecessary battery drain, close the vanity mirror cover after using the mirror.

Puddle lamp



Welcome light

When all doors (and boot) are closed and locked, the puddle lamp will come on for 15 seconds if the door is unlocked using the smart key or outside door handle button.

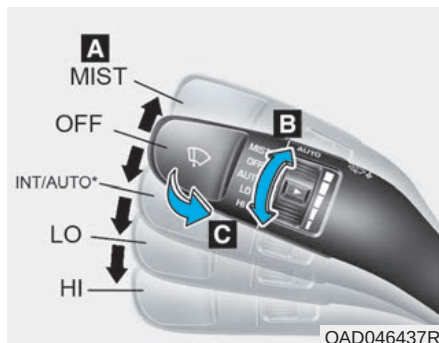
For more details, refer to "Welcome System" in this chapter.

Escort light

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the puddle lamp will come on for 30 seconds. If the driver's door is closed within the 30 seconds, the puddle lamp will turn off after 15 seconds. If the driver's door is closed and locked, the puddle lamp will turn off immediately.

The puddle lamp escort light will turn on the first time the driver's door is opened after the engine is turned off.

WIPERS AND WASHERS



A : Wiper speed control

- MIST – Single wipe
- OFF – Off
- INT – Intermittent wipe
- AUTO* – Auto control wipe
- LO – Low wiper speed
- HI – High wiper speed

B : Intermittent control wipe time adjustment/Auto control wipe time adjustment*

C : Wash with brief wipes

* : if equipped

Windscreen wipers

Operates as follows when the Engine Start/Stop button is turned ON.

MIST: For a single wiping cycle, move the lever upward and release it. The wipers will operate continuously if the lever is held in this position.

OFF: Wipers are not in operation

INT: Wiper operates intermittently at the same wiping intervals. Use this mode in light rain or mist. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

LO: The wiper runs at a lower speed.

HI: The wiper runs at a higher speed.

i Information

If there is heavy accumulation of snow or ice on the windscreen, defrost the windscreen for about 10 minutes, or until the snow and/or ice is removed before using the windscreen wipers, to ensure proper operation.

If you do not remove the snow and/or ice before using the wiper and washer, it may damage the wiper and washer system.

AUTO (Automatic) control (if equipped)

The rain sensor located at the top of the windscreen senses the amount of rainfall and controls the wiping cycle for the proper interval. The more it rains, the faster the wipers operate.

When the rain stops, the wipers stop. To vary the speed setting, turn the speed control knob.

If the wiper switch is set in AUTO mode when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the wipers will operate once to perform a self-check of the system. Set the wiper switch to the OFF position when the wiper is not in use.

WARNING

To avoid personal injury from the windscreen wipers, when the engine is running and the windscreen wiper switch is placed in the AUTO mode:

- Do not touch the top of the windscreen glass facing the rain sensor.
- Do not wipe the top of the windscreen glass with a damp or wet cloth.
- Do not put pressure on the windscreen glass.

NOTICE

- When washing the vehicle, set the wiper switch in the OFF position to stop the auto wiper operation. The wiper may operate and be damaged if the switch is set in the AUTO mode when washing the vehicle.
- Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the front passenger side windscreen glass. Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Windscreen washers



In the OFF position, pull the lever gently toward you to spray washer fluid on the windscreen and to run the wipers 1-3 cycles. The spray and wiper operation will continue until you release the lever.

If the washer does not work, you may need to add washer fluid to the washer fluid reservoir.

WARNING

When the outside temperature is below freezing, ALWAYS warm the windscreen using the defroster to prevent the washer fluid from freezing on the windscreen and obscuring your vision which could result in an accident and serious injury or death.

CAUTION

- To prevent possible damage to the washer pump, do not operate the washer when the fluid reservoir is empty.
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers or windscreen, do not operate the wipers when the windscreen is dry.
- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
- To prevent possible damage to the wipers and washer system, use anti-freezing washer fluids in the winter season or cold weather.

DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system (if equipped)



[A] : Sensor

The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system assists the driver during reverse movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within the distance of 120 cm behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system that senses objects within the range and location of the sensors, it cannot detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed.

WARNING

- **ALWAYS** look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles, before moving the vehicle in any direction, to prevent a collision.
- Always pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects, particularly pedestrians, and especially children.
- Be aware that some objects may not be visible on the screen or be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.

Operation of the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system

Operating condition

- This system will activate when reversing with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position. However, if vehicle speed exceeds 5 km/h, the system may not detect objects.
- If vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, the system will not warn you even though objects are detected.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognised first.

Types of warning sound and indicator

Types of warning sound	Indicator
When an object is 120 cm to 60 cm from the rear bumper : Buzzer beeps intermittently.	
When an object is 60 cm to 30 cm from the rear bumper : Buzzer beeps more frequently.	
When an object is within 30 cm of the rear bumper : Buzzer beeps continuously.	

NOTICE

- The indicator may differ from the illustration depending on objects or sensors status. If the indicator blinks, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the audible warning does not sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting into R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction with Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system. If this occurs, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Non-operational conditions of Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system

The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system may not operate normally when:

- Moisture is frozen to the sensor.
- Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked.

There is a possibility of Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system malfunction when:

- Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradients.
- Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
- Heavy rain or water spray is present.
- Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are present near the sensor.
- The sensor is covered with snow.

- Any non-factory equipment or accessories have been installed, or if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified.

Detecting range may decrease when:

- Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
- Undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter are present.

The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:

- Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

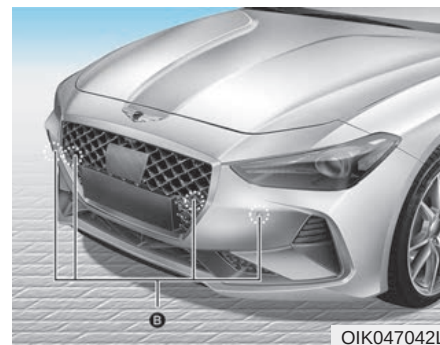
WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system precautions

- The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
- The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
- The sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or covered with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the foreign matter is removed using a soft cloth.
- Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor with any hard objects that could damage the surface of the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.
- Do not spray the sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system (if equipped)



[A] : Rear Sensor, [B] : Front Sensor

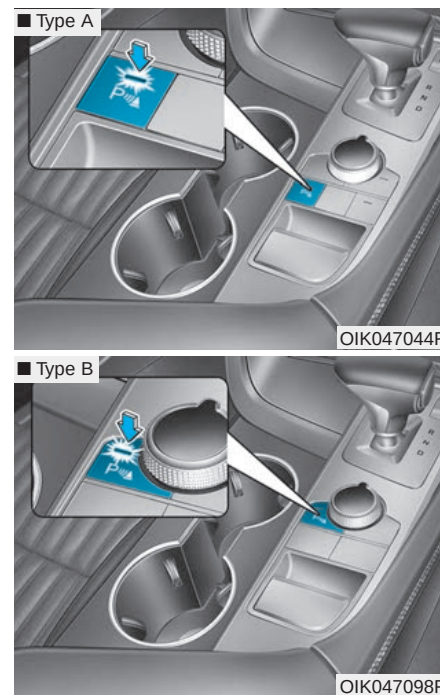
The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system assists the driver during movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed within the distance of 100 cm in front and 120 cm behind the vehicle.

This system is a supplemental system that senses objects within the range and location of the sensors. It cannot detect objects in other areas where sensors are not installed.

WARNING

- **ALWAYS** look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles, before moving the vehicle in any direction, to prevent a collision.
- Always pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects, particularly pedestrians, and especially children.
- Be aware that some objects may not be visible on the screen or be detected by the sensors, due to the objects distance, size or material, all of which can limit the effectiveness of the sensor.

Operation of the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system



Operating condition

- This system will activate when the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system button is pressed with the engine running.
- The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system button turns on automatically and activates the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system when you move the shift lever to the R (Reverse) position. However, if vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, the system will not warn you even though objects are detected, and if vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h, the system will turn off automatically. To turn on the system, press the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system button.
- When more than two objects are sensed at the same time, the closest one will be recognised first.

Types of warning sound and indicator

Distance from object (cm)		Warning indicator		Warning sound
		When driving forward	When driving rearward	
61 ~ 100	Front		-	Buzzer beeps intermittently
61 ~ 120	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps intermittently
31 ~ 60	Front			Buzzer beeps frequently
	Rear	-		Buzzer beeps frequently
30	Front			Buzzer sounds continuously
	Rear	-		Buzzer sounds continuously

NOTICE

- The indicator may differ from the illustration depending on objects or sensor status. If the indicator blinks, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the audible warning does not sound or if the buzzer sounds intermittently when shifting into R (Reverse) position, this may indicate a malfunction with the Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system. If this occurs, we recommend that you have your vehicle checked by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Non-operational conditions of Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system may not operate normally when:

- Moisture is frozen to the sensor.
- Sensor is covered with foreign matter, such as snow or water, or the sensor cover is blocked.

There is a possibility of Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system malfunction when:

- Driving on uneven road surfaces such as unpaved roads, gravel, bumps, or gradients.
- Objects generating excessive noise such as vehicle horns, loud motorcycle engines, or truck air brakes can interfere with the sensor.
- Heavy rain or water spray is present.
- Wireless transmitters or mobile phones are present near the sensor.
- The sensor is covered with snow.
- Any non-factory equipment or accessories have been installed, or if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified.

Detecting range may decrease when:

- Outside air temperature is extremely hot or cold.
- There are undetectable objects smaller than 1 m and narrower than 14 cm in diameter are present.

The following objects may not be recognised by the sensor:

- Sharp or slim objects such as ropes, chains or small poles.
- Objects, which tend to absorb sensor frequency such as clothes, spongy material or snow.

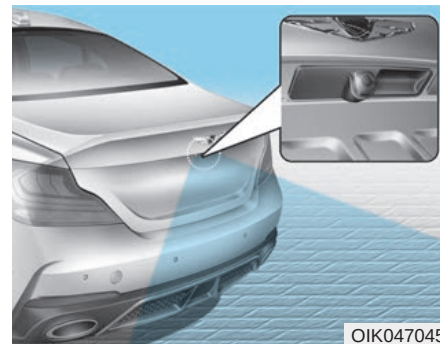
WARNING

Your new vehicle warranty does not cover any accidents or damage to the vehicle or injuries to its occupants related to a Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system. Always drive safely and cautiously.

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system precautions

- The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system may not sound consistently depending on the speed and shapes of the objects detected.
 - The Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system may malfunction if the vehicle bumper height or sensor installation has been modified or damaged. Any non-factory installed equipment or accessories may also interfere with the sensor performance.
 - The sensor may not recognise objects less than 30 cm from the sensor, or it may sense an incorrect distance. Use caution.
- When the sensor is frozen or covered with snow, dirt, or water, the sensor may be inoperative until the foreign matter is removed using a soft cloth.
 - Do not push, scratch or strike the sensor. Sensor damage could occur.
 - Do not spray the sensors or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.

Rear view monitor (Type A) (if equipped)



The Rear View Monitor will activate when the engine is running and the shift lever is in the R (Reverse) position.

This is a supplemental system that shows behind the vehicle through the Infotainment system screen whilst reversing.

WARNING

The Rear View Monitor is not a safety device. It only serves to assist the driver in identifying objects directly behind the middle of the vehicle. The camera does NOT cover the complete area behind the vehicle.

WARNING

- Never rely solely on the rear camera display when reversing.
- ALWAYS look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle in any direction, to prevent a collision.
- Always pay close attention when the vehicle is driven close to objects, particularly pedestrians, and especially children.

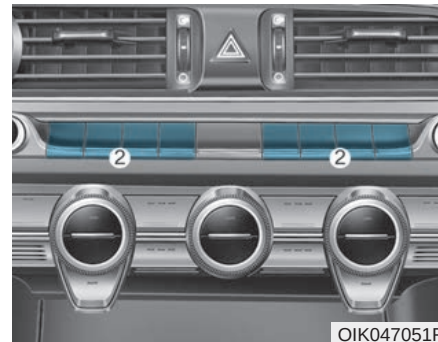
NOTICE

- Do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents when cleaning the lens. Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water.

Information

Always keep the camera lens clean. The camera may not work normally if the lens is covered with dirt, water or snow.

Rear view monitor (Type B) (if equipped)



The Rear View Monitor system assists you to drive safely by allowing you to check the rear view through the screen whilst driving.

Convenient features of your vehicle

The system is activated when:

- The engine is ON
- The shift lever is in D (Drive) or N (Neutral) and you press the button (1)

The system is deactivated when:

- You press the button (1) again
- You press the Infotainment system button (2)

When the vehicle is reversing the screen switches to rear parking assist screen.

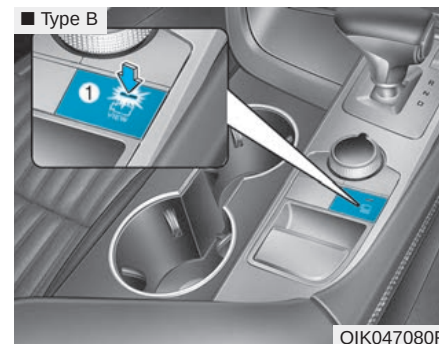
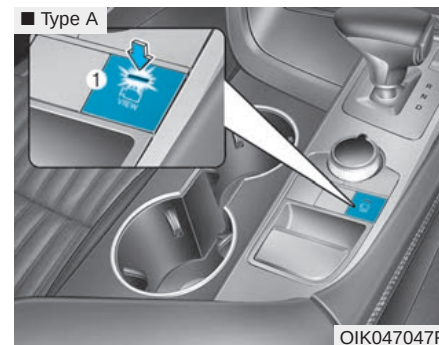
Warning indicator in the screen is indicated when:

- The boot is open
- The driver/passenger's door is open

WARNING

- **The Rear View Monitor system is a supplementary driving assist system. Make sure to check the rear view directly for safety. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.**
- **The camera may not operate properly if any foreign substance is on the rear camera lens. Always keep the lens clean.**
- **When the rear view is displayed whilst driving, an icon () is indicated on the upper right side of the screen.**

Surround view monitor (if equipped)



The Surround View Monitor system can assist in parking by allowing the driver to see around the vehicle.

Push the button (1, indicator ON) to operate the system. To cancel the system, push the button again (1, indicator OFF).

Operating conditions

- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position
- When the transmission is in D, N or R
- When vehicle speed is under 15km/h

i Information

- When vehicle speed is over 15km/h, the system will turn off. The system will not automatically turn on again, even though vehicle speed gets below 15 km/h. Push the button (1, indicator ON) again, to turn on the system.
- When the vehicle is reversing, the system will turn ON regardless of vehicle speed or button status. However, if vehicle speed is over 15 km/h when driving forward, the SVM system will turn off.

- A warning appears on the system when:

- The boot is opened
- The driver's door is opened
- The passenger's door is opened
- The outside rearview mirror is folded

- If the system is not operating normally, the system should be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

For more details, refer to the separately supplied manual with your vehicle.



CAUTION



ODH047435

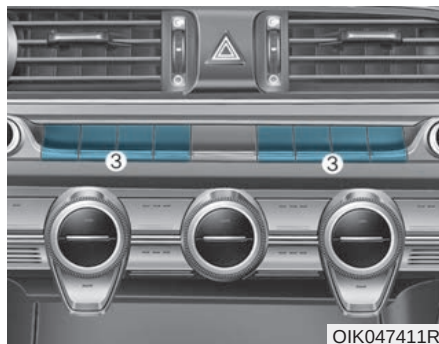
- (1) Front camera
- (2) Left/Right camera
- (3) Rear camera

Surround View Monitor system only serves to assist the driver in parking. **ALWAYS** look around your vehicle to make sure there are no objects or obstacles before moving the vehicle.

NOTICE

Always keep the camera lens clean. The camera may not work normally if the lens is covered with foreign material.

Rear view monitor (if equipped)



You may check the rear view through the screen whilst driving.

The system is activated when:

- The engine is ON
- The vehicle's speed is over 15 km/h and you press the SVM button (1, indicator ON)
- The vehicle's speed is under 15 km/h and you press the  (2) on the screen

The system is deactivated when:

- You press the SVM button (1, indicator OFF) again
- Other SVM system modes are selected from the screen
- You press the Infotainment system button (3)

Information

- If vehicle speed is over 15 km/h
 - the rear image stays ON when the rear view was on the screen
 - screen (top, front wide, front right and front left) of other modes of SVM system turns OFF and switches to the original Infotainment system screen when other modes were on the screen
- If the SVM system is ON and the vehicle speed is under 15 km/h
 - the rear image stays ON when the rear view was on the screen
 - a pop-up for selecting the SVM mode (top, front wide, front right and front left) appears when pressing  (2) on the screen

- When the vehicle is backing up, the rear image will be appear on the screen automatically regardless of the vehicle speed or SVM button (1) status.
 - If the rear image was ON, the screen switches to the parking assist screen.
 - If the screen (top, front wide, front right and front left) of other modes of SVM system was ON, the screen for setting the initial rear view mode appears.
 - When the shift lever is moved from R (Reverse) to D (Drive), the screen of the previous mode is displayed.
- A warning appears on the SVM system when
 - the boot is opened
 - the driver/passenger's door is opened
 - the outside rearview mirror is folded

WARNING

- The Rear View Monitor system is a supplementary driving assist system. Make sure to check the rear view directly for safety. What you see on the screen may differ from the actual vehicle's location.
- The camera may not operate properly if any foreign substance is on the rear camera lens. Always keep the lens clean.
- When the rear view is displayed whilst driving, an icon () is indicated on the upper right side of the screen.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

■ Type A



1. Driver's temperature control knob
2. Front passenger's temperature control knob
3. AUTO (automatic control) button
4. OFF button
5. Front windscreen defroster button
6. Blower speed control knob
7. Air intake control button
8. Mode selection button
9. SYNC button
10. Climate control information screen selection button
11. Rear window defroster button
12. Air conditioning button

■ Type B



The switch arrangements may vary depending on which functions are applicable to your vehicle.

OIK047300R/OIK047301R

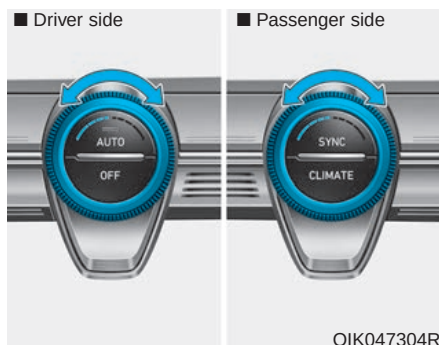
Automatic heating and air conditioning

The Automatic Climate Control System is controlled by setting the desired temperature.



1. Press the AUTO button.

The modes, blower speeds, air intake and air conditioning will be controlled automatically by the temperature setting you select.



2. Turn the temperature control knob to the desired temperature. If the temperature is set to the lowest setting (Lo), the air conditioning system will operate continuously.

To turn the automatic operation off, select any button of the following:

- Mode selection button
- Front windscreen defroster button (Press the button one more time to deselect the front windscreen defroster function. The 'AUTO' sign will illuminate on the information display once again.)
- Blower speed control knob

The selected function will be controlled manually whilst other functions operate automatically.

For your convenience and to improve the effectiveness of the climate control, use the AUTO button and set the temperature to 22°C (72°F).



i Information

Never place anything near the sensor to ensure better control of the heating and cooling system.

Manual heating and air conditioning

The heating and cooling system can be controlled manually by pushing buttons other than the AUTO button. In this case, the system works sequentially according to the order of buttons selected. When pressing any button except the AUTO button when using automatic operation, the functions not selected will be controlled automatically.

1. Start the engine.
2. Set the mode to the desired position.

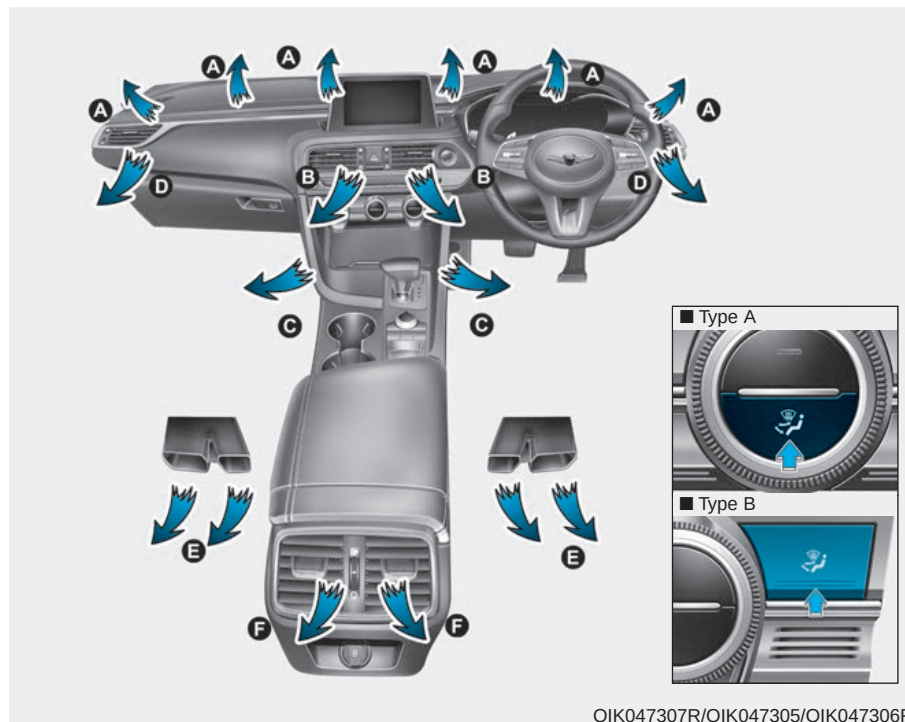
For improving the effectiveness of heating and cooling, select:

- Heating:
- Cooling:

3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.

4. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
5. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
6. If air conditioning is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
7. Press the AUTO button to convert to full automatic control of the system.

Mode selection



The mode selection button controls the direction of the air flow through the ventilation system.

The air flow outlet port is converted as follows:



 **Face-Level (B, D, F)**

Air flow is directed toward the upper body and face. Additionally, each outlet can be controlled to direct the air discharged from the outlet.

 **Bi-Level (B, D, C, E, F)**

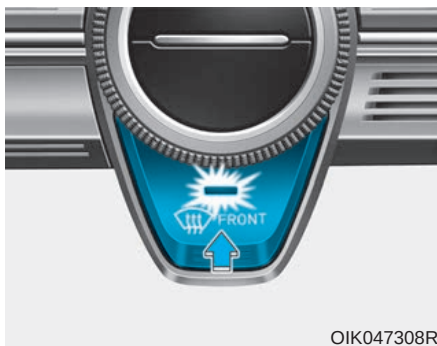
Air flow is directed towards the face and the floor.

 **Floor-Level (A, C, D, E, F)**

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor, with a small amount of the air being directed to the windscreen and side window defrosters.

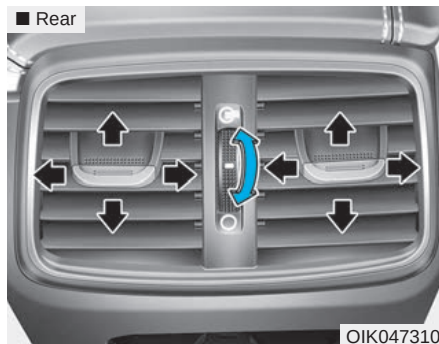
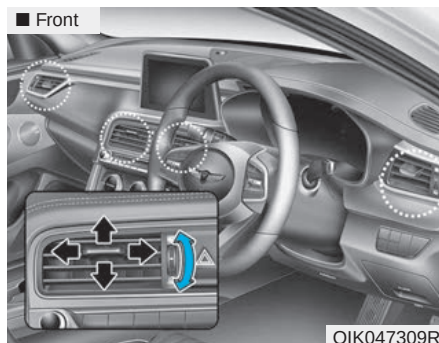
Floor/Defrost-Level (A, C, D, E, F)

Most of the air flow is directed to the floor and the windscreen with a small amount directed to the side window defrosters.



Defrost-Level (A)

Most of the air flow is directed to the windscreen with a small amount of air directed to the side window defrosters.

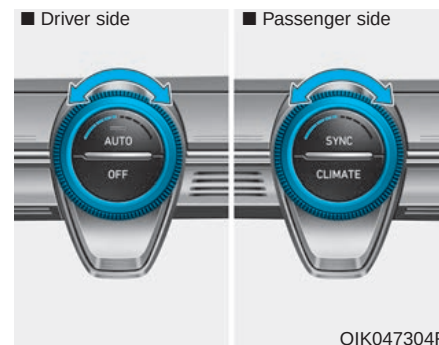


Instrument panel vents

The outlet vents can be opened (☼) or closed (○) separately using the thumbwheel.

Also, you can adjust the direction of air delivery from these vents using the vent control lever as shown.

Temperature control



The temperature will increase by turning the knob to the right. The temperature will decrease by turning the knob to the left.



OIK047311R

Adjusting the driver and passenger side temperature equally

- Press the “SYNC” button to adjust the driver and front passenger side temperature equally.

The front passenger side temperature will be set to the same temperature as the driver side temperature.

- Turn the driver side temperature control knob. The driver and passenger side temperature will be adjusted equally.

Adjusting the driver and front passenger side temperature individually

Press the “SYNC” button again to adjust the driver and front passenger side temperature individually. The indicator light turns off.

Temperature conversion

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the temperature mode display will reset to Centigrade.

To change the temperature unit from °C to °F or °F to °C :

- Automatic climate control system
Press the AUTO button for 3 seconds whilst pressing the OFF button.
- Instrument cluster
Go to User Settings Mode → Other features → Temperature unit.

The temperature unit on both the cluster LCD display and the climate control screen will change.

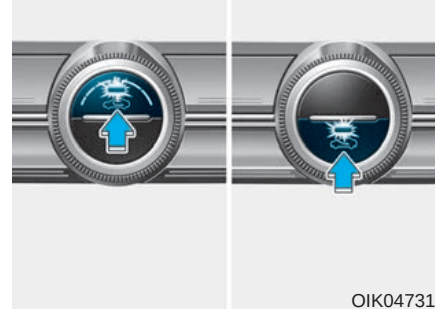
Air intake control

■ Type A



OIK047312

■ Type B



OIK047313

This is used to select the outside (fresh) air position or recirculated air position.

To change the air intake control position, push the control button.

3-137

Recirculated air position



With the recirculated air position selected, air from the passenger compartment will be drawn through the heating system and heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Outside (fresh) air position



With the outside (fresh) air position selected, air enters the vehicle from outside and is heated or cooled according to the function selected.

Information

Using the system in the fresh air position is recommended.

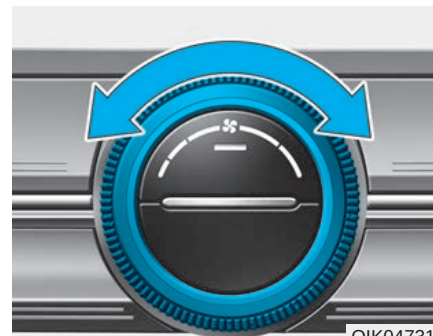
Prolonged operation of the heater in the recirculated air position (without air conditioning selected) may cause fogging of the windscreen and side windows and the air within the passenger compartment may become stale.

In addition, prolonged use of the air conditioning with the recirculated air position selected will result in excessively dry air in the passenger compartment.

WARNING

- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position may allow humidity to increase inside the vehicle which may fog the glass and obscure visibility.
- Do not sleep in a vehicle with the air conditioning or heating system on. It may cause serious harm or death due to a drop in the oxygen level and/or body temperature.
- Continued climate control system operation in the recirculated air position can cause drowsiness or sleepiness, and loss of vehicle control. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position as much as possible whilst driving.

Blower speed control



OIK047314

The blower speed can be set to the desired speed by turning the blower speed control knob. Turn the knob to the right for higher blower speed.

Pressing the OFF button turns off the blower.

NOTICE

Operating the blower speed when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position could cause the battery to discharge. Operate the blower speed when the engine is running.

Air conditioning



Push the A/C button to turn the air conditioning system on (indicator light will illuminate).

Push the button again to turn the air conditioning system off.

OFF mode



Push the OFF button to turn the climate control system off. However, you can still operate the mode and air intake buttons as long as the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

Climate control information screen selection button



Press the climate control information screen selection button to display climate control information on the Infotainment system screen.

System operation

Ventilation

1. Set the mode to the  position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.

Heating

1. Set the mode to the  position.
2. Set the air intake control to the outside (fresh) air position.
3. Set the temperature control to the desired position.
4. Set the blower speed control to the desired speed.
5. If dehumidified heating is desired, turn the air conditioning system on.
- If the windscreen fogs up, set the mode to the  or  position.

Operation Tips

- To keep dust or unpleasant fumes from entering the vehicle through the ventilation system, temporarily set the air intake control to the recirculated air position. Be sure to return the control to the fresh air position when the irritation has passed to keep fresh air in the vehicle. This will help keep the driver alert and comfortable.
- To prevent interior fog on the windscreen, set the air intake control to the fresh air position and blower speed to the desired position. Turn on the air conditioning system, and adjust the temperature control to the desired temperature.

Air conditioning

All Genesis vehicle Air Conditioning Systems are filled with R-134a or R-1234yf refrigerant.

1. Start the engine. Push the air conditioning button.
2. Set the mode to the  position.
3. Set the air intake control to the outside air or recirculated air position.

4. Adjust the blower speed control and temperature control to maintain maximum comfort.

NOTICE

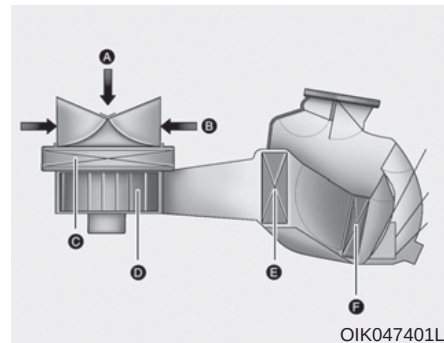
- **The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians to insure proper and safe operation.**
- **The refrigerant system should be serviced in a well-ventilated place.**
- **The air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) should never be repaired or replaced with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle. New replacement MAC evaporators should be certified (and labelled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.**

NOTICE

- When using the air conditioning system, monitor the temperature gauge closely when driving up hills or in heavy traffic when outside temperatures are high. Air conditioning system operation may cause engine overheating. Continue to use the blower but turn the air conditioning system off if the temperature gauge indicates engine overheating.
- When opening the windows in humid weather, air conditioning may create water droplets inside the vehicle. As excessive water droplets may cause damage to electrical equipment, air conditioning should only be used with the windows closed.

Air conditioning system operation tips

- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows for a short time to let the hot air inside the vehicle escape.
- After sufficient cooling has been achieved, switch back from the recirculated air to the fresh outside air position.
- To help reduce moisture inside of the windows on rainy or humid days, decrease the humidity inside the vehicle by operating the air conditioning system with the windows and sunroof closed.
- Turn on the air conditioning system every month for a few minutes to ensure maximum system performance.
- If you operate the air conditioner excessively, the difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection button to the  position and set the blower speed control knob to the lowest speed setting.

System maintenance**Climate control air filter**

[A] : Outside air, [B] : Recirculated air
 [C] : Climate control air filter, [D] : Blower
 [E] : Evaporator core, [F] : Heater core

This filter is installed behind the glove box. It filters the dust or other pollutants that enter the vehicle through the heating and air conditioning system.

We recommend that the climate control air filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer according to the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions such as dusty or rough roads, more frequent climate control filter inspections and changes are required.

If the air flow rate suddenly decreases, we recommend the system be checked at an authorised Genesis dealer.

Checking the amount of air conditioner refrigerant and compressor lubricant

When the amount of refrigerant is low, the performance of the air conditioning is reduced. Overfilling also reduces the performance of the air conditioning system.

Therefore, if abnormal operation is found, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant is used. Otherwise, damage to the compressor and abnormal system operation may occur. To prevent damage, the air conditioning system in your vehicle should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-134a



Since the refrigerant is operated at very high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.

All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicles equipped with R-1234yf



Since the refrigerant is mildly flammable and operated at high pressure, the air conditioning system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. It is important that the correct type and amount of oil and refrigerant are used.



All refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment.

Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to individuals and environment. Failure to heed these warnings can lead to serious injuries.



OIK087008N

Air Conditioning refrigerant label (if equipped)

You can find out which air conditioning refrigerant is applied to your vehicle on the label located inside of the bonnet.

■ Example

• Type A



OHYK059004

• Type B



OHYK059001

Each symbols and specification on the air conditioning refrigerant label is represented as below:

1. Classification of refrigerant
2. Amount of refrigerant

3. Classification of compressor lubricant
4. Caution
5. Flammable refrigerant
6. To require registered technician to service air conditioning system
7. Service manual

WINDSCREEN DEFROSTING AND DEFOGGING

⚠ WARNING

Windscreen heating

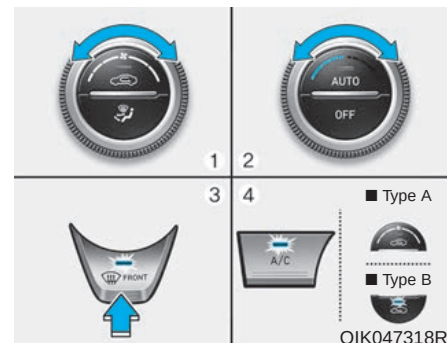
Do not use the  or  position during cooling operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windscreen could cause the outer surface of the windscreen to fog up, causing loss of visibility. In this case, set the mode selection button to the  position and blower speed control knob to lower speed.

- For maximum windscreen defrosting, set the temperature control knob to the highest temperature setting and the blower control knob to the highest blower speed. Select the front defrost button on the climate control display. After the engine warm-up period, warm air will be directed to the front windscreen.
- If warm air to the floor is desired whilst defrosting or defogging, set the mode to the floor-defrost position.
- Before driving, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen, rear window, outside rear view mirrors, and all side windows.
- Clear all snow and ice from the bonnet and air inlet in the cowl grill to improve heater and defroster efficiency and to reduce the probability of fogging up inside of the windscreen.

i Information

If the engine temperature is still cold after starting, then a brief engine warm up period may be required for the vented air flow to become warm or hot.

To defog inside windscreen

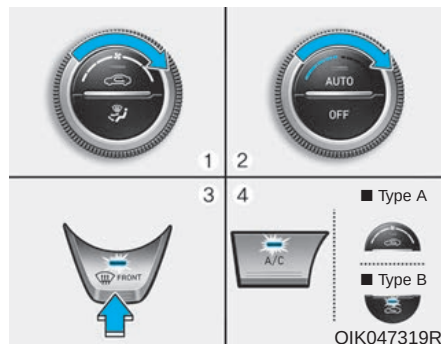


1. Select the desired blower speed.
2. Select the desired temperature.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature. Outside (fresh) air position and higher blower speed will be selected automatically.

If the air conditioning, outside (fresh) air position and higher blower speed are not selected automatically, adjust the corresponding button or knob manually.

If the  position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to higher blower speed.

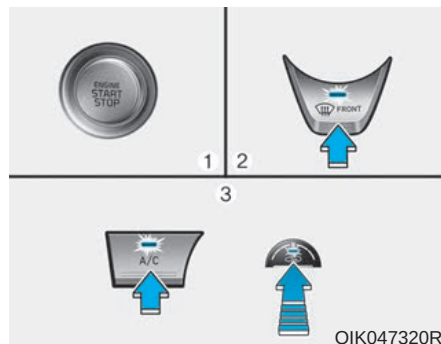
To defrost outside windscreen



1. Set blower speed to the highest position.
2. Set temperature to the extreme hot (HI) position.
3. Press the defroster button ().
4. The air conditioning will turn on according to the detected ambient temperature and outside (fresh) air position will be selected automatically.

If the position is selected, lower blower speed is adjusted to higher blower speed.

Defogging logic (if equipped)



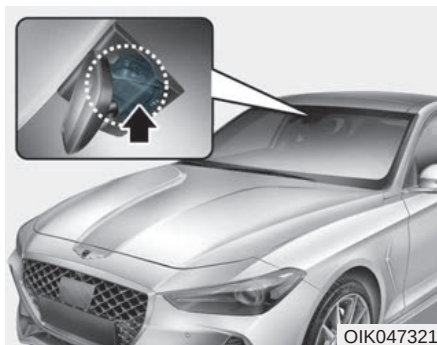
To reduce the probability of fogging up the inside of the windscreen, the air intake or air conditioning are controlled automatically according to certain conditions such as or positions. To cancel or return the defogging logic, do the following.

1. Turn the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the defroster button ().
3. Whilst pressing the air conditioning button (A/C), press the air intake control button at least 5 times within 3 seconds.

The air intake control button indicator will blink 3 times. It indicates that the defogging logic is cancelled.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, the defogging logic will be enabled as the default logic.

Auto defogging system (if equipped)



Auto defogging reduces the possibility of fogging up the inside of the windscreen by automatically sensing the moisture on the inside of the windscreen.

The auto defogging system operates when the heater or air conditioning is on.

i Information

The auto defogging system may not operate normally, when the outside temperature is below -10 °C.



When the Auto defogging system operates, the indicator will illuminate.

If high levels of moisture are sensed in the vehicle, the auto defogging system will operate in the following order:

- Step 1 : Outside air position,
Operating the air conditioning
- Step 2 : Blowing air toward the windscreen
- Step 3 : Increasing air flow toward the windscreen

If the air conditioning is off or recirculated air position is manually selected whilst auto defogging system is ON, the auto defogging system Indicator will blink 3 times to signal that the manual operation has been cancelled.

To cancel the auto defogging system

1. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the front defroster button over 3 seconds.
3. The front defroster button indicator will blink 3 times and then ADS OFF will illuminate on the climate control information screen when the auto defogging system is cancelled.

To reactivate the auto defogging system

1. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position.
2. Press the front defroster button over 3 seconds.
3. The front defroster button indicator will blink 6 times and then ADS OFF will go out on the climate control information screen when the auto defogging system is reactivated.

i Information

- When the air conditioning is turned on by auto defogging system, if you try to turn off the air conditioning, the indicator will blink 3 times and the air conditioning will not turn off.
- For efficiency, do not select recirculated air position whilst the auto defogging system is operating.

NOTICE

Do not remove the sensor cover located on the top of the driver side windscreen.

Damage to system parts could occur and may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Defroster

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the conductors bonded to the inside surface of the rear window, never use sharp instruments or window cleaners containing abrasives to clean the window.

i Information

If you want to defrost and defog the front windscreen, refer to “Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging” in this chapter.

Rear window defroster



OIK047302R

The defroster heats the window to remove frost, fog and thin ice from the interior and exterior of the rear window, when the engine is running.

- To activate the rear window defroster, press the rear window defroster button located in the centre facia switch panel. The indicator on the rear window defroster button illuminates when the defroster is ON.
- To turn off the defroster, press the rear window defroster button again.

Information

- If there is heavy accumulation of snow on the rear window, brush it off before operating the rear defroster.
- The rear window defroster automatically turns off after approximately 20 minutes or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position.

Outside mirror defrosters (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with outside mirror defrosters, they will operate at the same time you turn on the rear window defroster.

CLIMATE CONTROL ADDITIONAL FEATURES

Automatic ventilation (if equipped)

The system automatically selects the outside (fresh) air position when the climate control system operates over a certain period of time (approximately 30 minutes) in low temperature with the recirculated air position selected.

To cancel or reactivate the Automatic Ventilation

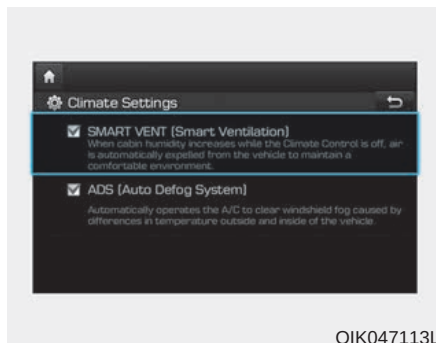
When the air conditioning system is on, select Face Level  mode and whilst pressing the A/C button, press the recirculated air position button 5 times within 3 seconds.

When the automatic ventilation is cancelled, the indicator blinks 3 times. When the automatic ventilation is activated, the indicator blinks 6 times.

Sunroof inside air recirculation (if equipped)

When the sunroof is opened, outside (fresh) air will be automatically selected. At this time, if you press the air intake control button, recirculated air position will be selected but will change back to outside (fresh) air after 3 minutes. When the sunroof is closed, the air intake position will return to the original position that was selected.

Smart ventilation (if equipped)



The smart ventilation system maintains pleasant/fresh air condition inside the passenger compartment by automatically detecting/controlling the temperature, humidity, etc., when you drive the vehicle with the climate control system in the OFF position.

When the smart ventilation system starts to operate, the message, "Smart ventilation On" appears for 5 seconds.

i Information

- The smart ventilation system stops operating, when the OFF button of the climate control system is selected.
- The smart ventilation system stops operating, when any button of the climate control system is selected for operation.
- The smart ventilation system may not operate, when the vehicle is driven at low speed.

STORAGE COMPARTMENT

⚠ WARNING

Never store cigarette lighters, propane cylinders, or other flammable/explosive materials in the vehicle. These items may catch fire and/or explode if the vehicle is exposed to hot temperatures for extended periods.

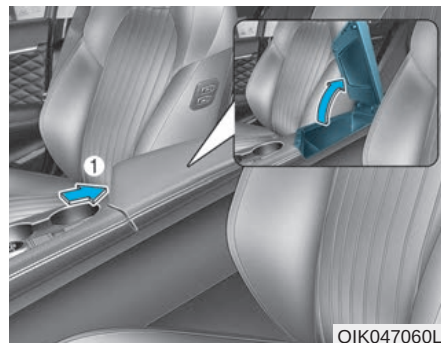
⚠ WARNING

ALWAYS keep the storage compartment covers closed securely when driving. Items inside your vehicle are moving as fast as the vehicle. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, the items may fly out of the compartment and may cause an injury if they strike the driver or a passenger.

NOTICE

To avoid possible theft, do not leave valuables in the storage compartments.

Centre console storage



To open :
Push the button (1).

Glove box



The glove box can be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key (1).

To open:
Pull the lever (2).

⚠ WARNING

ALWAYS close the glove box door after use.

An open glove box door can cause serious injury to the front passenger in an accident, even if that front passenger is wearing a seat belt.

Sunglasses holder (if equipped)



To open:

Press the cover and the holder will slowly open. Place your sunglasses in the compartment door with the lenses facing out.

To close:

Push back into position.

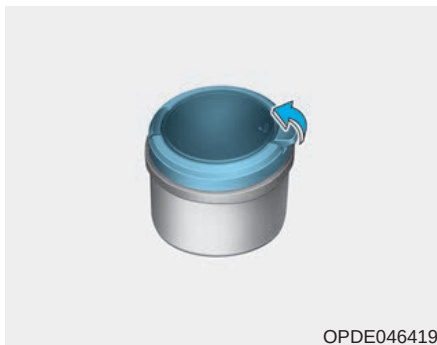
Make sure the sunglasses holder is closed when driving.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not keep objects except sunglasses inside the sunglasses holder. Such objects can be thrown from the holder in the event of a sudden stop or an accident, possibly injuring the passengers in the vehicle.
- Do not open the sunglasses holder when the vehicle is moving. The rear view mirror of the vehicle can be blocked by an open sunglasses holder.
- Do not attempt to force sunglasses into the sunglasses holder. If the sunglasses become jammed and you try to open it forcibly, personal injury may occur.

INTERIOR FEATURES

Ashtray (if equipped)



OPDE046419

To use the ashtray, open the cover.

To clean the ashtray:

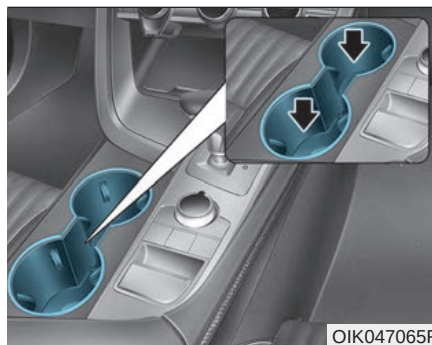
The plastic receptacle should be removed by lifting the plastic ashtray receptacle upward after turning the cover anti-clockwise and pulling it out.

WARNING

Putting lit cigarettes or matches in an ashtray with other combustible materials may cause a fire.

Cup holder

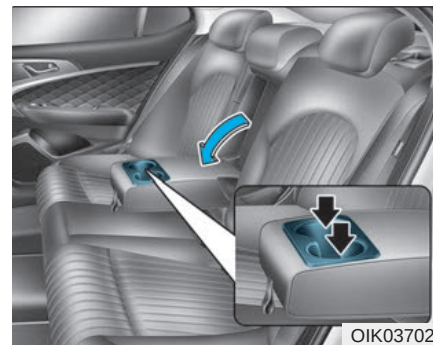
Front



OIK047065R

Cups may be placed in the cup holders.

Rear



OIK037024

Pull the armrest down to use the cup holders.

⚠ WARNING

- Avoid abrupt starting and braking when the cup holder is in use to prevent spilling your drink. If hot liquid spills, you could be burned. Such a burn to the driver could cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Do not place uncovered or unsecured cups, bottles, cans, etc., in the cup holder containing hot liquid when the vehicle is in motion. Injuries may result in the event of a sudden stop or collision.
- Only use soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in an accident.

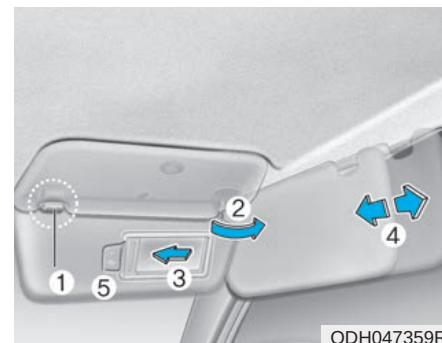
⚠ WARNING

Keep cans or bottles out of direct sun light and do not put them in a hot vehicle. They may explode.

NOTICE

- Keep your drinks sealed when driving to prevent spilling your drink. If liquid spills, it may get into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and damage electrical/electronic parts.
- When cleaning spilled liquids, do not dry the cup holder using high temperatures. This may damage the cup holder.

Sunvisor



To use a sunvisor, pull it downward.

To use a sunvisor for a side window, pull it downward, unsnap it from the bracket (1) and swing it to the side (2).

To use the vanity mirror, pull down the sunvisor and slide the mirror cover (3).

Adjust the sunvisor forward or rearward (4) as needed.

Use the ticket holder (5) to hold tickets.

Close the vanity mirror cover securely and return the sunvisor to its original position after use.

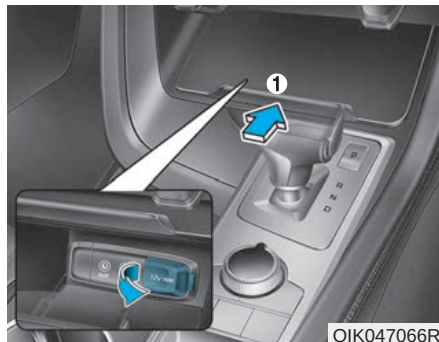
WARNING

For your safety, do not block your view when using the sunvisor.

NOTICE

Do not put several tickets in the ticket holder at one time. This could cause damage to the ticket holder.

Power outlet



The power outlet is designed to provide power for mobile telephones or other devices designed to operate with vehicle electrical systems. The devices should draw less than 180 W(Watts) with the engine running.

To use the power outlet, open the cover (1) by pushing it straight up. After use, to close the cover (1), slightly push up the cover again.

WARNING

Avoid electrical shocks. Do not place your fingers or foreign objects (pin, etc.) into a power outlet or touch the power outlet with a wet hand.

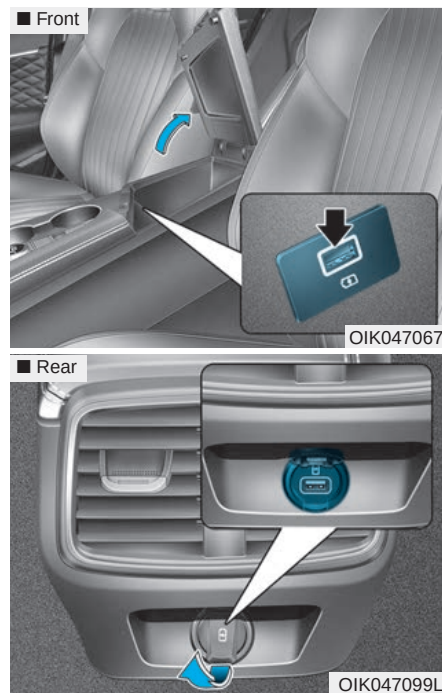
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the Power Outlets :

- Use the power outlet only when the engine is running and remove the accessory plug after use. Using the accessory plug for prolonged periods of time with the engine off could cause the battery to discharge.
- Only use 12V electric accessories which draw less than 180 W(Watts) in electric capacity.
- Adjust the air conditioner or heater to the lowest operating level when using the power outlet.
- Close the cover when not in use.

- Some electronic devices can cause electronic interference when plugged into a vehicle's power outlet. These devices may cause excessive audio static and malfunctions in other electronic systems or devices used in your vehicle.
- Push the plug in as far as it will go. If good contact is not made, the plug may overheat and the fuse may blow.
- Plug in battery equipped electrical/electronic devices with reverse current protection. The current from the battery may flow into the vehicle's electrical/electronic system and cause system malfunction.

USB charger (if equipped)



The USB charger is designed to recharge batteries of small size electrical devices using a USB cable.

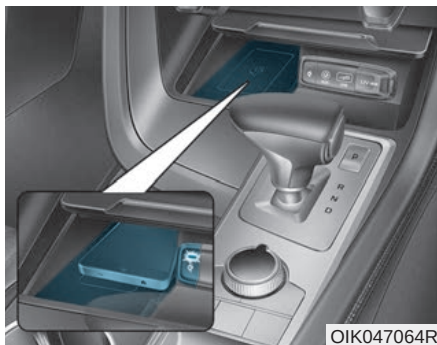
The electrical devices can be recharged when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC, ON or START position.

The battery charging state may be monitored on the electrical device.

Disconnect the USB cable from the USB port after use.

- A smart phone or a tablet PC may get warmer during the re-charging process. It does not indicate any malfunction with the charging system.
- A smart phone or a tablet PC, which adopts a different re-charging method, may not be properly re-charged. In this case, use an exclusive charger of your device.
- The charging socket is only to recharge a device. Do not use the charging socket either to turn ON an audio or to play media on the Infotainment system.

Wireless mobile phone charging system (if equipped)



There is a wireless mobile phone charger inside the front console.

The system is available when all doors are closed, and when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC, ON or START position.

To use the wireless mobile phone charging system, open the cover by pushing it straight up.

After use, to close the cover, slightly push up the cover again.

To charge a mobile phone

The wireless mobile phone charging system charges only the Qi-enabled mobile phones (Qi). Read the label on the mobile phone accessory cover or visit your mobile phone manufacturer's website to check whether your mobile phone supports the Qi technology.

The wireless charging process starts when you put a Qi-enabled mobile phone on the wireless charging unit.

1. Remove other items, including the smart key, from the wireless charging unit. If not, the wireless charging process may be interrupted. Place the mobile phone on the centre of charging pad.
2. The indicator illuminates in orange during the charging process. The indicator colour changes to green, when the charging process is completed.
3. You can turn ON or OFF the wireless charging function in the User Settings mode on the instrument cluster. For further information, refer to the "LCD Display Modes" in this chapter.

If your mobile phone is not charging:

- Slightly change the position of the mobile phone on the charging pad.
- Make sure the indicator light is orange.

The indicator light will blink orange for 10 seconds if there is a malfunction in the wireless charging system.

In this case, temporarily stop the charging process, and re-attempt to wirelessly charge your mobile phone again.

The system warns you with a message on the LCD display if the mobile phone is still on the wireless charging unit after the engine is turned OFF and the front door is opened.

i Information

For some manufacturers' mobile phones, the system may not warn you even though the mobile phone is left on the wireless charging unit. This is due to the particular characteristic of the mobile phone and not a malfunction of the wireless charging.

NOTICE

- The wireless mobile phone charging system may not support certain mobile phones, which are not verified for the Qi specification (Qi).
- Locate your mobile phone well in the middle of the wireless mobile phone charging system. Even when your mobile phone locates slightly to one side, the charging speed may decrease.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when a smart key function operates (i.e. starting the engine, opening the doors, closing the doors).
- For certain mobile phones, the indicator colour may not change to green, even when the wireless charging process is properly completed.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop, when the temperature abnormally increases inside the wireless mobile phone charging system. The wireless charging process restarts, when the temperature falls to a certain level.
- The wireless charging process may temporarily stop when there is any metallic item, such as a coin, between the wireless mobile phone charging system and a mobile phone.
- For certain mobile phones with their own protection, the wireless charging speed may decrease and the wireless charging may stop.
- If the mobile phone has a thick cover, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- If the mobile phone is not fully in contact with the wireless charging pad, the wireless charging may not be possible.
- Some magnetic items (credit cards, phone cards, passbook and tickets) may be damaged whilst using the wireless charging process.
- When any smart phone without a wireless charging function or a metallic object is placed on the charging pad, a small noise may sound. This small sound is due to the vehicle discerning compatibility of the object placed on the charging pad. It does not affect your vehicle or the smart phone in any way.

Clock

WARNING

Do not adjust the clock whilst driving. You may lose your steering control and cause severe personal injury or accidents.

Vehicles with Audio system

Select the Settings menu on the Audio screen → Select [Date/Time].

- Set time: Set the time displayed on the audio screen.
- Time format: Choose between 12-hour and 24-hour time formats.

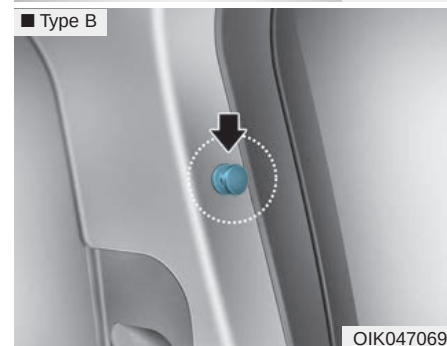
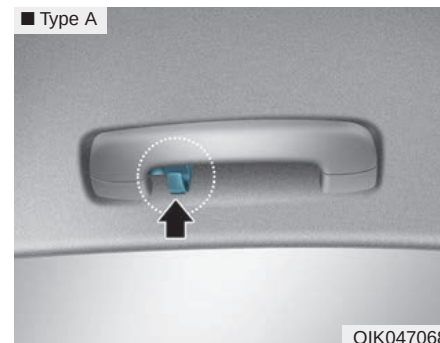
Vehicles with Navigation system

Select the Settings menu on the Infotainment system screen → Select [Date/Time].

- GPS time: Displays time according to the received GNSS time.
- 24-hour: Switches to 12 hour or 24 hour.

For more details, please refer to the separate manual that was supplied with your vehicle.

Coat hook (if equipped)



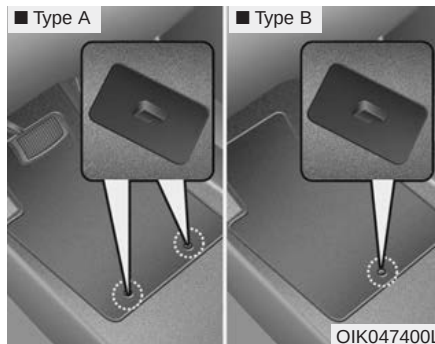
These hangers are not designed to hold large or heavy items.

⚠ WARNING



Do not hang other objects such as hangers or hard objects except clothes. Also, do not put heavy, sharp or breakable objects in the clothes pockets. In an accident or when the curtain air bag is inflated, it may cause vehicle damage or personal injury.

Floor mat anchors (if equipped)



ALWAYS use the floor mat anchors to attach the front floor mats to the vehicle. The anchors on the front floor carpet keep the floor mats from sliding forward.

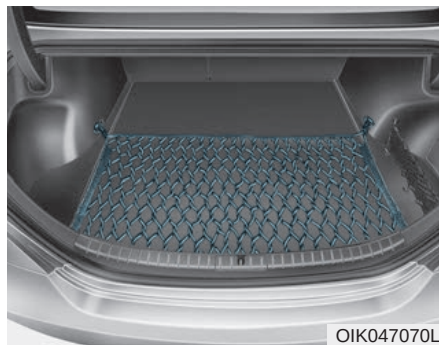
⚠ WARNING

The following must be observed when installing ANY floor mat in the vehicle.

- Ensure that the floor mats are securely attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors before driving the vehicle.
- Do not use ANY floor mat that cannot be firmly attached to the vehicle's floor mat anchors.
- Do not stack floor mats on top of one another (e.g. all-weather rubber mat on top of a carpeted floor mat). Only a single floor mat should be installed in each position.

IMPORTANT - Your vehicle was manufactured with driver's side floor mat anchors that are designed to securely hold the floor mat in place. To avoid any interference with pedal operation, Genesis recommends that the Genesis floor mat designed for use in your vehicle be installed.

Luggage net



To keep items from shifting in the luggage compartment, you can use the four securing points located in the luggage compartment to attach the luggage net.

If necessary, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis dealer to obtain a luggage net.



CAUTION

To prevent damage to the goods or the vehicle, care should be taken when carrying fragile or bulky objects in the luggage compartment.



WARNING

To avoid eye injury, **DO NOT** overstretch the luggage net. **ALWAYS** keep your face and body out of the luggage net's recoil path. **DO NOT** use the luggage net when the strap has visible signs of wear or damage.

Infotainment System

Infotainment system.....	4-2
USB port	4-2
Antenna	4-3
Steering wheel audio controls	4-3
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology hands-free.....	4-4
Audio / Video / Navigation system	4-5

INFOTAINMENT SYSTEM

i Information

- If you install aftermarket HID headlamps, your vehicle's audio and electronic devices may malfunction.
- Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner, and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration.

USB port (if equipped)



You can use an AUX port to connect audio devices and a USB port to plug in a USB and an iPod®.

To use the AUX, USB and iPod®, open the cover (1) by pushing it straight up.

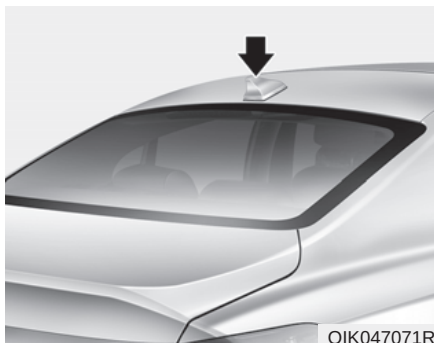
After use, to close the cover (1), slightly push up the cover again.

i Information

When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet, noise may occur during playback. If this happens, use the power source of the portable audio device.

※ iPod® is a trademark of Apple Inc.

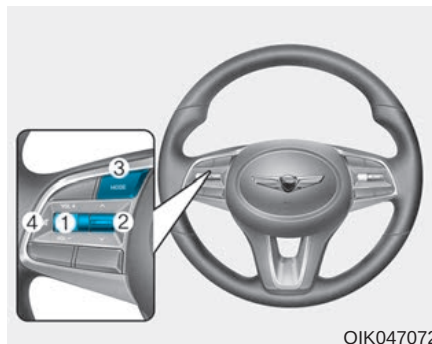
Antenna



Shark fin antenna

The shark fin antenna receives transmitted data (for example: AM/FM, DAB, GPS).

Steering wheel audio controls (if equipped)



The steering wheel audio control switches are installed for your convenience.

NOTICE

Do not operate audio remote control buttons simultaneously.

VOLUME (VOL + / -) (1)

- Move the volume toggle switch up to increase volume.
- Move the volume toggle switch down to decrease volume.

SEEK/PRESET (^ / v) (2)

If the SEEK/PRESET toggle switch is moved up or down and held for 0.8 seconds or more, it will function in the following modes:

RADIO mode

It will function as the AUTO SEEK select switch. It will SEEK until you release the switch.

MEDIA mode

It will function as the FF/REW switch.

If the SEEK/PRESET toggle switch is moved up or down, it will function in the following modes:

RADIO mode

It will function as the PRESET STATION UP/DOWN switch.

MEDIA mode

It will function as the TRACK UP/DOWN switch.

MODE (3)

Press the MODE button to select between Radio or AUX mode.

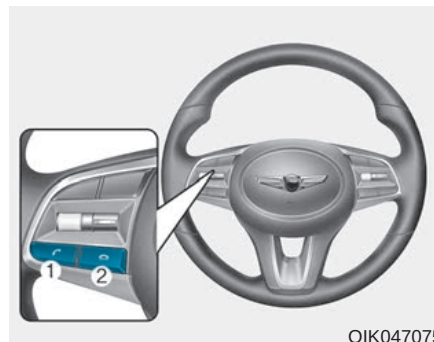
MUTE (4)

- Press the button to mute the sound.
- Press the button again to activate the sound.

i Information

Detailed information is described in a separately supplied manual.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology hands-free



You can use the phone wirelessly by using the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology.

(1) Call / Answer button

(2) Call end button

(3) Microphone

Detailed information for the *Bluetooth®* Wireless Technology hands-free is described in the manual supplied separately.

Audio / Video / Navigation system

Detailed information for the Infotainment system is described in a separately supplied manual.

Driving your vehicle

Before driving	5-4
Before entering the vehicle	5-4
Before starting.....	5-4
Engine Start/Stop button	5-6
Engine Stop/Start button positions.....	5-6
Starting the engine.....	5-8
Turning off the engine	5-9
Automatic transmission	5-10
Automatic transmission operation	5-10
Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode)	5-15
LCD display messages.....	5-16
Good driving practices.....	5-20
Braking system	5-22
Power brakes	5-22
High performance brakes	5-23
Disc brakes wear indicator	5-23
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	5-24
Auto hold.....	5-28
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	5-32
Electronic Stability Control (ESC).....	5-34
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM).....	5-37
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)	5-39
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)	5-39
Good braking practices	5-40
Limited slip differential	5-41
Electronic control suspension (ECS)	5-41
Launch control	5-42
Prerequisite for activation	5-42
Launch control activation	5-42
ECO Coasting	5-44
ECO Coasting activation condition.....	5-44
ECO Coasting deactivation condition	5-44
Setting ECO Coasting function	5-45
ECO Coasting activation indicator.....	5-45
Drive mode integrated control system	5-46
Drive mode.....	5-46
Smart shift on trip computer	5-50
Forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) system- sensor fusion type (front radar + front camera)	5-51
System setting and activation.....	5-51
FCA warning message and system control	5-53
FCA sensor.....	5-55
System malfunction.....	5-57
Limitations of the system	5-58
Blind-spot collision warning (BCW) system	5-64
BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)	5-65
RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning).....	5-67
Detecting sensor	5-69
Limitations of the system	5-70

Lane keeping assist (LKA) system	5-72
LKA operation	5-73
Warning light and message	5-75
Limitations of the system	5-78
LKA system function change	5-79
Forward collision-avoidance assist – lane- change oncoming function (with FCA)	5-80
Function operation	5-80
Limitations of the system	5-81
Driver attention warning (DAW) system	5-82
System setting and activation	5-82
Resetting the system	5-84
System standby	5-84
System malfunction	5-84
Manual speed limit assist (MSLA)	5-87
Speed Limit Assist operation	5-87
Cruise control	5-90
Cruise Control operation	5-90
Smart cruise control with stop & go system	5-95
Smart Cruise Control Switch	5-96
Smart Cruise Control speed	5-96
Smart Cruise Control Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance	5-102
Sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead	5-105
To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control	5-107
To convert to Cruise Control mode	5-107
Limitations of the system	5-108
Special driving conditions	5-113
Hazardous driving conditions	5-113
Rocking the vehicle	5-113
Smooth cornering	5-114
Driving at night	5-114
Driving in the rain	5-114
Driving in flooded areas	5-115
Highway driving	5-115
Winter driving	5-116
Snow or icy conditions	5-116
Winter precautions	5-118
Vehicle weight	5-121
Overloading	5-121
Trailer towing	5-122
If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia)	5-123
If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand)	5-124
Trailer towing equipment	5-125
Driving with a trailer	5-126
Maintenance when towing a trailer	5-130

WARNING

Carbon monoxide (CO) gas is toxic. Breathing CO can cause unconsciousness and death.

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide which cannot be seen or smelled.

Do not inhale engine exhaust.

If at any time you smell engine exhaust inside the vehicle, open the windows immediately. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and death by asphyxiation.

Ensure the exhaust system does not leak.

The exhaust system should be checked whenever the vehicle is raised to change the oil or for any other purpose. If you hear a change in the sound of the exhaust or if you drive over something that strikes the underneath side of the vehicle, we recommend that the exhaust system be checked as soon as possible by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Do not run the engine in an enclosed area.

Letting the engine idle in your garage, even with the garage door open, is a hazardous practice. Run the engine only long enough to start the engine and to move the vehicle out of the garage.

Avoid idling the engine for prolonged periods with people inside the vehicle.

If it is necessary to idle the engine for a prolonged period with people inside the vehicle, be sure to do so only in an open area with the air intake set at "Fresh" and fan control set to high so fresh air is drawn into the interior.

Keep the air intakes clear.

To assure proper operation of the ventilation system, keep the ventilation air intakes located in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice, leaves, or other obstructions.

If you must drive with the boot open:

Close all windows.

Open instrument panel air vents.

Set the air intake control at "Fresh", the air flow control at "Floor" or "Face", and the fan control set to high.

BEFORE DRIVING

Before entering the vehicle

- Ensure all windows, outside mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed.
- Remove frost, snow, or ice.
- Visually check the tyres for uneven wear and damage.
- Check under the vehicle for any sign of leaks.
- Be sure there are no obstacles behind you if you intend to reverse.

Before starting

- Ensure the bonnet, the boot, and the doors are securely closed and locked.
- Adjust the position of the seat and steering wheel.
- Adjust the inside and outside rearview mirrors.
- Verify all the lights work.
- Fasten your seat belt. Check that all passengers have fastened their seat belts.
- Check the gauges and indicators in the instrument cluster and the messages on the LCD display when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Check that any items you are carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, take the following precautions:

- **ALWAYS wear your seat belt. All passengers must be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is moving. For more information, refer to "Seat Belts" in chapter 2.**
- **Always drive defensively. Assume other drivers or pedestrians may be careless and make mistakes.**
- **Stay focused on the task of driving. Driver distraction can cause accidents.**
- **Leave plenty of space between you and the vehicle in front of you.**

WARNING

NEVER drink or take drugs and drive.

Drinking or taking drugs and driving is dangerous and may result in an accident and **SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH.**

Drunk driving is a contributor to the highway death toll each year. Even a small amount of alcohol will affect your reflexes, perceptions and judgment. Just one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions and emergencies and your reaction time gets worse with each additional drink.

Driving whilst under the influence of drugs is as dangerous or more dangerous than driving under the influence of alcohol.

You are much more likely to have a serious accident if you drink or take drugs and drive. If you are drinking or taking drugs, don't drive. Do not ride with a driver who has been drinking or taking drugs. Choose a designated driver or call a taxi.

ENGINE START/STOP BUTTON



Whenever the front door is opened, the Engine Start/Stop button will illuminate and then go off 30 seconds after the door is closed.

WARNING

To turn the engine off in an emergency:

Press and hold the Engine Start/Stop button for more than 2 seconds OR rapidly press and release the Engine Start/ Stop button 3 times (within three seconds).

If the vehicle is still moving, you can restart the engine without depressing the brake pedal by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position.

WARNING

- **NEVER** press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst the vehicle is in motion except in an emergency. This will result in the engine turning off and loss of power assist for the steering and brake systems. This may lead to loss of directional control and braking function, which could cause an accident.
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure to press the P button to shift to P (Park), apply the parking brake, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position, and take the smart key with you. Unexpected vehicle movement may occur if these precautions are not followed.

Engine Stop/Start button positions

OFF

To turn off the engine, press the Engine Start/Stop button with vehicle shifted to P (Park).

Also, the engine will turn off when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed with the shift lever in D (Drive) or R (Reverse) because the transmission automatically shifts to the P (Park) position. But, when it is pressed in N (Neutral), the Engine Start/Stop button will go to the ACC position.

To turn off the engine from the ACC position, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position, press the P button, and then press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

The steering wheel locks to protect the vehicle from theft.

Information

If the steering wheel is not locked properly when you open the driver's door, the warning chime will sound.

ACC

Press the Engine Start/Stop button when the button is in the OFF position without depressing the brake pedal.

Some of the electrical accessories are usable. The steering wheel unlocks.

Information

- If you leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position for more than 1 hour, the battery power will turn off automatically to prevent the battery from discharging.
- If the steering wheel doesn't unlock properly, the Engine Start/Stop button will not work. Press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst turning the steering wheel right and left to release tension.

ON

Press the Engine Start/Stop button whilst it is in the ACC position without depressing the brake pedal.

The warning lights can be checked before the engine is started.

Information

Do not leave the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position when the engine is not running, to prevent the battery from discharging.

START

To start the engine, depress the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button with the vehicle shifted to the P (Park) or the N (Neutral) position.

For your safety, start the engine with the vehicle shifted to the P (Park) position.

Information

If you press the Engine Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal, the engine does not start and the Engine Start/Stop button changes as follows:

OFF → ACC → ON → OFF

However, the engine may start if you depress the brake pedal within 0.5 second after pressing the Engine Start/Stop button when it is in the OFF position.

Starting the engine

WARNING

- Always wear appropriate shoes when operating your vehicle. Unsuitable shoes, such as high heels, ski boots, sandals, flip-flops, etc., may interfere with your ability to use the brake, accelerator and clutch pedals.
- Do not start the vehicle with the accelerator pedal depressed.
The vehicle can move which can lead to an accident.
- Wait until the engine rpm is normal. The vehicle may suddenly move if the brake pedal is released when the rpm is high.

WARNING

People with medical devices such as implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should not carry the smart key near the heart. The smart key system may affect the operation of such implanted medical devices.

Failure to do so may result in interference with the medical device, which could result in serious injury.

Information

- The engine will start by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button, only when the smart key is in the vehicle.
- Even if the smart key is in the vehicle, if it is far away from the driver, the engine may not start.
- When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ACC or ON position, if any door is open, the system checks for the smart key. If the smart key is not in the vehicle, the " " indicator will blink and the warning "Key not in vehicle" will come on, and if all doors are closed, the chime will also sound for about 5 seconds. Keep the smart key in the vehicle when using the ACC position or if the vehicle engine is ON.

1. Always carry the smart key with you.
2. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
3. Make sure the vehicle is shifted to P (Park).
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Press the Engine Start/Stop button.

i Information

- Do not wait for the engine to warm up when the vehicle remains stationary.

Start driving at moderate engine speeds. Steep accelerating and decelerating should be avoided.

- Always start the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal. Do not depress the accelerator when starting the vehicle. Do not race the engine whilst warming it up.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle:

- If the engine stalls whilst you are in motion, do not attempt to shift to the P (Park) position.

If traffic and road conditions permit, you may put the shift lever in the N (Neutral) position when the vehicle is still moving and press the Engine Start/Stop button in an attempt to restart the engine.

- Do not push or tow your vehicle to start the engine.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle: Do not press the Engine Start/Stop button for more than 10 seconds except when the stop lamp fuse is blown.

When the stop lamp fuse is blown, you cannot start the engine normally. Replace the fuse with a new one. If you are not able to replace the fuse, you can start the engine by pressing and holding the Engine Start/Stop button for 10 seconds with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position.

For your safety always depress the brake pedal before starting the engine.



OIK057002R

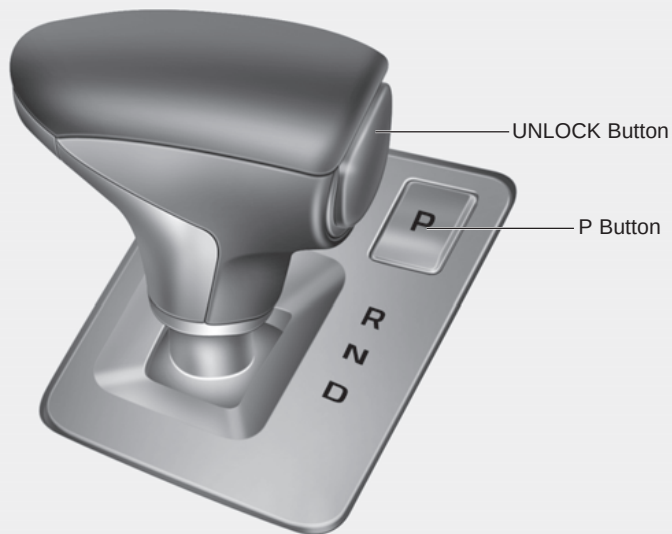
i Information

If the smart key battery is weak or the smart key does not work correctly, you can start the engine by pressing the Engine Start/Stop button with the smart key in the direction shown above.

Turning off the engine

1. Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal fully.
2. Press the P button to shift to P (Park).
3. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position and apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



When you move the shift lever, depress the brake pedal whilst pressing the UNLOCK button.

OIK057003R

Automatic transmission operation

The automatic transmission has eight forward speeds and one reverse speed.

The individual speeds are selected automatically in the D (Drive) position.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury or death:

- **ALWAYS** check the surrounding areas near your vehicle for people, especially children, before shifting a vehicle into D (Drive) or R (Reverse).
- Before leaving the driver's seat, always make sure the vehicle is shifted to the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position. Unexpected and sudden vehicle movement can occur if these precautions are not followed.

- When using the paddle shifter (manual shift mode), do not use engine braking (shifting from a high gear to lower gear) rapidly on slippery roads. The vehicle may slip causing an accident.

Transmission ranges

The indicator in the instrument cluster displays the gear position when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

However, if the gear is in N (Neutral) or P (Park), the position is displayed on the instrument cluster when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF or ACC position.

P (Park)



Always come to a complete stop before shifting into P (Park).

To shift the gear from R (Reverse), N (Neutral), D (Drive) or Manual mode to P (Park), press the [P] button.

If you turn off the engine in D (Drive), R (Reverse) or Manual shift mode the shifting automatically changes to P (Park).

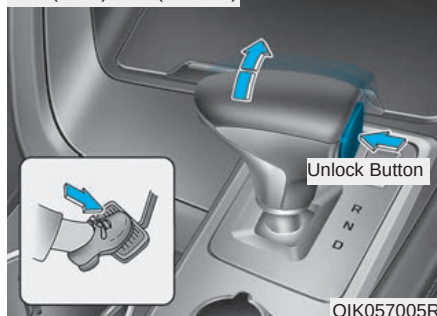
When you park the vehicle, press the P button whilst depressing the brake pedal and then apply the parking brake.

⚠ WARNING

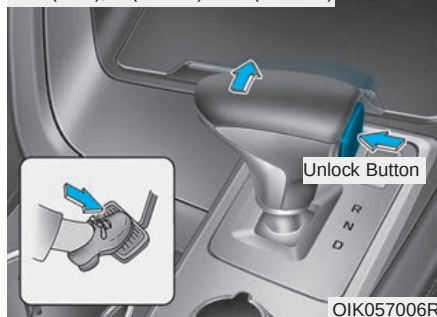
- Shifting into P (Park) whilst the vehicle is in motion may cause you to lose control of the vehicle.
- After the vehicle has stopped, always make sure the vehicle is in P (Park), apply the parking brake, and turn the engine off.
- When parking on an incline, place the shift lever in P (Park) and apply the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill.

R (Reverse)

■ D (Drive) → R (Reverse)



■ P (Park), N (Neutral) → R (Reverse)



Use this position to drive the vehicle rearward.

To move the shift lever to R (Reverse), press the [UNLOCK] button whilst depressing the brake pedal and then move the shift lever forward.

N (Neutral)

■ R (Reverse), D (Drive) → N (Neutral)



The wheels and transmission are not engaged.

Use N (Neutral) if you need to restart a stalled engine. Shift into P (Park) if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason.

Always depress the brake pedal when you are shifting from N (Neutral) to another gear.

In N (Neutral), if the driver attempts to turn off the engine, the transmission remains in the N (Neutral) position and the Engine Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position.

To turn off the engine from the ACC position, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position, press the P button, and then press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.

When either the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ACC position and the shift lever in N (Neutral) position, the engine is automatically turned OFF and the transmission automatically changes to the P (Park) position.

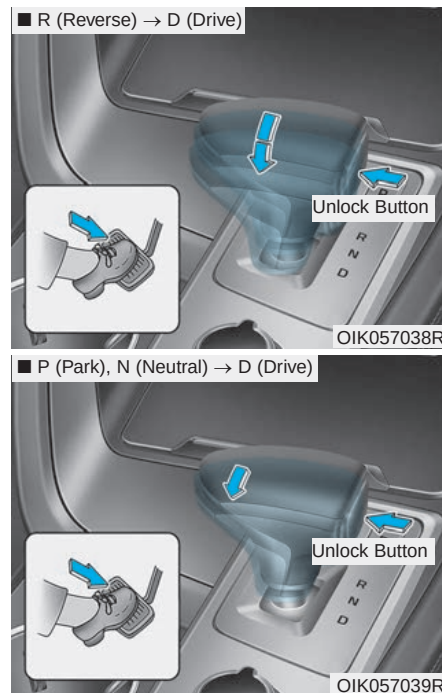
⚠ WARNING

- Do not shift into gear unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal. Use the N (Neutral) position to idle a vehicle for an extended period of time. The wheels and the transmission are not engaged. Whilst parking the vehicle with the engine running, depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
- Do not drive with the shift lever in N (Neutral). Doing so may result in an accident because of a loss of engine braking and the transmission could be damaged.

D (Drive)

This is the normal driving position. The transmission will automatically shift through an 8-gear sequence, providing the best fuel economy and power.

For extra power when passing another vehicle or driving uphill, depress the accelerator pedal further until you feel the transmission downshift to a lower gear.



To shift into D (Drive), depress the brake pedal and press the [UNLOCK] button on the shift lever. Move the shift lever rearward.

To shift into D (Drive) from N (Neutral), you must depress the brake pedal.

NOTICE

Always come to a complete stop before shifting into D (Drive).

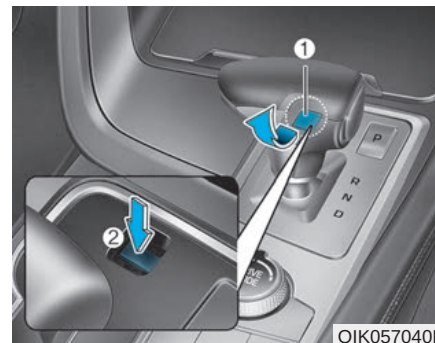
Shift-lock system

For your safety, the automatic transmission has a shift-lock system which prevents shifting the transmission from P (Park) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive) unless the [UNLOCK] button is pressed whilst depressing the brake pedal.

To shift from P (Park) into R (Reverse) or D (Drive):

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine or place the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
3. Move the shift lever to R (Reverse) or D (Drive) whilst pressing the [UNLOCK] button.

When the battery is discharged:



You cannot move the shift lever, when the battery is discharged.

In emergencies, do the following to move the shift lever to N (Neutral) on a level ground.

1. Connect the battery cables from another vehicle or from a another battery to the jump-starting terminals inside the engine compartment.

For more information refer to "Jump Starting" in chapter 6.

2. Release the parking brake with the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.

3. Press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
4. Remove the cap-cover (1) and press the P release button (2) whilst depressing the brake pedal. This will change the gear to N (Neutral) position. The button (2) operates only for 20 seconds to change the gear between P (Park) and N (Neutral) from the time when the button (2) is first pressed.

i Information

In situations where the gear needs to be shifted from P (Park) to N (Neutral) when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, refer to step 4.

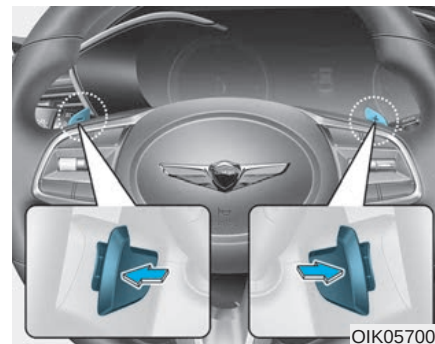
Parking

Always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Shift the vehicle into the P (Park) position, apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position. Take the smart key with you when exiting the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- When you stay in the vehicle with the engine running, be careful not to depress the accelerator pedal for a long period of time. The engine or exhaust system may overheat and start a fire.
- The exhaust gas and the exhaust system are very hot. Keep away from the exhaust system components.
- Do not stop or park over flammable materials, such as dry grass, paper or leaves. They may ignite and cause a fire.

Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode)



The paddle shifter is available when the shift lever is in the D (Drive) position.

Pull the [+] or [-] paddle shifter once to shift up or down one gear and the system changes from automatic shift mode to manual shift mode.

To change back to the automatic shift mode from manual shift mode, do one of the following:

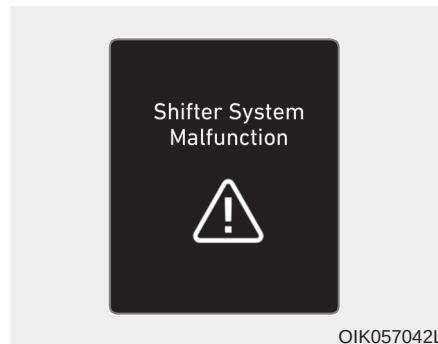
- Move the shift lever down toward the D (Drive) position.
- Gently depress the accelerator pedal for more than 5 seconds.
- Drive the vehicle under 7 km/h.
- Pull and hold the right side paddle shifter.

i Information

If the [+] and [-] paddle shifters are pulled at the same time, gear shift may not occur.

LCD display messages

Shifter System Malfunction



The message appears on the LCD display when the transmission or the shift lever does not properly operate in the P (Park) position.

We recommend that you immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check shift lever



The message appears on the LCD display when there is a malfunction with one of the key transmission shifter components.

We recommend that you immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

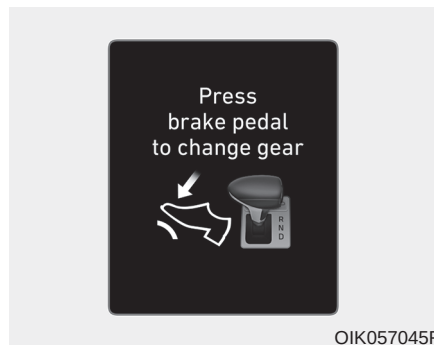
Shifting conditions not met



The message appears on the LCD display when engine rpm is too high, or when driving speed is too fast to shift the gear.

Decrease the vehicle speed or slow down before shifting the gear.

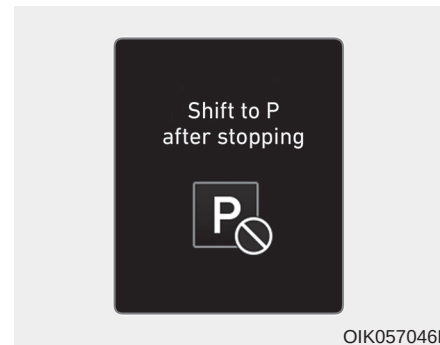
Press brake pedal to change gear



The message appears on the LCD display when the brake pedal is not depressed whilst shifting the gear.

Depress the brake pedal and then shift the gear.

Shift to P after stopping



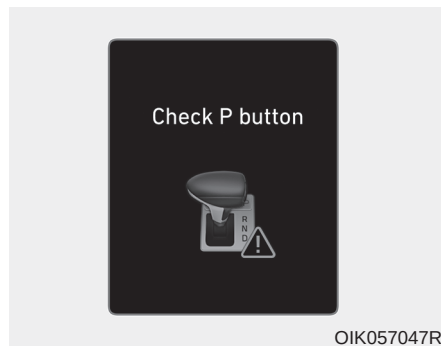
The message appears on the LCD display when the gear is shifted to P (Park) whilst the vehicle is moving. Stop the vehicle before shifting to P (Park).

Press P to park



The message appears on the LCD display to inform the driver to press the P button to shift to P (Park) when the driver moves the shift lever upward even though the gear is in R (Reverse).

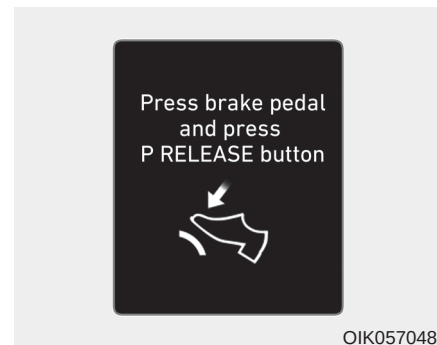
Check P button



The message appears on the LCD display when there is problem with the P button.

We recommend that you immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Press brake pedal and press P RELEASE button



The message appears on the LCD display when the driver presses the P RELEASE button without depressing the brake pedal.

Depress the brake pedal before pressing the P RELEASE button.

Check P RELEASE button



The message appears on the LCD display when there is problem with the P RELEASE button.

We recommend that you immediately have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

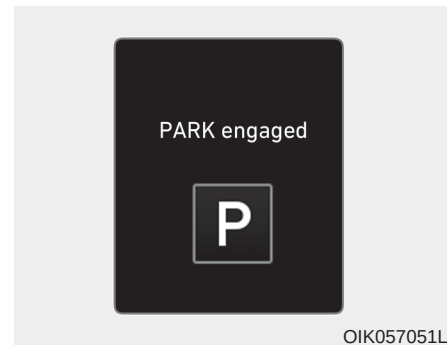
Press UNLOCK to change gear



The message appears on the LCD display when the [UNLOCK] button is not pressed whilst shifting the gear.

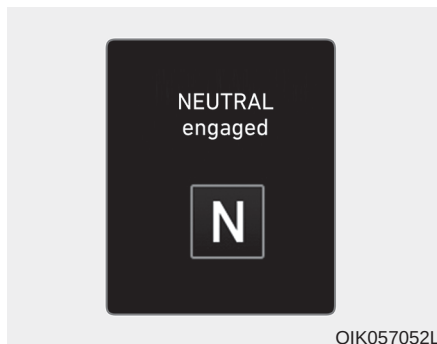
Press the [UNLOCK] button and then shift the gear.

PARK engaged



The message appears on the LCD display when the P (Park) position is engaged.

NEUTRAL engaged



The message appears on the LCD display when the N (Neutral) position is engaged.

Good driving practices

- Never shift from P (Park) or N (Neutral) to any other position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- Never shift into P (Park) when the vehicle is in motion.

Ensure the vehicle is completely stopped before you attempt to shift into R (Reverse) or D (Drive).

- Do not move the shift lever to N (Neutral) when driving. If the shift lever is moved to N (Neutral) whilst driving, the vehicle loses the ability to provide engine braking. Doing so may increase the risk of an accident.
- Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but consistent pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.
- Depressing both accelerator and brake pedals at the same time can trigger logic for engine power reduction to ensure vehicle deceleration. Vehicle acceleration will resume after the brake pedal is released.

- When driving in Manual shift mode with the paddle shifter, slow down before shifting to a lower gear. Otherwise, the lower gear may not be engaged if the engine rpms are outside of the allowable range.
- Always apply the parking brake when leaving the vehicle. Do not depend on placing the transmission in P (Park) to keep the vehicle from moving.
- Exercise extreme caution when driving on a slippery surface. Be especially careful when braking, accelerating or shifting gears. On a slippery surface, an abrupt change in vehicle speed can cause the drive wheels to lose traction and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.
- Optimum vehicle performance and economy is obtained by smoothly depressing and releasing the accelerator.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**:

- **ALWAYS** wear your seat belt. In a collision, an unrestrained occupant is significantly more likely to be seriously injured or killed than a properly restrained occupant.
- Avoid high speeds when cornering or turning.
- Do not make quick steering wheel movements, such as sharp lane changes or fast, sharp turns.
- The risk of rollover is greatly increased if you lose control of your vehicle at highway speeds.
- Loss of control often occurs if two or more wheels drop off the roadway and the driver over steers to reenter the roadway.

- In the event your vehicle leaves the roadway, do not steer sharply. Instead, slow down before pulling back into the travel lanes.
- Genesis recommends you follow all posted speed limits.

Information - Kickdown Mechanism

Use the kickdown mechanism for maximum acceleration. Depress the accelerator pedal beyond the pressure point. The automatic transmission will shift to a lower gear depending on the engine speed.

BRAKING SYSTEM

Power brakes

Your vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal usage.

If the engine is not running or is turned off when driving, the power assist for the brakes will not work. You can still stop your vehicle by applying greater force to the brake pedal than is typical. The stopping distance, however, will be longer than with power brakes.

When the engine is not running, the reserve brake power is partially depleted each time the brake pedal is applied. Do not pump the brake pedal when the power assist has been interrupted.

Pump the brake pedal only when necessary to maintain steering control on slippery surfaces.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. This will create abnormal high brake temperatures, excessive brake lining and pad wear, and increased stopping distances.**
- **When descending a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear and avoid continuous application of the brakes. Applying the brakes continuously will cause the brakes to overheat and could result in a temporary loss of braking performance.**

- **Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down; the vehicle may also pull to one side when the brakes are applied. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected in this way. Always test your brakes in this fashion after driving through deep water. To dry the brakes, lightly tap the brake pedal to heat up the brakes when maintaining a safe forward speed until brake performance returns to normal. Avoid driving at high speeds until the brakes function correctly.**

High performance brakes (if equipped)

For vehicles equipped with the High Performance Brakes (large-diameter Brembo brakes for enhanced braking performance), noise such as a squeal, squeak or groan is generated whilst braking. This is normal and the friction may create circle patterns on the disc surface. This is also a normal situation which does not affect braking performance.

NOTICE

- Occasional brake noise is normal. If a continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining may be worn-out. We recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel whilst braking, we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

WARNING

Frequent speeding and braking may deform components and worn the disc brakes causing vibration when braking. Prevent brake damage by avoiding excessive braking.

Brake wear, noise, vibration from excessive braking or deformation of the brakes caused by repeatedly braking from high speed, racing on tracks, etc. can be excluded from warranty coverage.

Disc brakes wear indicator

When your brake pads are worn and new pads are required, you will hear a high pitched warning sound from your front or rear brakes. You may hear this sound come and go or it may occur whenever you depress the brake pedal.

Note that some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when you first apply (or lightly apply) the brakes. This is normal and does not indicate a problem with your brakes.

NOTICE

To avoid costly brake repairs, do not continue to drive with worn brake pads.

Information

Always replace brake pads as complete front or rear axle sets.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Applying the parking brake



To apply the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake):

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Pull up the EPB switch.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning Light comes on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, do not operate the EPB when the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to an accident.

Releasing the parking brake



To release the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake), press the EPB switch in the following condition:

- Place the Engine Start/Stop button in the ON position.
- Depress the brake pedal.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning Light goes off.

To release EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) automatically:

- Gear in P (Park)
With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of P (Park) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).
- Gear in N (Neutral)
With the engine running depress the brake pedal and shift out of N (Neutral) to R (Rear) or D (Drive).
- Satisfy the following conditions
 1. Start the engine.
 2. Fasten the driver's seat belt.
 3. Close the driver's door, engine bonnet and boot.
 4. Depress the accelerator pedal whilst the gear is in R (Rear), D (Drive) or manual shift mode.

Make sure the Parking Brake Warning light goes off.

i Information

- **For your safety, you can engage the EPB even though the Engine Start/Stop button is in the OFF position, but you cannot release it.**

- **For your safety, depress the brake pedal and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch when you drive downhill or when backing up the vehicle.**

NOTICE

- **If the parking brake warning light is still on even though the EPB has been released, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.**
- **Do not drive your vehicle with the EPB applied. It may cause excessive brake pad and brake rotor wear.**

EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) may be automatically applied when:

- Requested by other systems
- If the driver turns the engine off whilst Auto Hold is operating, EPB will be automatically applied.

Warning messages



To release EPB,
fasten seatbelt,
close door, hood,
and trunk

OIK057076L

To release EPB, fasten seatbelt, close door, hood and trunk

- If you try to drive with the EPB applied, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If the driver's seat belt is unfastened and the engine bonnet or boot is opened, a warning will sound and a message will appear.
- If there is a problem with the vehicle, a warning may sound and a message may appear.

If the situation occurs, depress the brake pedal and release EPB by pressing the EPB switch.

WARNING

- Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal.

Shift into the P (Park) position, press the EPB switch, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position. Take the smart key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Vehicles not fully engaged in P (Park) with the parking brake set are at risk of moving inadvertently and causing injury to yourself or others.

- NEVER allow anyone who is unfamiliar with the vehicle to touch the EPB switch. If the EPB is released unintentionally, serious injury may occur.
- Only release the EPB when you are seated inside the vehicle with your foot firmly on the brake pedal.

NOTICE

- Do not apply the accelerator pedal whilst the parking brake is engaged. If you depress the accelerator pedal with the EPB engaged, a warning will sound and a message will appear. Damage to the parking brake may occur.
- Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the braking system and cause premature wear or damage to brake parts. Make sure the EPB is released and the Parking Brake Warning Light is off before driving.

Information

- A clicking sound may be heard whilst operating or releasing the EPB. These conditions are normal and indicate that the EPB is functioning properly.
- When leaving your smart key with a parking attendant or assistant, make sure to inform him/her how to operate the EPB.

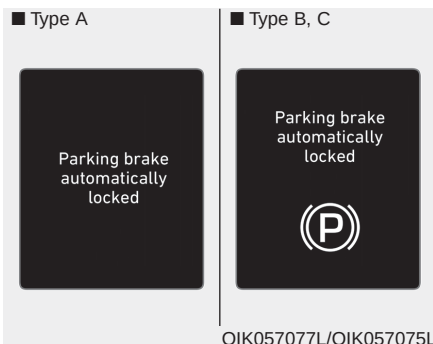
AUTO HOLD
deactivating.
Press brake pedal



OIK057079L

AUTO HOLD deactivating. Press brake pedal

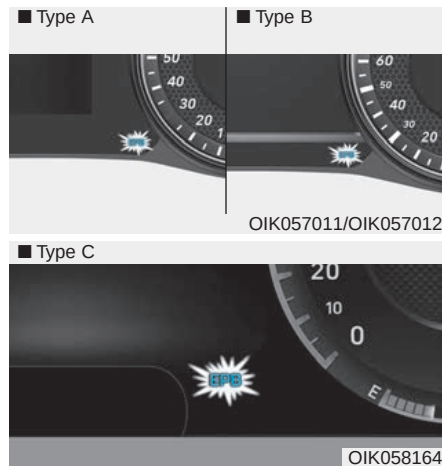
When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.



Parking brake automatically locked

If the EPB is applied whilst Auto Hold is activated, a warning will sound and a message will appear.

EPB malfunction indicator



This warning light illuminates if the Engine Start/Stop button is changed to the ON position and goes off in approximately 3 seconds if the system is operating normally.

If the EPB malfunction indicator remains on, comes on whilst driving, or does not come on when the Engine Start/Stop button is changed to the ON position, this indicates that the EPB may have malfunctioned.

If this occurs, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The EPB malfunction indicator may illuminate when the ESC indicator comes on to indicate that the ESC is not working properly, but it does not indicate a malfunction of the EPB.

NOTICE

- If the EPB warning light is still on, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the parking brake warning light does not illuminate or blinks even though the EPB switch was pulled up, the EPB may not be applied.
- If the parking brake warning light blinks when the EPB warning light is on, press the switch, and then pull it up. Repeat this one more time. If the EPB warning does not go off, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Emergency braking

If there is a problem with the brake pedal whilst driving, emergency braking is possible by pulling up and holding the EPB switch. Braking is possible only whilst you are holding the EPB switch. However, braking distance will be longer than normal.

WARNING

Do not operate the parking brake whilst the vehicle is moving except in an emergency situation. It could damage the brake system and lead to a severe accident.

Information

During emergency braking, the parking brake warning light will illuminate to indicate that the system is operating.

NOTICE

If you continuously notice a noise or burning smell when the EPB is used for emergency braking, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

When the EPB (Electronic Parking Brake) does not release

If the EPB does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer by loading the vehicle on a flatbed tow truck and have the system checked.

Auto hold

The Auto Hold maintains the vehicle at a standstill even though the brake pedal is not depressed, after the driver brings the vehicle to a complete stop by depressing the brake pedal.

To apply :



1. With the driver's door and engine bonnet closed, fasten the driver's seat belt or depress the brake pedal and then press the [AUTO HOLD] switch. The white AUTO HOLD indicator will come on and the system will be in the standby position.



OIK057014R

2. When you stop the vehicle completely by depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Hold maintains the brake pressure to hold the vehicle stationary. The indicator changes from white to green.
3. The vehicle will remain stationary even if you release the brake pedal.
4. If the EPB is applied, Auto Hold will be released.

To release :

- If you press the accelerator pedal with the shift lever in D (Drive) or manual shift mode, Auto Hold will be released automatically and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.
- If the vehicle is restarted using the cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) whilst Auto Hold and cruise control is operating, the Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white. (if equipped with cruise control system)

⚠ WARNING

When AUTO HOLD is automatically released by depressing the accelerator pedal, always take a look around your vehicle.

Slowly depress the accelerator pedal for a smooth start.

To cancel :



OIK057015R

1. Depress the brake pedal.
 2. Press the [AUTO HOLD] switch.
- The AUTO HOLD indicator will turn off.

WARNING

To prevent, unexpected and sudden vehicle movement, **ALWAYS** press your foot on the brake pedal to cancel Auto Hold before you:

- Drive downhill.
- Park the vehicle.

Information

- Auto Hold does not operate when:
 - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
 - The bonnet is opened
 - The shift lever is in P (Park) or R (Reverse)
 - The EPB is applied
- For your safety, Auto Hold automatically switches to EPB when:
 - The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
 - The bonnet is opened with the shift lever in D (Drive)
 - The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes
 - The vehicle stands on a steep slope
 - The vehicle moves several times

In these cases, the parking brake warning light comes on, the AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white, a warning sound and a message will appear to inform you that EPB has been automatically engaged. Before driving off again, press the foot brake pedal, check the surrounding area near your vehicle and release the parking brake manually with the EPB switch.

- If the AUTO HOLD indicator changes to yellow, the Auto Hold is not working properly. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.
- Whilst Auto Hold is operating, you may hear mechanical noise. This is a normal operating noise.

WARNING

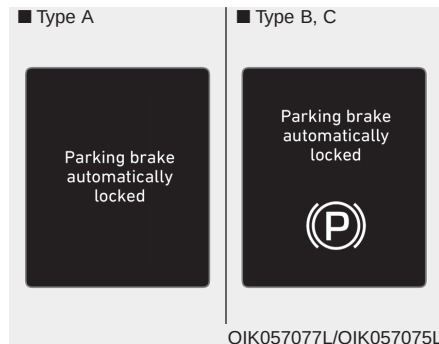
- Depress the accelerator pedal slowly when you start the vehicle.
- For your safety, cancel Auto Hold when you drive downhill, reverse the vehicle or park the vehicle.

NOTICE

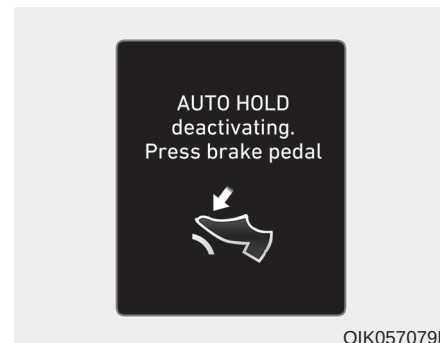
If there is a malfunction with the driver's door or bonnet open detection system, Auto Hold may not work properly.

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

Warning messages



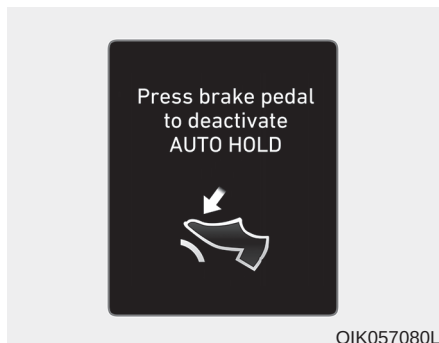
Parking brake automatically locked
When the EPB is applied from Auto Hold, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



**AUTO HOLD deactivating.
Press brake pedal**

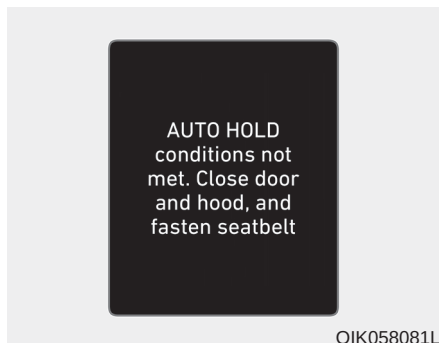
When the conversion from Auto Hold to EPB is not working properly a warning will sound and a message will appear.

When this message is displayed, the Auto Hold and EPB may not operate. For your safety, depress the brake pedal.



Press brake pedal to deactivate AUTO HOLD

If you did not apply the brake pedal when you released the Auto Hold by pressing the [AUTO HOLD] switch, a warning will sound and a message will appear.



AUTO HOLD conditions not met. Close door and hood, and fasten seatbelt

When you press the [AUTO HOLD] switch, if the driver's door and engine bonnet are not closed or the driver's seat belt is unfastened, a warning will sound and a message will appear on the LCD display. In this instance, press the [AUTO HOLD] button after closing the driver's door and bonnet, and fastening the seat belt.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

WARNING

An Anti-Lock Braking System (ABS) or an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system will not prevent accidents due to improper or dangerous driving manoeuvres. Even though vehicle control is improved during emergency braking, always maintain a safe distance between you and objects ahead of you. Vehicle speeds should always be reduced during extreme road conditions. The braking distance for vehicles equipped with ABS or ESC may be longer than for those without these systems so you should drive your vehicle at reduced speeds during the following conditions:

- Rough, gravel or snow-covered roads.

- On roads where the road surface is pitted or has different surface height.
- Tyre chains are installed on your vehicle.

The safety features of an ABS or ESC equipped vehicle should not be tested by high speed driving or cornering. This could endanger the safety of yourself or others.

ABS is an electronic braking system that helps to prevent a braking skid. ABS allows the driver to steer and brake at the same time.

Using ABS

To obtain the maximum benefit from your ABS in an emergency situation, do not attempt to modulate your brake pressure and do not try to pump your brakes. Press your brake pedal as hard as possible.

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ABS is active.

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.

Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from sudden changes in direction, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed depending on the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability. Always steer moderately when braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

On loose or uneven road surfaces, operation of the anti-lock brake system may result in a longer stopping distance than for vehicles equipped with a conventional brake system.

The ABS warning light () will stay on for several seconds after the Engine Start/Stop button is placed in the ON position. During that time, the ABS will go through self-diagnosis and the light will go off if everything is normal. If the light stays on, you may have a problem with your ABS. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

If the ABS warning light () is on and stays on, you may have a problem with the ABS. Your power brakes will work normally. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death, we recommend that you contact your authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

When you drive on a road with poor traction, such as an icy road, and apply your brakes continuously, the ABS will be active continuously and the ABS warning light () may illuminate. Pull your vehicle over to a safe place and turn the engine off.

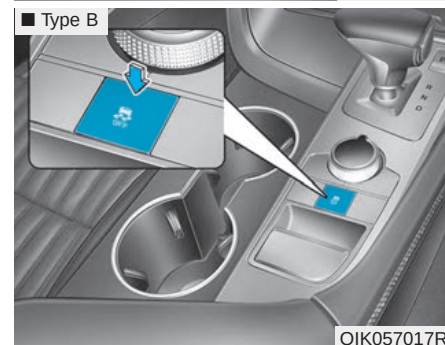
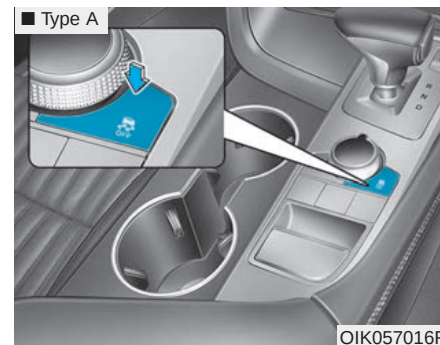
Restart the engine. If the ABS warning light is off, then your ABS system is normal.

Otherwise, you may have a problem with your ABS system. We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

Information

When you jump start your vehicle because of a drained battery, the ABS warning light () may turn on at the same time. This happens because of the low battery voltage. It does not mean your ABS is malfunctioning. Have the battery recharged before driving the vehicle.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering manoeuvres.

ESC checks where you are steering and where the vehicle is actually going. ESC applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle's brakes and intervenes in the engine management system to assist the driver with keeping the vehicle on the intended path. It is not a substitute for safe driving practices. Always adjust your speed and driving to the road conditions.

 WARNING

Never drive too fast for the road conditions or too quickly when cornering. The ESC system will not prevent accidents.

Excessive speed in turns, abrupt manoeuvres, and hydroplaning on wet surfaces can result in severe accidents.

ESC operation

ESC ON condition

When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the ESC and the ESC OFF indicator lights illuminate for approximately 3 seconds and go off, then the ESC is turned on.

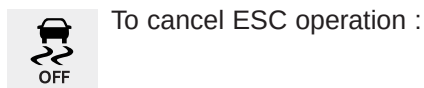
When operating



When the ESC is in operation, the ESC indicator light blinks:

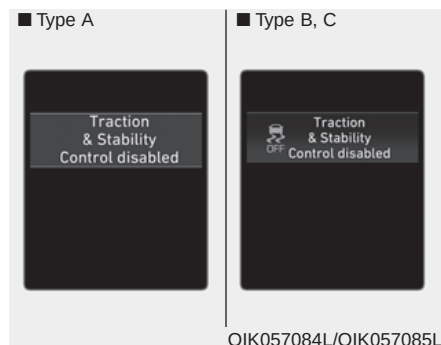
- When you apply your brakes under conditions which may lock the wheels, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your ESC is active.
- When the ESC activates, the engine may not respond to the accelerator as it does under routine conditions.
- If the Cruise Control was in use when the ESC activates, the Cruise Control automatically disengages. The Cruise Control can be reengaged when the road conditions allow. **See "Cruise Control System" later in this chapter** (if equipped).
- When moving out of the mud or driving on a slippery road, the engine rpm (revolutions per minute) may not increase even if you press the accelerator pedal heavily. This is to maintain the stability and traction of the vehicle and does not indicate a problem.

ESC OFF condition



• State 1

Press the ESC OFF button briefly. The ESC OFF indicator light and message "Traction Control disabled" will illuminate. In this state, the traction control function of ESC (engine management) is disabled, but the brake control function of ESC (braking management) still operates.



• State 2

Press and hold the ESC OFF button continuously for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator light and message "Traction & Stability Control disabled" illuminates and a warning chime sounds. In this state, both the traction control function of ESC (engine management) and the brake control function of ESC (braking management) are disabled.

If the Engine Start/Stop button is placed in the OFF position when ESC is off, ESC remains off. Upon restarting the vehicle, the ESC will automatically turn on again.

Indicator lights

■ ESC indicator light (blinks)



■ ESC OFF indicator light (comes on)



When the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position, the ESC indicator light illuminates, then goes off if the ESC system is operating normally.

The ESC indicator light blinks whenever the ESC is operating.

If the ESC indicator light stays on, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the ESC system. When this warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

The ESC OFF indicator light comes on when the ESC is turned off with the button.

WARNING

When the ESC is blinking, this indicates the ESC is active:

Drive slowly and NEVER attempt to accelerate. NEVER turn the ESC off whilst the ESC indicator light is blinking or you may lose control of the vehicle resulting in an accident.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the ESC system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized wheels and tyres installed.

ESC OFF usage

When Driving

The ESC OFF mode should only be used briefly to help free the vehicle if stuck in snow or mud, by temporarily stopping operation of the ESC, to maintain wheel torque.

To turn ESC off when driving, press the ESC OFF button whilst driving on a flat road surface.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the transmission:

- Do not allow wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively when the ESC, ABS, and parking brake warning lights are displayed. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively when these lights are displayed.
- When operating the vehicle on a dynamometer, make sure the ESC is turned off (ESC OFF light illuminated).

Information

Turning the ESC off does not affect ABS or standard brake system operation.

Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)

The Vehicle Stability Management (VSM) is a function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. It helps ensure the vehicle stays stable when accelerating or braking suddenly on wet, slippery and rough roads where traction over the four tyres can suddenly become uneven.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the Vehicle Stability Management (VSM):

- **ALWAYS** check the speed and the distance to the vehicle ahead. The VSM is not a substitute for safe driving practices.
- Never drive too fast for the road conditions. The VSM system will not prevent accidents. Excessive speed in bad weather, on slippery and uneven roads can result in severe accidents.

VSM operation

VSM ON

The VSM operates when:

- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately above 15 km/h on winding roads.
- Vehicle speed is approximately above 20 km/h when the vehicle is braking on rough roads.

When operating

When you apply your brakes under conditions which may activate the ESC, you may hear sounds from the brakes, or feel a corresponding sensation in the brake pedal. This is normal and it means your VSM is active.

Information

The VSM does not operate when:

- Driving on a gradient or incline.
- Driving in reverse.
- The ESC OFF indicator light is on.
- The EPS (Electric power steering) warning light (⚠) is on or blinks.

WARNING

If the ESC indicator light (⚠) or EPS warning light (⚠) stays illuminated or blinks, your vehicle may have a malfunction with the VSM system. When the warning light illuminates we recommend that the vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Driving with wheels and tyres with different sizes may cause the VSM system to malfunction. Before replacing tyres, make sure all four tyres and wheels are the same size. Never drive the vehicle with different sized tyres and wheels installed.

Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)

The Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC) helps prevent the vehicle from rolling when starting a vehicle from a stop on a hill. The system operates the brakes automatically for approximately 2 seconds and releases the brake after 2 seconds or when the accelerator pedal is pressed.

WARNING

Always be ready to press the accelerator pedal when starting off on a incline. The HAC activates only for approximately 2 seconds.

Information

- The HAC does not operate when the shift lever is in P (Park) or N (Neutral).
- The HAC activates even when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is off. However, it does not activate, when the ESC does not operate normally.

Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) (if equipped)

The Emergency Stop Signal system alerts the driver behind your vehicle by blinking the stop lights, whilst sharply and severely braking.

The system is activated when:

- The vehicle suddenly stops (The deceleration power exceeds 7 m/s^2 , and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.).
- The ABS is activated and the driving speed exceeds 55 km/h.

The hazard warning flasher automatically turns ON after blinking the stop lights:

- When the driving speed is under 40 km/h,
- When the ABS is deactivated, and
- When the sudden braking situation is over.

The hazard warning flasher turns OFF:

- When the vehicle drives at a low speed for a certain period of time.

The driver can manually turn OFF the hazard warning flasher by pressing the button.

Information

The Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) system will not activate, when the hazard warning flashers are already on.

Good braking practices

WARNING

Whenever leaving the vehicle or parking, always come to a complete stop and continue to depress the brake pedal. Move the shift lever into the P (Park) position, then apply the parking brake, and place the Engine Start/Stop button in the OFF position.

Vehicles parked with the parking brake not applied or not fully engaged may roll inadvertently and may cause injury to the driver and others. ALWAYS apply the parking brake before exiting the vehicle.

Wet brakes can be dangerous! The brakes may get wet if the vehicle is driven through standing water or if it is washed. Your vehicle will not stop as quickly if the brakes are wet. Wet brakes may cause the vehicle to pull to one side.

To dry the brakes, apply the brakes lightly until the braking action returns to normal, taking care to keep the vehicle under control at all times. If the braking action does not return to normal, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.

DO NOT drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light, but constant pedal pressure can result in the brakes overheating, brake wear, and possibly even brake failure.

If a tyre goes flat when you are driving, apply the brakes gently and keep the vehicle pointed straight ahead whilst you slow down. When you are moving slowly enough for it to be safe to do so, pull off the road and stop in a safe location.

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped to prevent the vehicle from rolling forward.

LIMITED SLIP DIFFERENTIAL (IF EQUIPPED)

Limited Slip Differential refers to a feature equipped with a mechanism that controls the differential functions of the wheels in the rear differential.

The Limited Slip Differential helps improve handling performance when cornering at high speed.

WARNING

Never run wheels with one of them lifted by the jack. It is extremely dangerous for a vehicle equipped with Electronic Limited Slip Differential.

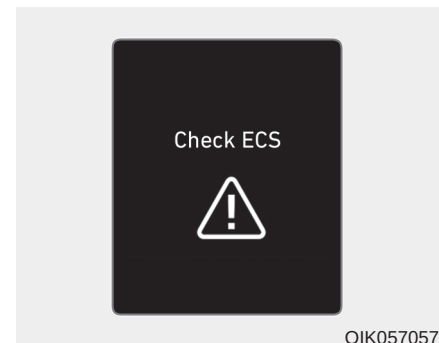
Information

Be sure to use oil specifically for a LSD when replacing Rear Differential (for LSD) Oil. Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in chapter 8.

ELECTRONIC CONTROL SUSPENSION (ECS) (IF EQUIPPED)

The Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) controls the vehicle suspension automatically to maximise driving comfort by taking into account the driving conditions such as speed, surface of the road, cornering, stopping requirements and acceleration.

System malfunction



Check ECS

If the ECS warning message comes on, you may have a problem with the ECS system.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

LAUNCH CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

The Launch Control system controls the vehicle to reduce wheel spin or slip on a hard acceleration from a standing start.

Prerequisite for activation

The Launch Control gets ready to be activated, when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The engine is warmed up.
- Malfunction warning lights related to the engine and ESC (Electronic Stability Control) are off.



CAUTION

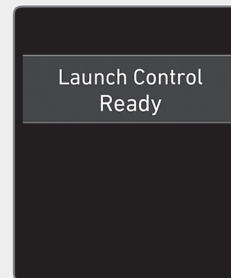
For safety purposes, check the following conditions before using Launch control.

- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- All doors, bonnet and boot are closed.
- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The steering wheel straight.

Launch control activation

To activate Launch Control:

1. Select SPORT mode using the drive mode selection knob. SPORT indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster LCD display.
2. Turn off ESC by pressing the ESC OFF button for more than 3 seconds. The ESC OFF indicator will illuminate on the instrument cluster LCD display.
3. Shift to the D (Drive) position.

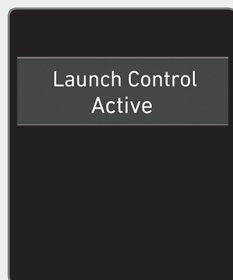


OIK057072L

4. Depress the brake pedal firmly with your left foot, whilst depressing the accelerator pedal down fully with your right foot. Then, the Engine rpm will reach an optimised level.

The message "Launch Control Ready" will appear on the instrument cluster LCD display.

5. A smooth, quick release of the brake pedal, whilst maintaining full depression of the accelerator pedal will initiate launching of the vehicle.



OIK057073L

6. During vehicle launching, continue depressing the accelerator pedal to keep the Launch Control system active for the desired duration.

The message "Launch Control Active" will appear on the cluster LCD display.

To deactivate (end) Launch Control, release the accelerator pedal.

i Information

Launch Control is available again after cooling down by driving the vehicle for at least 3 minutes.



CAUTION

- The Launch Control system is intended for use at a closed race track and not intended for use on public roads. It will not compensate for driver's who are inexperienced or lack familiarity with the race track.
- Do not use Launch Control during break-in period of the vehicle.

NOTICE

Constant use of Launch Control can put enormous stress on the vehicle resulting in premature wear of related components.

ECO COASTING (IF EQUIPPED)

Whilst coasting down, the transmission is automatically neutralised and the ECO Coasting mode is activated when the mode activation conditions are met. In this mode, the engine coasting distance is extended with the engine at idling speed, improving the fuel efficiency on the actual road. The engine is automatically re-engaged when ECO Coasting deactivation conditions are met.

ECO Coasting activation condition

The ECO Coasting is activated after depressing and releasing the accelerator pedal when:

- The Drive Mode is set to the ECO mode
- The driver's accelerating style is SMART ECO in SMART mode
- ECO is selected for Engine/Transmission in CUSTOM mode from the Infotainment system screen
- The shift lever is in D (Drive)
- The Cruise Control/Smart Cruise Control button is OFF

- The accelerator or brake pedal is not depressed
- The vehicle's speed is within 55~160 km/h range
- The road gradient is within -5~+5% range
- In SMART mode, if the distance between the vehicle ahead and the relative speed is within a certain range (if equipped with Smart Cruise Control)

Information

- **If the front radar for smart cruise control system cannot operate normally, the inter-vehicle distance and relative speed condition are automatically ignored (if equipped with Smart Cruise Control).**
- **The ECO Coasting is activated after the warming up of the engine and shift lever, and self-diagnosis of engine sensors are completed.**
- **Activation of the ECO Coasting may temporarily be delayed according to the driving situation even if the above conditions are met.**

ECO Coasting deactivation condition

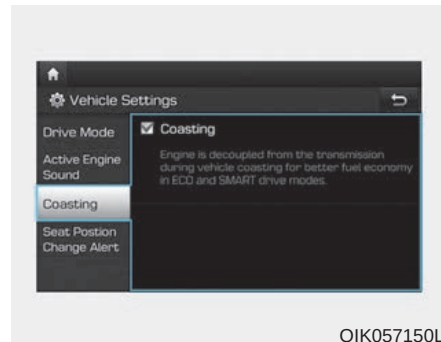
The ECO Coasting is deactivated whilst the function is in activation when:

- The Drive Mode is set to the COMFORT or SPORT mode
- The driver's accelerating style is SMART COMFORT or SMART SPORT in SMART mode
- The Cruise Control/Smart Cruise Control button is ON (the cruise indicator is ON)
- The vehicle's speed exceeds 55~160 km/h range
- The road gradient is under -5% or over +5%
- In SMART mode, if the distance between the vehicle ahead is too close or the relative speed changes momentarily
- If lane change is predicated in SMART mode (e.g. the turn signal is turned ON or a LKA warning appears due to steering wheel control, etc.)

i Information

It is recommended to deactivate the ECO Coasting function if you are driving under frequently stop-and-go condition. Change the Drive Mode to COMFORT or SPORT mode or deactivate the ECO Coasting mode from the Infotainment system screen.

Setting ECO Coasting function



Select 'Settings → Vehicle settings → Coasting' on the Infotainment system screen. Turn the function ON and the ECO Coasting function will activate.

i Information

The ECO Coasting function is ON when the vehicle is released from the factory.

ECO Coasting activation indicator



When the ECO Coasting function is activated 'Coasting' illuminates on the top of the instrument cluster LCD display.

NOTICE

- If the accelerator pedal is depressed quickly whilst ECO Coasting function is in activation, the sense of acceleration occurs after the engagement of the clutch inside the transmission. And you may feel a delay in acceleration compare to the situation when the ECO Coasting function is not in activation.
- Do not operate the Infotainment system screen to turn ON/OFF the ECO Coasting function whilst driving. The driver may be distracted and be dangerous.

DRIVE MODE INTEGRATED CONTROL SYSTEM

Drive mode



The drive mode may be selected according to the driver's preference or road condition.

The mode changes whenever the DRIVE MODE selection knob is rotated.



- **SMART mode:**
SMART mode automatically adjusts the driving mode (ECO ↔ COMFORT ↔ SPORT) in accordance with the driver's driving habits.
- **ECO mode:**
ECO mode improves fuel efficiency for eco-friendly driving.
- **COMFORT mode:**
COMFORT mode provides smooth driving and comfortable riding.

- **SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped) mode:**

SPORT/SPORT+ mode provides sporty but firm riding.

- **CUSTOM mode (if equipped):**

The driver can separately adjust modes of each driving system.

The drive mode will change to COMFORT mode when the engine is restarted. However, except, when it is in ECO mode. ECO mode will be maintained, as selected when the engine is restarted.

SMART mode

SMART SMART mode selects the proper driving mode between ECO, COMFORT, and SPORT by judging the driver's driving habits (i.e. Economic or Sportive) from the brake pedal depression or the steering wheel operation.

- Rotate the DRIVE MODE selection knob to activate SMART mode.

When SMART mode is activated, the indicator illuminates on the instrument cluster.

- Vehicle equipped with a supervision cluster the indicator illuminates in green, when the driver's driving is categorised to be economic. It illuminates in white, when the driver's driving is categorised to be normal. It illuminates in yellow, when the driver's driving is categorised to be sportive during abrupt braking or sharp cornering.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SMART mode is desired, re-select SMART mode.
- SMART mode automatically controls the vehicle driving, such as gear shifting patterns, engine torque and ride quality (if equipped with the electronic suspension system), in accordance with the driver's driving habits.

i Information

- **When you mildly drive the vehicle in SMART mode, the driving mode changes to ECO mode to improve fuel efficiency. However, the actual fuel efficiency may differ in accordance with your driving situations (i.e. upward/downward slope, vehicle deceleration/acceleration).**
- **When you dynamically drive the vehicle in SMART mode by abruptly decelerating or sharply turning the driving mode changes to SPORT mode. However, it may adversely affect fuel economy.**

Various driving situations, which you may encounter in SMART mode

- The driving mode automatically changes to ECO mode after a certain period of time, when you gently depress the accelerator pedal (Your driving is categorised to be economic.).
- The driving mode automatically changes from SMART ECO mode to SMART COMFORT mode after a certain period of time, when you sharply or repetitively depress the accelerator pedal.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART COMFORT mode with the same driving patterns, when the vehicle starts to drive on an upward slope of a certain angle. The driving mode automatically returns to SMART ECO mode, when the vehicle enters a leveled road.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT, when you abruptly accelerate the vehicle or repetitively operate the steering wheel (Your driving is categorised to be sporty.). In this mode, your vehicle drives in a lower gear for abrupt accelerating/decelerating and increases the engine brake performance.

- You may still sense the engine braking performance, even when you release the accelerator pedal in SMART SPORT mode. It is because your vehicle remains in lower gear over a certain period of time for next acceleration. Thus, it is a normal driving situation, not indicating any malfunction.
- The driving mode automatically changes to SMART SPORT mode only in harsh driving situations. In most of the normal driving situations, the driving mode sets to be either in SMART ECO mode or in SMART COMFORT mode.

Limitation of SMART mode

The SMART mode may be limited in following situations. (The OFF indicator illuminates in those situations.)

- The driver manually moves the shift lever :
It deactivates SMART mode. The vehicle drives, as the driver manually moves the shift lever.

- The cruise control is activated:
The cruise control system may deactivate the SMART mode when the vehicle is controlled by the set speed of the smart cruise control system. (SMART mode is not deactivated just by activating the cruise control system.)
- The transmission oil temperature is either extremely low or extremely high :
The SMART mode can be active in most of the normal driving situations. However, an extremely high/low transmission oil temperature may temporarily deactivate the SMART mode, because the transmission condition is out of normal operation condition.

ECO mode



When the drive mode is set to ECO mode, the engine and transmission control logic are changed to maximise fuel efficiency.

- When ECO mode is selected by rotating the DRIVE MODE selection knob, the ECO indicator will illuminate.
- If the vehicle is set to ECO mode, when the engine is turned OFF and restarted the drive mode setting will remain in ECO mode.

Information

Fuel efficiency depends on the driver's driving habit and road condition.

When ECO mode is activated:

- The acceleration response may be slightly reduced if the accelerator pedal is depressed moderately.
- The air conditioning performance may be limited.
- The shift pattern of the automatic transmission may change.
- The engine noise may be louder at some automatic transmission shifts as down-shift requires pressing down more on the accelerator.

The above situations are normal conditions when ECO mode is activated to improve fuel efficiency.

Limitation of ECO mode operation:

If the following conditions occur whilst ECO mode is operating, the system operation is limited even though there is no change in the ECO indicator.

- When the coolant temperature is low:

The system will be limited until engine performance becomes normal.

- When driving up a hill:

The system will be limited to gain power when driving uphill because engine torque is restricted.

- When driving the vehicle with the automatic transmission gear shift lever in manual mode.

The system will be limited according to the shift location.

COMFORT mode

COMFORT mode is a normal drive mode that provides smooth driving and comfortable riding.

- When COMFORT mode is selected by rotating the DRIVE MODE selection knob, the COMFORT indicator will illuminate.

SPORT/SPORT+ (if equipped)

SPORT/SPORT+ mode manages the driving dynamics by automatically adjusting the steering

effort, and the engine and transmission control logic for enhanced driver performance.

- When SPORT/SPORT+ mode is selected by rotating the DRIVE MODE selection knob, the SPORT indicator will illuminate.
- Whenever the engine is restarted, the drive mode will revert back to COMFORT mode. If SPORT/SPORT+ mode is desired, re-select SPORT/SPORT+ mode.

- When SPORT/SPORT+ mode is activated:

- The engine rpm will tend to remain raised over a certain length of time even after releasing the accelerator

- Upshifts are delayed when accelerating

i Information

In SPORT/SPORT+ mode, the fuel efficiency may decrease.

CUSTOM mode (if equipped)

In CUSTOM mode, the driver can select separate modes and combine them on the Infotainment system screen.

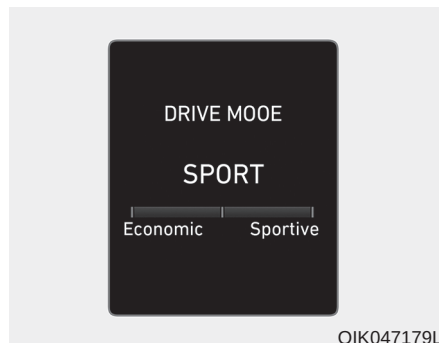
- Engine/Transmission: ECO/COMFORT/SPORT
- Steering wheel: COMFORT/SPORT
- Suspension: COMFORT/SPORT

For more details, refer to the separately supplied manual with your vehicle.

- When CUSTOM mode is selected by rotating the DRIVE MODE selection knob, the CUSTOM mode indicator will illuminate.

Smart shift on trip computer

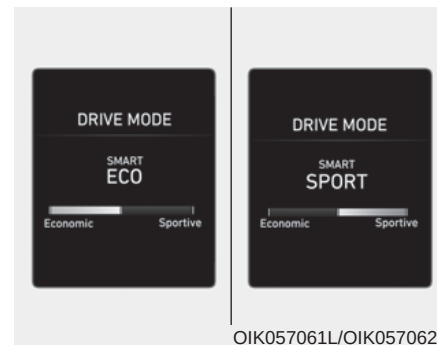
Select the Trip Computer mode (🚗) on the instrument cluster LCD display and move to the smart shift screen. Then, the driver can see the drive mode selected and the drive mode which is automatically switched by the SMART mode.



OIK047179L

The drive mode selected by the driver (1) and the driving style gauge (2) showing the driver's driving style are displayed on the screen.

Driver's style gauge in SMART mode



OIK057061L/OIK057062L

With the standard driving style in the centre, the left side of the gauge is 'Economic' and right side is 'Sportive' style.

When the left side of the driver's style gauge is filled up and after a certain time passes, the SMART ECO mode is activated automatically. When the right side of the gauge is filled up and sporty driving condition is detected, the SMART SPORT mode is activated.

To maintain the SMART ECO mode for fuel efficiency, drive with the left side of the gauge filled up.

FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST (FCA) SYSTEM

- SENSOR FUSION TYPE (FRONT RADAR + FRONT CAMERA) (IF EQUIPPED)

The Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system is designed to help detect and monitor the vehicle ahead or detect a pedestrian or cyclist in the roadway using radar signals and camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system:

- **This system is only a supplemental system and it is not intended to, nor does it replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range and objects detectable by the sensors are limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.**
- **NEVER drive too fast in accordance with the road conditions or when cornering.**
- **Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. FCA does not stop the vehicle completely and is not a collision avoidance system.**

System setting and activation

System setting

- The driver can activate the FCA by placing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position and by selecting:

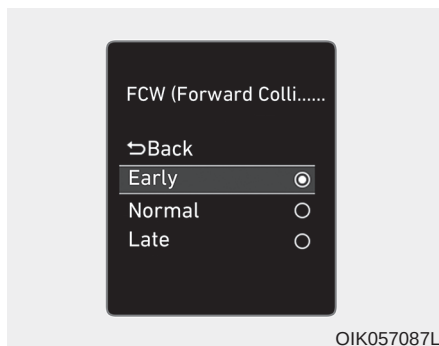
'User Settings → Driver assistance → FCA (Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist)'

The FCA deactivates, when the driver cancels the system setting.



The warning light illuminates on the LCD display, when you cancel the FCA system. The driver can monitor the FCA ON/OFF status on the LCD display. Also, the warning light illuminates when the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is turned off. If the warning light remains ON when the FCA is activated, we recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

- The driver can select the initial warning activation time on the LCD display.



Go to the 'User Settings → Driver assistance → FCW (Forward Collision Warning) → Early/Normal/Late'.

The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning includes the following:

- Early:

When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated earlier than normal. This setting maximises the amount of distance between the vehicle or pedestrian ahead before the initial warning occurs.

Even though, 'Early' is selected if the front vehicle suddenly stops the initial warning activation time may not seem fast.

If you feel the warning activates too early, set the Forward Collision Warning to 'Normal'.

- Normal:

When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated normally. This setting allows for a nominal amount of distance between the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead before the initial warning occurs.

- Late:

When this condition is selected, the initial Forward Collision Warning is activated later than normal. This setting reduces the amount of distance between the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead before the initial warning occurs.

Select 'Late' when traffic is light and when driving speed is slow.

Prerequisite for activation

The FCA gets ready to be activated, when the FCA is selected on the LCD display, and when the following prerequisites are satisfied.

- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is on.
- Vehicle speed is over 10 km/h. (The FCA is only activated within a certain speed range.)
- The system detects a vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front, which may collide with your vehicle. (The FCA may not be activated or may sound a warning alarm in accordance with the driving situation or vehicle condition.)

WARNING

- Completely stop the vehicle in a safe location before operating the switch on the steering wheel to activate/ deactivate the FCA system.
- The FCA automatically activates upon placing the Engine Start/Stop button to the ON position. The driver can deactivate the FCA by canceling the system setting on the LCD display.
- The FCA automatically deactivates upon canceling the ESC (Electronic Stability Control). When the ESC is cancelled, the FCA cannot be activated on the LCD display. The FCA warning light will illuminate which is normal.

FCA warning message and system control

The FCA produces warning messages and warning alarms in accordance with the collision risk levels, such as abrupt stopping of the vehicle in front, insufficient braking distance, or pedestrian, cyclist detection. Also, it controls the brakes in accordance with the collision risk levels.

The driver can select the initial warning activation time in the User Settings in the LCD display. The options for the initial Forward Collision Warning include Early, Normal or Late initial warning time.

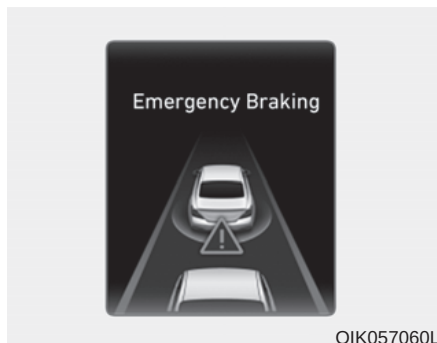
Collision Warning (First warning)



This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime. Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- Your vehicle speed may decelerate moderately.
- The FCA system limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision.

Emergency braking (Second warning)



This warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Additionally, some vehicle system intervention occurs by the engine management system to help decelerate the vehicle.

- The FCA system limitedly controls the brakes to preemptively mitigate impact in a collision. The brake control is maximised just before a collision.

Brake operation

- In an urgent situation, the braking system enters into the ready status for prompt reaction against the driver's depressing of the brake pedal.
- The FCA provides additional braking power for optimum braking performance, when the driver depresses the brake pedal.
- The braking control is automatically deactivated, when the driver sharply depresses the accelerator pedal, or when the driver abruptly operates the steering wheel.
- The FCA brake control is automatically cancelled, when risk factors disappear.

CAUTION

The driver should always use extreme caution when operating the vehicle, whether or not there is a warning message or alarm from the FCA system.

WARNING

The braking control cannot completely stop the vehicle nor avoid all collisions. The driver should hold the responsibility to safely drive and control the vehicle.

WARNING

The FCA system logic operates within certain parameters, such as the distance from the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead, the speed of the vehicle ahead, and the driver's vehicle speed. Certain conditions such as inclement weather and road conditions may affect the operation of the FCA system.

WARNING

Never deliberately drive dangerously to activate the system.

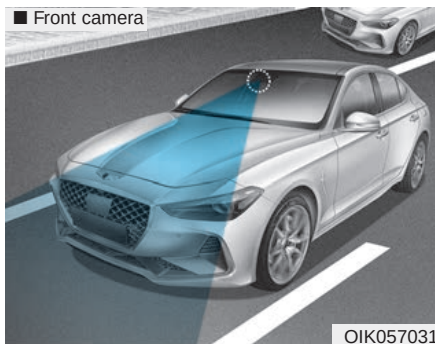
FCA sensor

■ Front radar



OIK059036

■ Front camera



OIK057031

In order for the FCA system to operate properly, always make sure the sensor cover or sensor is clean and free of dirt, snow, and debris.

Dirt, snow, or foreign substances on the lens may adversely affect the sensing performance of the sensor.

NOTICE

- Do not apply licence plate molding or foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.
- Always keep the radar sensor and cover clean and free of dirt and debris.
- Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.
- Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the FCA system may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the FCA system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by authorised Genesis dealer.
- Use only Genesis parts to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.

NOTICE

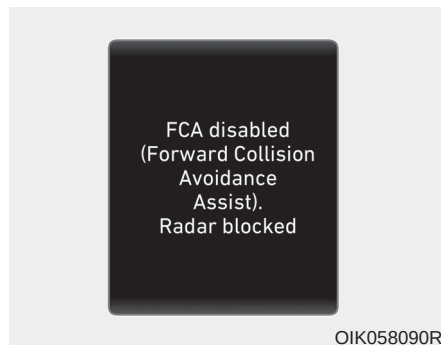
- **NEVER** install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, nor tint the front windscreen.
- **NEVER** locate any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflection may cause a malfunction of the system.
- Pay extreme caution to keep the camera out of water.
- **NEVER** disassemble the camera assembly, nor apply any impact on the camera assembly.
- Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset the system warning sounds.

i Information

We recommend that you have the system checked by an authorised Genesis dealer when:

- The windscreen glass is replaced.
- The radar sensor or cover gets damaged or replaced.

Warning message and warning light



FCA disabled (Forward Collision Avoidance Assist). Radar blocked

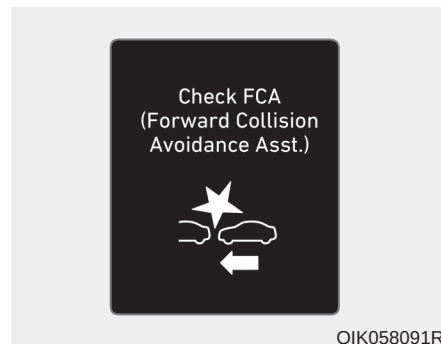
When the sensor cover is covered with dirt, snow, or debris, the FCA system operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display.

Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor cover before operating the FCA system.

The system will operate normally when such dirt, snow or debris is removed.

The FCA may not properly operate in an area (e.g. open terrain), where any substances are not detected after turning ON the engine.

System malfunction



Check FCA (Forward Collision Avoidance Asst.)

- When the FCA is not working properly, the FCA warning light (🚗💡) will illuminate and the warning message will appear for a few seconds. After the message disappears, the master warning light (⚠️) will illuminate. In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- The FCA warning message may appear along with the illumination of the ESC (Electronic Stability Control) warning light.

⚠️ WARNING

- The FCA is only a supplemental system for the driver's convenience. The driver should hold the responsibility to control the vehicle operation. Do not solely depend on the FCA system. Rather, maintain a safe braking distance, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed.

- In certain instances and under certain driving conditions, the FCA system may activate unintentionally. This initial warning message appears on the LCD display with a warning chime.

Also, in certain instances the front radar sensor or camera recognition system may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead. The FCA system may not activate and the warning message will not be displayed.

- Even if there is any problem with the brake control function of the FCA system, the vehicle's basic braking performance will operate normally. However, brake control function for avoiding collision will not activate.
- If the vehicle in front stops suddenly, you may have less control of the brake system. Therefore, always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The FCA system may activate during braking and the vehicle may stop suddenly shifting loose objects toward the passengers. Always keep loose objects secured.
- The FCA system may not activate if the driver applies the brake pedal to avoid a collision.

- The brake control may not work, possibly causing a collision, if a vehicle in front abruptly stops. Always pay extreme caution.
- Occupants may get injured, if the vehicle abruptly stops by the activated FCA system. Pay extreme caution.

WARNING

- The FCA system operates only to detect vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front of the vehicle.
- The FCA system may not operate when the cyclist is crossing the vehicle's path.
- The FCA system does not operate when the vehicle is in reverse.

- The FCA system is not designed to detect other objects on the road such as animals.
- The FCA system does not detect vehicles in the opposite lane.
- The FCA system does not detect cross traffic vehicles that are approaching.
- The FCA system cannot detect the driver approaching the side view of a parked vehicle (for example on a dead end street).

In these cases, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce the driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.

Limitations of the system

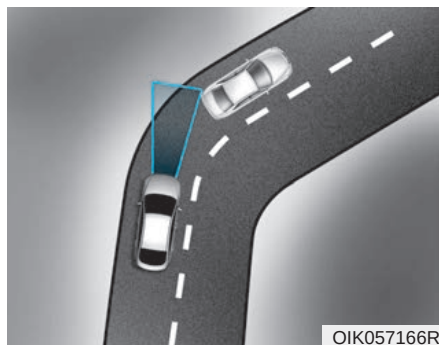
The Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system is designed to monitor the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead on the roadway using radar signals and camera recognition to warn the driver that a collision is imminent, and if necessary, apply emergency braking.

In certain situations, the radar sensor or the camera may not be able to detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead. In these cases, the FCA system may not operate normally. The driver must pay careful attention in the following situations where the FCA operation may be limited.

Detecting vehicles

The sensor may be limited when:

- The radar sensor or camera is covered with a foreign object or debris
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or stuck piece of foreign matter (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- Inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow obscures the field of view of the radar sensor or camera
- There is interference by electromagnetic waves
- There is severe irregular reflection from the radar sensor
- The radar/camera sensor recognition is limited
- The vehicle in front is too small to be detected (for example a motorcycle or a bicycle, etc.)
- The vehicle in front is an oversize vehicle or trailer that is too large to be detected by the camera recognition system (for example a tractor trailer, etc.)
- The driver's field of view is not well illuminated (either too dark or too much reflection or too much back-light that obscures the field of view)
- The vehicle in front does not have their rear lights properly turned ON.
- The outside brightness changes suddenly, for example when entering or exiting a tunnel
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare
- The windscreen glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed
- The vehicle in front is driving erratically
- The vehicle is on unpaved or uneven rough surfaces, or road with sudden gradient changes.
- The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- The vehicle drives inside a building, such as a basement car park
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations when driving
- The sensor recognition changes suddenly when passing over a speed bump
- The vehicle in front is moving vertically to the driving direction
- The vehicle in front is stopped vertically
- The vehicle in front is driving towards your vehicle or reversing
- You are on a roundabout and the vehicle in front circles



- Driving on a curve

The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist system may be limited when driving on a curved road.

The front camera or radar sensor recognition system may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist travelling in front on a curved road. This may result in no alarm and braking when necessary.

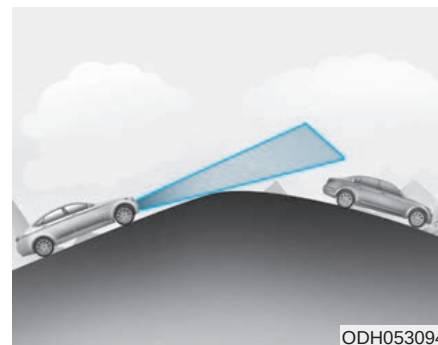
Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist system may recognize a vehicle or pedestrian or cyclist in the next lane or outside the lane when driving on a curved road.

If this occurs, the system may unnecessarily alarm the driver and apply the brake.

Always pay attention to road and driving conditions, whilst driving.



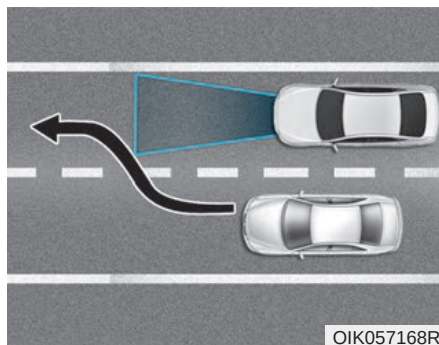
- Driving on a slope

The performance of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist system may be decreased whilst driving upward or downward on a slope. The front camera or front radar sensor recognition may not detect the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front.

This may result in unnecessary alarm and braking or no alarm and braking when necessary.

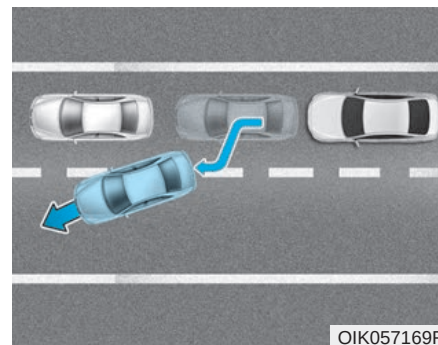
When the system suddenly recognizes the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist in front whilst passing over a slope, you may experience sharp deceleration.

Always keep your eyes forward whilst driving upward or downward on a slope, and, if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

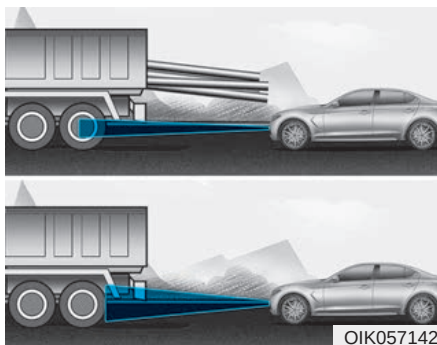


- Changing lanes

When a vehicle changes lanes in front of you, the FCA system may not immediately detect the vehicle, especially if the vehicle changes lanes abruptly. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



When driving in stop-and-go traffic, and a stopped vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, the FCA system may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



- Detecting the vehicle in front of you
If the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance, additional special attention is required. The FCA system may not be able to detect the cargo extending from the vehicle. In these instances, you must maintain a safe braking distance from the rearmost object, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain distance.

Detecting pedestrians or cyclists

The sensor may be limited when:

- The pedestrian or cyclist is not fully detected by the camera recognition system, for example, if the pedestrian is leaning over or is not fully walking upright
- The pedestrian or cyclist is moving very quickly or appears abruptly in the camera detection area
- The pedestrian or cyclist is wearing clothing that easily blends into the background, making it difficult to be detected by the camera recognition system
- The outside lighting is too bright (e.g. when driving in bright sunlight or in sun glare) or too dark (e.g. when driving on a dark rural road at night)
- It is difficult to detect and distinguish the pedestrian or cyclist from other objects in the surroundings, for example, when there is a group of pedestrians or a large crowd
- There is an item similar to a person's body structure
- The pedestrian or cyclist is small
- The pedestrian has impaired mobility
- The sensor recognition is limited
- The radar sensor or camera is covered with a foreign object or debris
- The camera lens is contaminated due to tinted, filmed or coated windscreen, damaged glass, or stuck piece of foreign matter (sticker, bug, etc.) on the glass
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel
- Inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow obscures the field of view of the radar sensor or camera
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare
- The windscreen glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed

- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving
- The sensor recognition changes suddenly when passing over a speed bump
- You are on a roundabout
- The cyclist is crossing the vehicle's path

WARNING

- Do not use the Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system when towing a vehicle. Application of the FCA system when towing may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle or the towing vehicle.
- Use extreme caution when the vehicle in front of you has cargo that extends rearward from the cab, or when the vehicle in front of you has higher ground clearance.

- **Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist** system may operate when an object, which has similar shape or characteristic to a vehicle or pedestrian or cyclist, is detected.
- The FCA system is designed to detect and monitor the vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist ahead in the roadway through radar signals and camera recognition. It is not designed to detect bicycles, motorcycles, or smaller wheeled objects such as luggage bags, shopping carts, or strollers.
- Never try to test the operation of the FCA system. Doing so may cause severe injury or death.
- If the front bumper, front glass, radar or camera have been replaced or repaired, we recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Information

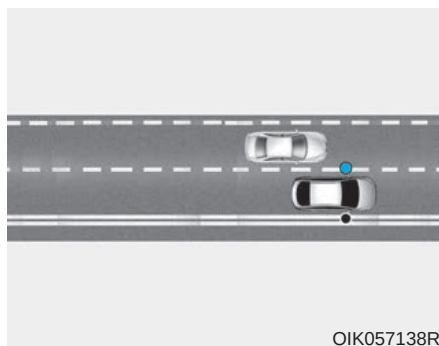
In some instances, the FCA system may be cancelled when subjected to electromagnetic interference.

BLIND-SPOT COLLISION WARNING (BCW) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system uses radar sensors in the rear bumper to monitor and warn the driver of an approaching vehicle in the driver's blind spot area.

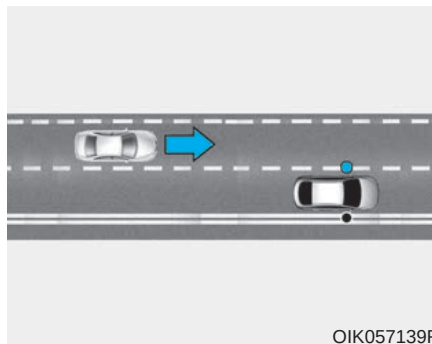
The system monitors the rear area of the vehicle and provides information to the driver with an audible alert and an indicator on the outside rearview mirrors.

- (1) Blind-Spot Collision Warning :
Blind spot area



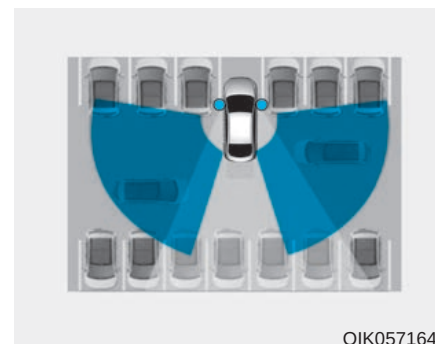
The BCW range varies relative to vehicle speed. Note that if your vehicle is travelling much faster than the vehicles around you, the warning will not occur.

- (2) Blind-Spot Collision Warning :
Closing at high speed



The BCW-Closing at high speed feature will alert you when a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a high rate of speed. If the driver activates the turn signal when the system detects an oncoming vehicle, the system sounds an audible alert. Distance from the approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

- (3) RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)



The RCCW feature monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse. The feature will operate when the vehicle is moving in reverse below about 10 km/h. If oncoming cross traffic is detected a warning chime will sound.

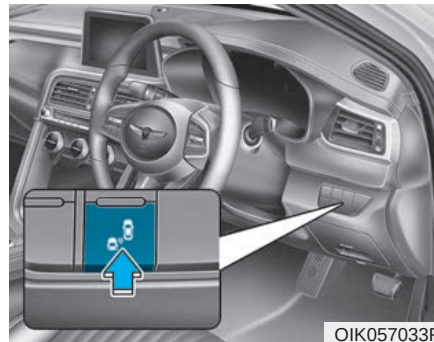
Distance from the approaching vehicle can be seen differently according to the relative speed.

WARNING

- Always be aware of road conditions when driving and be alert for unexpected situations even though the Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system is operating.
- The Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system is not a substitute for proper and safe driving. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or reversing the vehicle. The Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.

BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)

Operating conditions



To operate:

Press the BCW switch with the Engine Start/Stop button in the START position.

The indicator on the BCW switch will illuminate. When the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h, the system will be activated.

To cancel:

Press the BCW switch again. The indicator on the switch will go off.

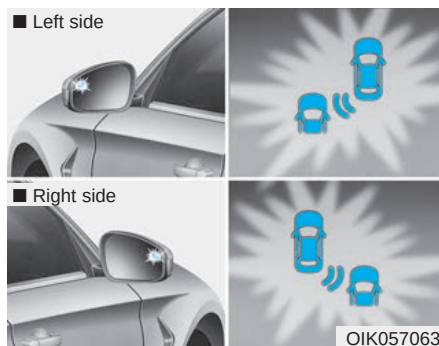
When the system is not used, turn the system off by turning off the switch.

Information

- If the vehicle is turned off then on again, the BCW system returns to the previous state.
- When the system is turned on, the warning light will illuminate for 3 seconds on the outside rearview mirror.

The function will activate when:

1. The function is on.
2. The vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h.
3. An oncoming vehicle is detected in the blind spot area.



First stage alert

If a vehicle is detected within the boundary of the system, a yellow warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror.

Once the detected vehicle is no longer within the blind spot area, the warning will turn off depending on the driving conditions of the vehicle.



[A] : Warning sound

Second stage alert

A warning chime to alert the driver will activate when:

1. A vehicle has been detected in the blind spot area by the radar system (the warning light will illuminate on the outside rearview mirror and/or the head up display (if equipped) (i.e, in the first stage alert)) AND
2. The turn signal is applied (on the same side as where the vehicle is being detected).

When this alert is activated, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror and/or the head up display (if equipped) will also blink.

If you turn off the turn signal indicator, the second stage alert (the warning chime and the blinking warning light) will be deactivated.

- The warning chime may be deactivated.

- To deactivate the warning chime:

Go to the 'User Settings → Driver assistance and deselect Sound for BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)' on the LCD display.

- To activate the warning chime:

Go to the 'User Settings → Driver assistance and select Sound for BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)' on the LCD display.

Information

The warning chime function helps alert the driver. Deactivate this function only when it is necessary.

Refer to "User Settings Mode" in chapter 3 for more details.

RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning) (if equipped)

The Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning function monitors approaching cross traffic from the left and right side of the vehicle when your vehicle is in reverse.

Operating conditions

To operate:

Go to the 'User Settings → Driver assistance and select Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning' on the LCD display.

The system will turn on and standby to activate. If you deactivate this function in the cluster, the system will stop.

Refer to "User Settings Mode" in chapter 3 for more details.

- If the vehicle is turned off and on again, the RCCW system will return to the previous state right before the vehicle was turned off. Turn the RCCW system off when not in use.
- The system will activate when vehicle speed is below 10 km/h and with the shift lever in R (Reverse).
- The Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning detecting range is approximately 0.5 m ~ 20 m in the direction of both lateral sides of the vehicle. An approaching vehicle will be detected if their vehicle speed is within 4 km/h ~ 36 km/h.

Note that the detecting range may vary under certain conditions. As always, use caution and pay close attention to your surroundings when reversing your vehicle.

Warning type



If the vehicle detected by the sensors approaches your vehicle, the warning chime will sound, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will blink and a message will appear on the LCD display.

i Information

- The warning chime will turn off when:
 - The detected vehicle moves out of the sensing area or
 - when the vehicle is right behind your vehicle or
 - when the vehicle is not approaching your vehicle or
 - when the other vehicle slows down.
- The system may not operate properly due to other factors or circumstances. Always pay attention to your surroundings.
- If the sensing area near the rear bumper is blocked by either a wall or barrier or by a parked vehicle, the system sensing area may be reduced.

⚠ WARNING

- When BCW is activated, the warning light on the outside rearview mirror will illuminate whenever a vehicle is detected at the rear side by the system.

To avoid accidents, do not focus only on the warning light and neglect to observe the area surrounding the vehicle.
- Drive safely even though the vehicle is equipped with a Blind-Spot Collision Warning (BCW) system and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW). Do not solely rely on the system but check your surrounding before changing lanes or backing the vehicle up.

The system may not alert the driver in some conditions so always check your surroundings whilst driving.

- The Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system and Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) are not a substitute for proper and safe driving practices. Always drive safely and use caution when changing lanes or reversing your vehicle. The Blind-spot Collision Warning (BCW) system may not detect every object alongside the vehicle.

NOTICE

- The system may not work properly when the bumper has been damaged, or if the rear bumper has been replaced or repaired.
- The sensing range differs somewhat according to the width of the road. When the road is narrow, the system may detect other vehicles in the second next lane OR when the road is wide, the system may not detect other vehicles in the next lane.
- The system may turn off due to strong electromagnetic waves.

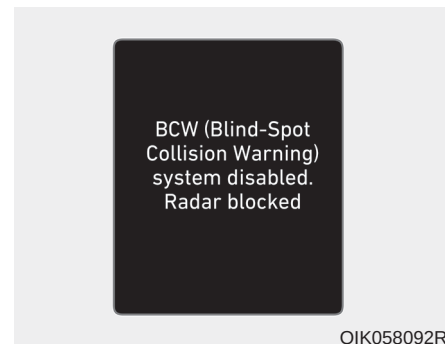
Detecting sensor



The sensors are located inside the rear bumper.

Always keep the rear bumper clean for proper operation of the system.

Warning message



BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning) system disabled.

Radar blocked

- This warning message may appear when :
 - One or both of the sensors on the rear bumper are covered by dirt or snow or a foreign object.
 - Driving in rural areas where the BCW sensor does not detect another vehicle for an extended period of time.
 - When there is inclement weather such as heavy snow or rain.

- A trailer or carrier is installed. To use the BCW system, remove the trailer or carrier from your vehicle.

If any of these conditions occur, the light on the BCW switch and the system will turn off automatically.

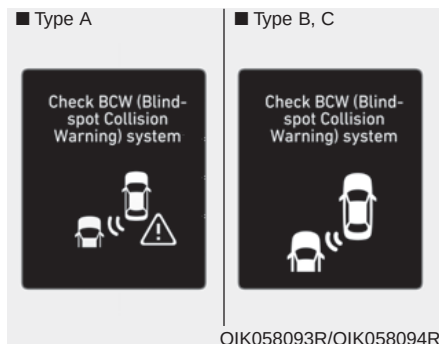
When the BCW cancelled warning message is displayed in the cluster, check to make sure that the rear bumper is free from any dirt or snow in the areas around the sensor. Remove any dirt, snow, or foreign material that could interfere with the radar sensors.

After any dirt or debris is removed, the BCW system should operate normally after about 10 minutes of driving the vehicle.

If the system still does not operate normally have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

i Information

Turn off the system by pressing the BCW switch and deselecting Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning (RCCW) from the User Settings mode on the instrument cluster, when using a trailer or carrier behind your vehicle.



Check BCW (Blind-spot Collision Warning) system

If there is a problem with the BCW system, a warning message will appear and the light on the switch will turn off. The system will turn off automatically. We recommend that you have your vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Limitations of the system

The driver must be cautious in the following situations, because the system may not detect other vehicles or objects in certain circumstances.

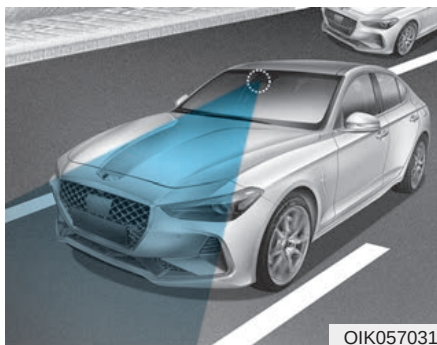
- When a trailer or carrier is installed.
- The vehicle drives in inclement weather such as heavy rain or snow.
- The sensor is polluted with rain, snow, mud, etc.
- The rear bumper where the sensor is located is covered with a foreign object such as a bumper sticker, a bumper guard, a bike rack, etc.
- The rear bumper is damaged, or the sensor is out of the original default position.
- The vehicle height gets lower or higher due to heavy loading in the luggage compartment, abnormal tyre pressure, etc.
- When the temperature near the rear bumper area is high or low.

- When the sensors are blocked by other vehicles, walls or parking-lot pillars.
- The vehicle drives on a curved road or through a tollgate.
- The vehicle is driven near areas containing metal substances such as a construction zone, railroad, etc.
- There is a fixed object near the vehicle, such as a guardrail, person, animal, etc.
- When driving down or up a steep road where the height of the lane is different.
- When driving through a narrow road with many trees or bushes.
- When driving on wet surfaces.
- When driving through a large area with few vehicles or structures around, such as a desert, rural area, etc.
- A large vehicle is near such as a bus or truck.
- When other vehicles are close to your vehicle.
- When the other vehicle approaches very close.
- When the detected vehicle also moves back, as your vehicle drives back.
- When changing lanes.
- If the vehicle has started at the same time as the vehicle next to you and has accelerated.
- When the other vehicle passes at a very fast speed.
- When the vehicle in the next lane moves two lanes away from you OR when the vehicle two lanes away moves to the next lane to you.
- The vehicle is turning left or right at a crossroads.
- A motorcycle or bicycle is near.
- A flat trailer is near.
- If there are small objects in the detecting area such as a shopping cart, a baby stroller or pedestrian.
- If there is a low height vehicle such as a sports car.

The BCW indicator on the outside rearview mirror may not illuminate properly when:

- The outside rearview mirror housing is damaged.
- The mirror is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is covered with dirt, snow, or debris.
- The window is tinted.

LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system with a camera at the front windscreen, helps detect lane markers and road boundary on the road, and assists the driver's steering to help keep the vehicle between lanes.

When the system detects the vehicle straying from its lane, (or road) it alerts the driver with a visual and steering wheel vibration warning, whilst applying a counter-steering torque, trying to prevent the vehicle from moving out of its lane (or road).

WARNING

The Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function. It is the responsibility of the driver to always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle.

WARNING

Take the following precautions when using the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system:

- Do not steer the steering wheel suddenly when the steering wheel is being assisted by the system.
- LKA system helps to prevent the driver from moving out of the lane (or road) unintentionally by assisting the driver's steering. However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always pay attention on the steering wheel to stay in the lane.

- The operation of the LKA system can be cancelled or not work properly according to road condition and surroundings. Always be cautious when driving.
- Do not disassemble the LKA system camera temporarily to tint the window or attach any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble the camera and assemble it again, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked for calibration.
- When you replace the windscreen glass, LKA system camera or related parts of the steering wheel, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked for calibration.

- The system detects lane markers and road boundary and controls the steering wheel by a front view camera, therefore, if the lane markers (or road boundary) are hard to detect, the system may not work properly.

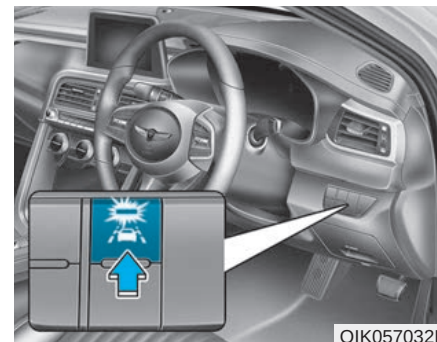
Please refer to "Limitations of the system".

- Do not remove or damage the related parts of LKA system.
- You may not hear a warning sound of LKA system if the audio system volume is excessive.
- Do not place objects on the instrument panel that reflect light such as mirrors, white paper, etc. The system may malfunction if the sunlight is reflected.
- Always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst the LKA system is activated. If you continue to drive with your hands off the steering wheel after the "Keep hands on steering wheel" warning message appears, the system will turn off automatically.

However, if the driver has their hands on the steering wheel again, the system will start controlling the steering wheel.

- The steering wheel is not continuously controlled so if the vehicle speed is at a higher rate when leaving a lane (or road boundary) the vehicle may not be controlled by the system. The driver must always follow the speed limit when using the system.
- If you attach objects to the steering wheel, the system may not assist steering or the hands off alarm may not work properly.

LKA operation



OIK057032R

To activate/deactivate the LKA system:

The LKA automatically activates when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON or START position. The indicator on the LKA switch will illuminate and the indicator on the cluster display will initially illuminate white. This indicates the LKA is on the instrument READY but NOT ENABLED state.

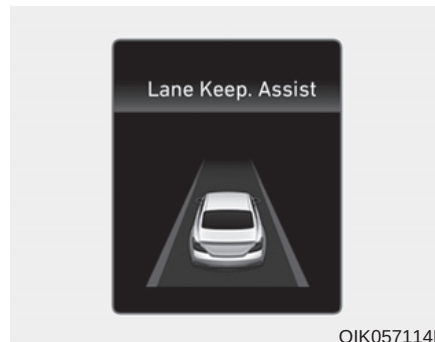
The driver can deactivate the LKA by pushing LKA switch located on the instrument panel on the lower right hand side of driver or selecting LDW from the User Settings mode on the LCD display.



The colour of indicator will change depending on the condition of LKA system.

- White : Sensor does not detect the lane marker (or road boundary) or vehicle speed is under 60 km/h.
- Green : Sensor detects the lane marker (or road boundary) and the system is able to control vehicle steering.

LKA activation



OIK057114L

- To see the LKA system screen on the LCD display on the cluster, select Assist mode (LKA). For more details, refer to "LCD Display Modes" in chapter 3.
- After LKA is activated, if a lane marker (or road boundary) is detected, vehicle speed is over 60 km/h and all the activation conditions are satisfied, a green steering wheel indicator will illuminate and the LKA system indicator light will change from white to green. This indicates that the LKA system is in the ENABLED state and the steering wheel will be able to be controlled.

⚠ WARNING

The Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is a system to prevent the driver from leaving the lane (or road boundary). However, the driver should not solely rely on the system but always check the road conditions when driving.

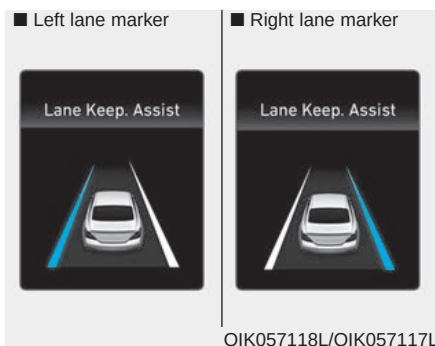
■ Lane marker undetected ■ Lane marker detected



OIK057114L/OIK057116L

- If vehicle speed is over 60 km/h and the system detects the lane marker, the colour changes from gray to white.

- If your vehicle speed exceeds 60 km/h and the LKA system switch is ON, the system is enabled. If your vehicle departs from the projected lane (or road boundary) in front of you, the LKA system operates as follows:



A visual warning appears on the instrument cluster LCD display. Either the left lane marker (or road boundary) or the right lane marker (or road boundary) on the instrument cluster LCD display will blink depending on which direction the vehicle is veering. Also, the steering wheel will vibrate (if equipped).

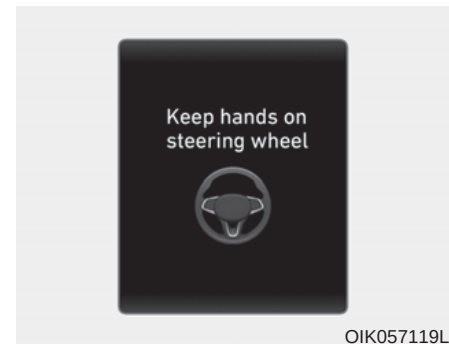
If the steering wheel () appears on the cluster, the system will control the vehicle's steering to prevent the vehicle from crossing the lane marker (or road boundary).

Information

If all the conditions to activate LKA are not satisfied, the system will convert to LDW(Lane Departure Warning) and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane marker (or road boundary).

Warning light and message

Keep hands on steering wheel



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel for several seconds whilst the LKA system is activated, the system will warn the driver.

Information

If the steering wheel is held very lightly the message may still appear because the LKA system may not recognise that the driver has their hands on the wheel.

WARNING

The warning message may appear late according to road conditions. Therefore, always have your hands on the steering wheel whilst driving.

*Driver's hands not detected.
LKA system is disabled
temporarily*



If the driver still does not have their hands on the steering wheel after the message "Keep hands on steering wheel", the system will not control the steering wheel and warn the driver only when the driver crosses the lane marker (or road boundary).

However, if the driver replaces their hands on the steering wheel again, the system will start controlling the steering wheel.

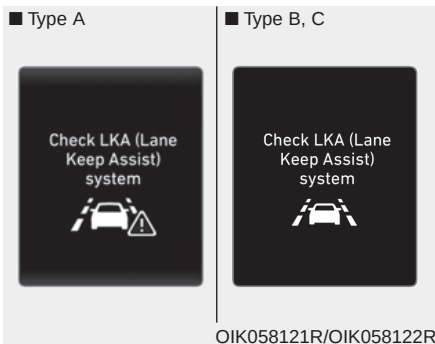
WARNING

- The driver is responsible for accurate steering.
- Turn off the system and drive the vehicle in following situations.
 - In bad weather
 - In poor road condition
 - When the steering wheel needs to be controlled by the driver frequently.
 - When towing a vehicle or trailer.

Information

- Even though the steering is assisted by the system, the driver may control the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel may feel heavier when the steering wheel is assisted by the system than when it is not.

Check LKA (Lane Keeping Assist) system



If there is a problem with the system a message will appear for a few seconds. If the problem continues the LKA system failure indicator will illuminate.

LKA system failure indicator



The LKA system failure indicator (yellow) will illuminate if the LKA system is not working properly. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

When there is a problem with the system do one of the following:

- Turn the system on after turning the engine off and on again.
- Check if the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON or START position.
- Check if the system is affected by the weather. (e.g. fog, heavy rain, etc.)
- Check if there is foreign matter on the camera lens.

If the problem is not solved, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LKA system will not be in the ENABLED state and/or the steering wheel will not be assisted when:

- The turn signal is turned on before changing a lane. If you change lanes without the turn signal on, the steering wheel might be controlled.
- The vehicle is not driven in the middle of the lane when the system is turned on or right after changing a lane.
- ESC (Electronic Stability Control) or VSM (Vehicle Stability Management) is activated.
- The vehicle is driven on a sharp curve.
- Vehicle speed is below 55 km/h and over 200 km/h.
- The vehicle makes sharp lane (or road boundary) changes.
- The vehicle brakes suddenly.
- The lane (or road) is very wide or narrow.
- There are more than two lane markers on the road. (e.g. construction area)
- The vehicle is driven on a steep incline.

- The steering wheel is turned suddenly.

Limitations of the system

The LKA system may operate prematurely even if the vehicle does not depart from the intended lane, OR, the LKA system may not assist your steering or warn you if the vehicle leaves the intended lane under the following circumstances:

When the lane and road conditions are poor

- It is difficult to distinguish the lane marker (or road boundary) from the road because the lane marker (or road boundary) is covered with dust or sand.
- It is difficult to distinguish the colour of the lane marker from the road.
- There are markings on the road surface that look like a lane marker that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- The lane marker (or road boundary) is indistinct or damaged.

- The lane marker is indistinct or damaged.
- The lane marker is merged or divided. (e.g. tollgate)
- The lane number increases or decreases or the lane marker are crossing complicatedly.
- There are more than two lane markers on the road in front of you.
- The lane marker is very thick or thin.
- The lane (or road boundary) is very wide or narrow.
- The lane marker (or road boundary) ahead is not visible due to rain, snow, water on the road, damaged or stained road surface, or other factors.
- The shadow is on the lane marker (or road boundary) by a median strip, trees, guardrail, noise barriers, etc.
- The lane markers are complicated or a structure substitutes for the lines such as a construction area.

- There are pedestrian crossing signs or other symbols on the road.
- The lane marker (or road boundary) in a tunnel is stained with oil, etc.
- The lane suddenly disappears such as at the intersection.

When external condition is intervened

- The brightness outside changes suddenly such as when entering or exiting a tunnel, or when passing under a bridge.
- The brightness outside is too low such as when the headlamps are not on at night or the vehicle is going through a tunnel.
- There is a boundary structure in the roadway such as a concrete barrier, guardrail and reflector post that is inadvertently being detected by the camera.
- When light coming from a street light or an oncoming vehicle is reflected on a wet road surface such as a puddle in the road.
- The field of view in front is obstructed by sun glare.

- Road surface is not even.
- There is not enough distance between you and the vehicle in front to be able to detect the lane line (or road boundary) or the vehicle ahead is driving on the lane line (or road boundary).
- Driving on a steep grade, over a hill, or when driving on a curved road.
- The adverse road conditions cause excessive vehicle vibrations whilst driving.
- The housing of the inside rear view mirror temperature is high due to direct sunlight, etc.

When front visibility is poor

- The windscreen or the camera lens is blocked with dirt or debris.
- The windscreen glass is fogged up; a clear view of the road is obstructed.
- When objects are placed on the instrument panel, etc.
- The sensor cannot detect the lane because of fog, heavy rain or snow.

LKA system function change

The driver can change LKA to Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system or vice versa from the User Settings Mode on the LCD display. Go to the 'User Settings → Driving Assist → Lane safety → Lane Keeping Assist/Lane Departure Warning(LDW)'.

LDW (Lane Departure Warning)

LDW system alerts the driver with a visual and steering wheel vibration warning when the system detects the vehicle departing the lane. The steering wheel will not be controlled. When the vehicle's front wheel contacts the inside edge of lane line, LKA alerts the driver with the lane departure warning.

FORWARD COLLISION-AVOIDANCE ASSIST - LANE-CHANGE ONCOMING FUNCTION (IF EQUIPPED WITH FCA)

The Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist-Lane-Change Oncoming function detects the oncoming vehicle with a front view camera at the front windscreen. And it assists the driver's steering to help avoid collision with an oncoming vehicle and keep the vehicle within the lanes, when the vehicle drives over the centreline.

WARNING

- This function is only a supplemental system. So, it does not replace the need for extreme care and attention of the driver. The sensing range of oncoming vehicles is limited. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.
- Always drive cautiously to prevent accidents from any unexpected or sudden situations. The function does not steer the vehicle completely and is not a collision avoidance system.

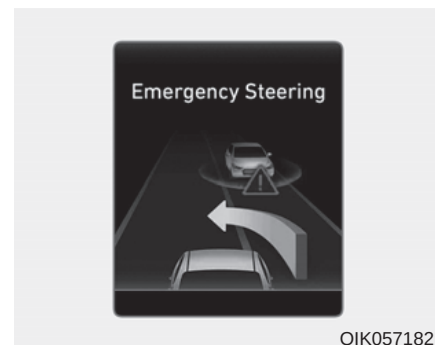
Function operation

Driver can activate or deactivate the function from the User Settings mode:

'User Settings → Driver assistance → FCA (Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist)'

For more details, refer to "LCD Display Modes" in chapter 3.

Warning message and function control



- With FCA in activation, the warning message "Emergency Steering" appears on the LCD display with an audible warning when:
 - The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h and the vehicle crosses the centreline when an oncoming vehicle approaches.
- Additionally, the system provides steering assistance to return the vehicle back into the lane.

WARNING

- The steering control cannot completely avoid collision with an oncoming vehicle. It is the responsibility of the driver to always be aware of the surroundings and steer the vehicle.
- The function is operated within certain conditions, depending on the distance and speed of the oncoming vehicle, the speed of your vehicle, etc. The function can be cancelled or not work properly according to the road conditions and surroundings. Always be cautious when driving.
- Never deliberately drive dangerously to activate the system.

Limitations of the system

- Refer to “Limitations of the System” of Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System’s in this chapter.
- Refer to “Detecting Vehicles” of Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist’s in this chapter.

DRIVER ATTENTION WARNING (DAW) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system displays the condition of the driver's fatigue level and inattentive driving practices.

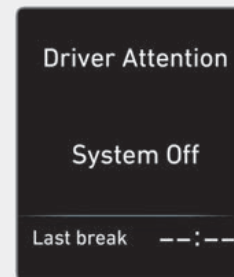
System setting and activation

System setting

- The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system is set to be in the OFF position, when your vehicle is first delivered to you from the factory.
- To turn ON the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system, turn on the engine, and then select 'User Settings → Driver assistance → DAW (Driver Attention Warning) → Off/Normal sensitivity/High sensitivity' on the LCD display.
- The driver can select the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system mode.
 - Off : The Driver Attention Warning (DAW) system is deactivated.
 - Normal sensitivity : The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system alerts the driver of their fatigue level or inattentive driving practices.
 - High sensitivity : The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system alerts the driver of their fatigue level or inattentive driving practices faster than Normal mode.
- The set-up of the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system previously selected will be maintained, as selected, when the engine is restarted.

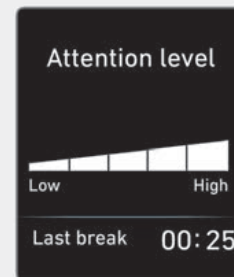
Display of the driver's attention level

■ System off

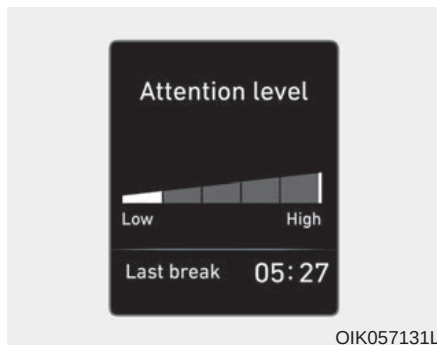


OIK057129L

■ Attentive driving



OIK057130L



OIK057131L

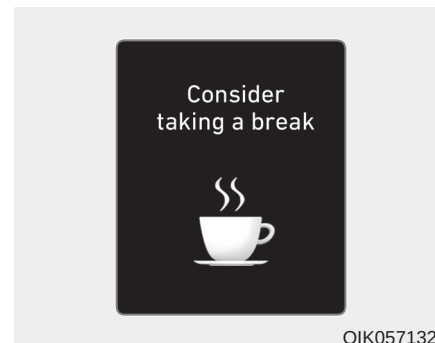
- The driver can monitor their driving conditions on the LCD display.

The DAW screen will appear when you select the Assist mode tab () on the LCD display if the system is activated.

For more details, refer to "LCD Display Modes" in chapter 3.

- The driver's attention level is displayed on the scale of 1 to 5. The lower the level is, the more inattentive the driver is.
- The level decreases when the driver does not take a break for a certain period of time.
- The level increases when the driver attentively drives for a certain period of time.
- When the driver turns on the system when driving, it displays 'Last Break time' and level.

Take a break



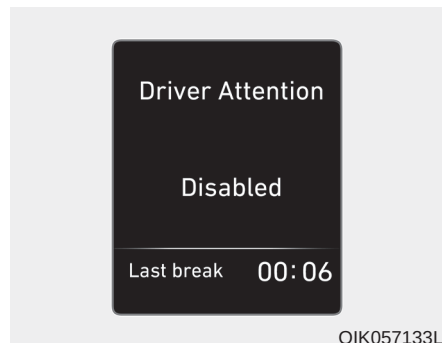
OIK057132L

- The "Consider taking a break" message appears on the LCD display and a warning sounds in order to suggest the driver to take a break, when the driver's attention level is below 1.
- The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system does not suggest the driver to take a break, when the total driving time is shorter than 10 minutes.

Resetting the system

- The last break time is set to 00:00 and the driver's attention level is set to 5 (very attentive) when the driver resets the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system.
- The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system resets the last break time to 00:00 and the driver's attention level to 5 in the following situations.
 - The engine is turned OFF.
 - The driver unfastens the seat belt and then opens the driver's door.
 - The vehicle is stopped for more than 10 minutes.
- The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system operates again, when the driver restarts driving.

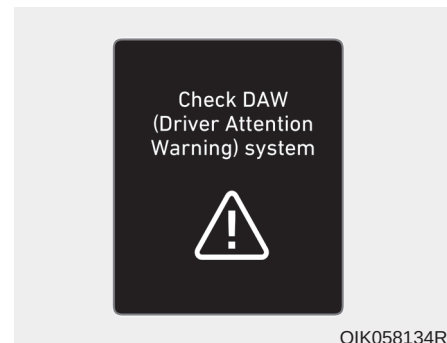
System standby



The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system enters the ready status and displays the 'Disabled' screen in the following situations.

- The camera does not detect the lane.
- Driving speed remains under 60 km/h or over 200 km/h.

System malfunction



Check DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system

When the "Check DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system" warning message appears, the system is not working properly. In this case, we recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

 WARNING

- The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring. Pay attention to the road conditions at all times.
- The system may suggest a break according to the driver's driving pattern or habits even if the driver doesn't feel fatigue.
- A driver, who feels fatigued, should take a break, even though there is no break suggestion by the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system.

NOTICE

The DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system utilises the camera sensor on the front windscreen for its operation. To keep the camera sensor in the best condition, you should observe the following:

- Do not disassemble the camera temporarily to tint the window or to attach any types of coatings and accessories. If you disassemble a camera and assemble it again, we recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked for calibration.
- NEVER install any accessories or stickers on the front windscreen, nor tint the front windscreen.
- NEVER locate any reflective objects (i.e. white paper, mirror) over the instrument panel. Any light reflection may cause a malfunction of the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system.

- Pay extreme caution to keep the camera sensor out of water.
- NEVER disassemble the camera assembly, nor apply any impact on the camera assembly.



CAUTION

The Driver Attention Alert system may not operate properly or operate with limited alerts in the following situations:

- The lane detection performance is limited. (For more information, refer to "Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system" in this chapter.)
- The vehicle is violently driven or is abruptly turned for obstacle avoidance (e.g. construction area, other vehicles, fallen objects, bumpy road).
- Forward drivability of the vehicle is severely undermined (possibly due to wide variation in tyre pressures, uneven tyre wear-out, toe-in/toe-out alignment).
- The vehicle drives on a winding road.
- The vehicle drives through a windy area.

- The vehicle drives on a bumpy road.

- The vehicle is controlled by the following driving assist systems:

- Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system
- Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) system
- Smart Cruise Control (SCC) system



CAUTION

Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset the DAW (Driver Attention Warning) system warning sounds.

MANUAL SPEED LIMIT ASSIST (MSLA)

Speed Limit Assist operation



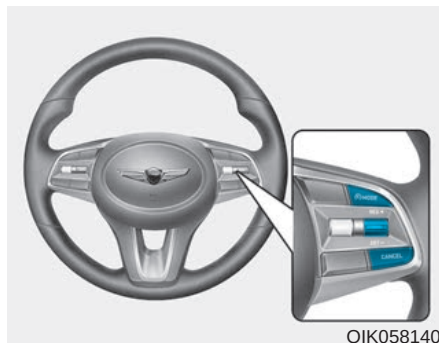
You can set the speed limit when you do not want to drive over a specific speed.

If you drive over the preset speed limit, the warning system operates (set speed limit will blink and chime will sound) until the vehicle speed returns within the speed limit.

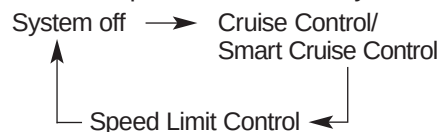
i Information

Whilst speed limit control is in operation, the cruise control system cannot be activated.

Speed limit control switch



MODE: Changes mode between cruise control system and speed limit control system.

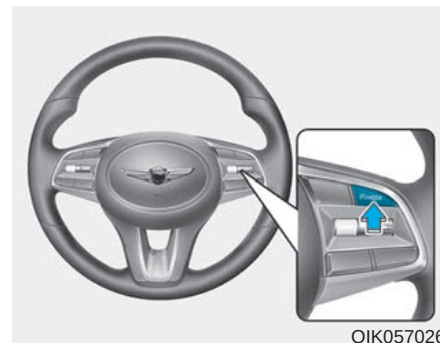


RES+: Resumes or increases speed limit control speed.

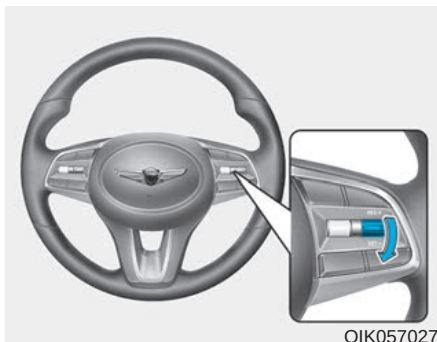
SET-: Sets or decreases speed limit control speed.

CANCEL: Cancels set speed limit.

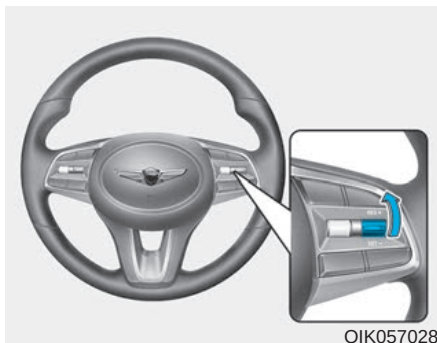
To set speed limit



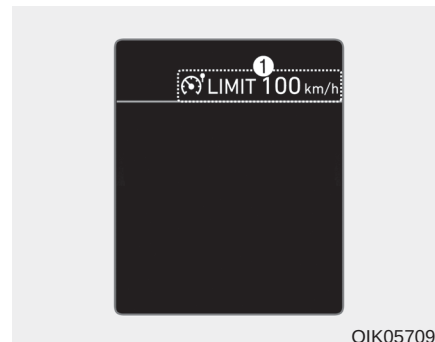
1. Press the **MODE** button to turn the system on. The speed limit indicator (**LIMIT**) in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



2. Push the toggle switch down (SET-).



3. • Push the toggle switch up (RES+) or down (SET-), and release it at the desired speed.
- Push the toggle switch up (RES+) or down (SET-) and hold it. The speed will increase or decrease by 5 km/h.

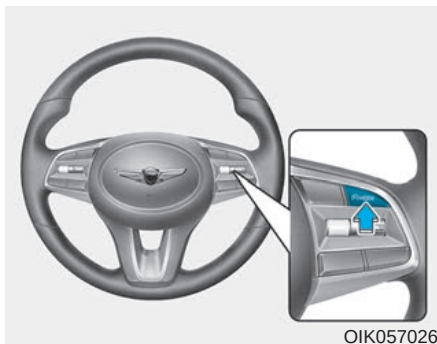


The set speed limit will display on the instrument cluster.

If you would like to drive over the pre-set speed limit when you depress the accelerator pedal less than approximately 50%, the vehicle speed will maintain within speed limit.

However if you depress the accelerator pedal more than approximately 70%, you can drive over the speed limit. Then the set speed limit will blink and chime will sound until you return the vehicle speed within the speed limit.

To turn off the speed limit control, do one of the following:



- Press the  MODE button.
Then, the speed limit indicator ( LIMIT) light will go off.
- If you press CANCEL button once, the set speed limit will cancel, but it will not turn the system off. If you wish to resume the speed limit, push the +RES or SET- toggle switch on your steering wheel to your desired speed.

CRUISE CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

Cruise Control operation



1. Cruise indicator
2. Set speed

The Cruise Control system allows you to drive at speeds above 30 km/h without depressing the accelerator pedal.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

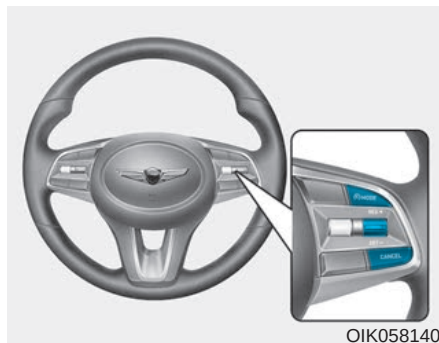
- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
- If the Cruise Control is left on, (cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated) the Cruise Control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the Cruise Control system off (cruise indicator light OFF) when the Cruise Control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Use the Cruise Control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.
- Do not use the Cruise Control when it may be unsafe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:
 - When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed

- When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads
- When driving on hilly or winding roads
- When driving in windy areas
- Do not use cruise control when towing a trailer.

Information

- During normal cruise control operation, when the SET switch is activated or reactivated after applying the brakes, the cruise control will activate after approximately 3 seconds. This delay is normal.
- Before activating the cruise control function, the system will check to verify that the brake switch is operating normally. Depress the brake pedal at least once after turning ON the ignition or starting the vehicle.

Cruise Control switch



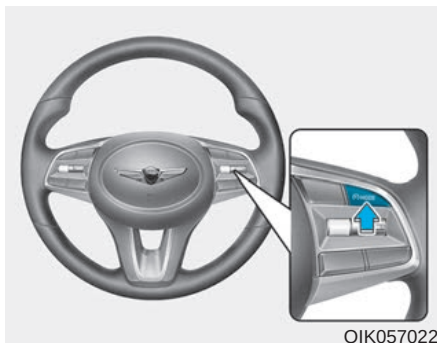
MODE: Changes mode between Cruise Control System and Speed Limit Control System.

RES+: Resumes or increases cruise control speed.

SET-: Sets or decreases cruise control speed.

CANCEL : Cancels cruise control operation.

Information

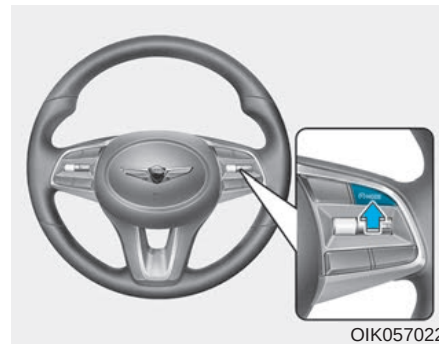


First, switch the mode to Cruise Control by pressing the **MODE button if equipped with the Speed Limit Control System.**

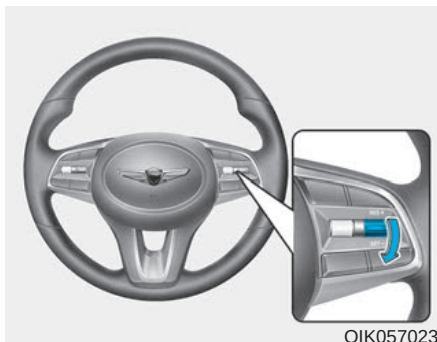
The mode changes, as below, whenever the **MODE button is pressed.**

System off → Cruise Control
Speed Limit Control ←

To set Cruise Control speed



1. Press the **MODE** button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The cruise indicator will illuminate.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed, which must be more than 30 km/h.



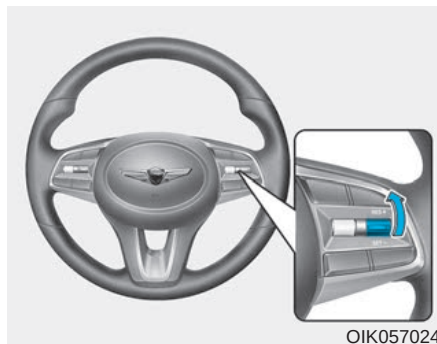
3. Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and release it. The set speed on the LCD display will illuminate.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

i Information

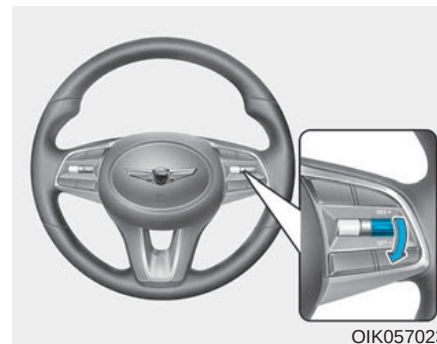
On a steep slope, the vehicle may slightly slow down or speed up, whilst driving uphill or downhill.

To increase Cruise Control speed



- Push the toggle switch up (RES+) and hold it, whilst monitoring the set speed on the instrument cluster. Release the toggle switch when the desired speed is shown and the vehicle will accelerate to that speed.
- Push the toggle switch up (RES+) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase 1.0 km/h each time the toggle switch is operated in this manner.
- Depress the accelerator pedal. When the vehicle attains the desired speed, push the toggle switch down (SET-).

To decrease Cruise Control speed



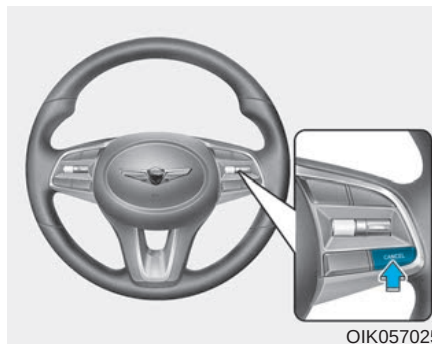
- Push the toggle switch down (SET-) and hold it. Your vehicle will gradually slow down. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want to maintain.
- Push the toggle switch down (SET-) and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease 1.0 km/h each time the toggle switch is operated in this manner.
- Lightly tap the brake pedal. When the vehicle attains the desired speed, push the toggle switch down (SET-).

To temporarily accelerate with the Cruise Control ON

Depress the accelerator pedal. When you take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle will return to the previously set speed.

If you push the toggle switch down (SET-) at the increased speed, the Cruise Control will maintain the increased speed.

Cruise Control will be cancelled when:

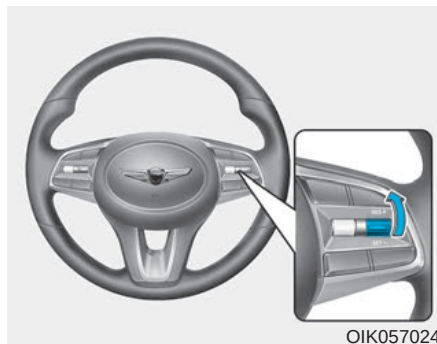


- Depressing the brake pedal.
- Pressing the CANCEL button located on the steering wheel.
- Pressing the MODE button. Both the CRUISE indicator and the SET indicator will turn OFF.
- Moving the shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Decreasing the vehicle speed to less than approximately 30 km/h.
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control) is operating.
- Downshifting to the 2nd gear in manual shift mode.

***i* Information**

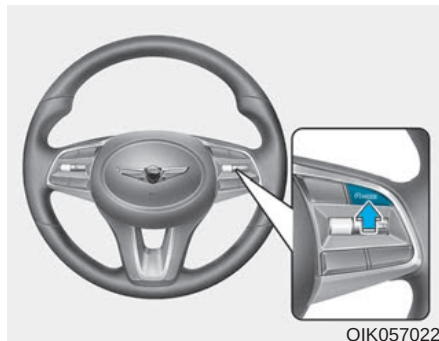
Each of the above actions will cancel Cruise Control operation (the set speed on the instrument cluster will go off), but only pressing the MODE button will turn the system off. If you wish to resume Cruise Control operation, push the toggle switch up (RES+) located on your steering wheel. You will return to your previously preset speed, unless the system was turned off using the MODE button.

To resume preset Cruising speed



Push the toggle switch up (RES+). If the vehicle speed is over 30 km/h, the vehicle will resume the preset speed.

To turn Cruise Control off



Pressing the  MODE button. The cruise indicator will go off.

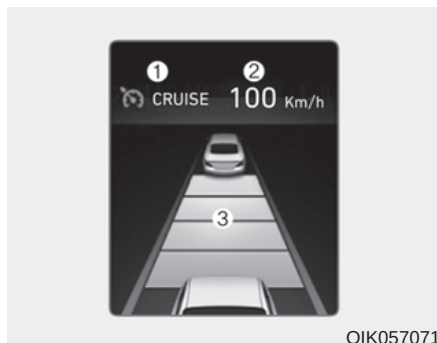
- Press the  MODE button (The cruise indicator light will go off.).
 - With the Cruise Control on, pressing the button once will turn Off the Cruise Control and turn on the Speed Limit Control.
 - With the Cruise Control off and Speed Limit Control on, pressing the button will turn off both system.

Information

The mode changes, as below, whenever the  MODE button is pressed.



SMART CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP & GO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



- ① Cruise indicator
- ② Set speed
- ③ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

To see the SCC screen on the LCD display on the cluster, select Assist mode (A). For more informations, refer to “LCD Display Modes” in chapter 3.

The Smart Cruise Control system allows you to program the vehicle to maintain constant speed and minimum distance between the vehicle ahead.

The Smart Cruise Control system will automatically adjust your vehicle speed to maintain your programmed speed and following distance without requiring you to depress the accelerator or brake pedals.

⚠ WARNING

For your safety, please read the owner's manual before using the Smart Cruise Control system.

⚠ WARNING

The Smart Cruise Control system is not a substitute for safe driving practices, but a convenience function only. It is the responsibility of the driver to always check the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

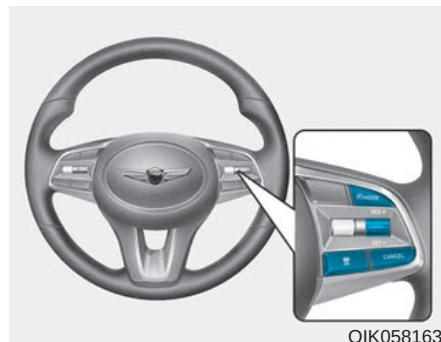
⚠ WARNING

Take the following precautions :

- Always set the vehicle speed under the speed limit in your country.
- If the Smart Cruise Control is left on, (cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated) the Smart Cruise Control can be activated unintentionally. Keep the Smart Cruise Control system off (cruise indicator light OFF) when the Smart Cruise Control is not in use, to avoid inadvertently setting a speed.
- Use the Smart Cruise Control system only when travelling on open highways in good weather.
- Do not use the Smart Cruise Control when it may not be safe to keep the vehicle at a constant speed:
 - When driving in heavy traffic or when traffic conditions make it difficult to drive at a constant speed

- When driving on rainy, icy, or snow-covered roads
- When driving on a steep downhill or uphill
- When driving in winding areas
- When driving in car park
- When driving near crash barriers
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When driving with limited view (possibly due to bad weather, such as fog, snow, rain or sandstorm)
- When the vehicle sensing ability decreases due to vehicle modification resulting level difference of the vehicle's front and rear
- Unexpected situations may lead to possible accidents. Pay attention continuously to the road conditions and driving even when the smart cruise control system is being operated.

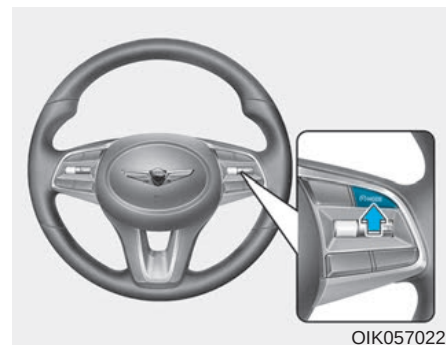
Smart Cruise Control Switch



-  **MODE** : Changes mode between Smart Cruise Control System and Speed Limit Control System.
- RES+** : Resumes or increases cruise control speed.
- SET-** : Sets or decreases cruise control speed.
-  : Sets vehicle-to-vehicle distance.
- CANCEL** : Cancels Smart cruise control operation.

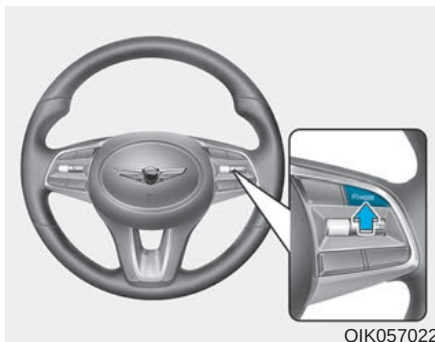
Smart Cruise Control speed

To set Smart Cruise Control speed



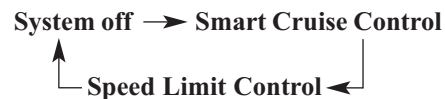
1. Push the  **MODE** button on the steering wheel to turn the system on. The cruise indicator will illuminate.

i Information



First, switch the mode to Smart Cruise Control by pressing the  MODE button if equipped with the Speed Limit Control System.

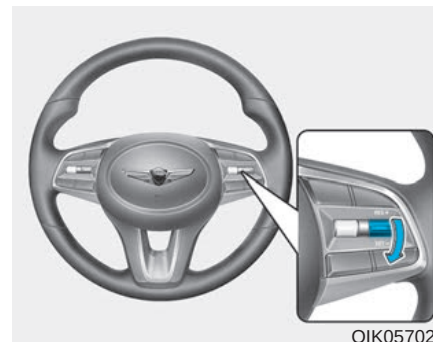
The mode changes, as below, whenever the  MODE button is pressed.



2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

The Smart Cruise Control speed can be set as follows:

- 30 km/h~200 km/h : when there is no vehicle in front
- 0 km/h~200 km/h : when there is a vehicle in front



3. Push the toggle switch down (SET-). The Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance on the LCD display will illuminate.

4. Release the accelerator pedal. The desired speed will automatically be maintained.

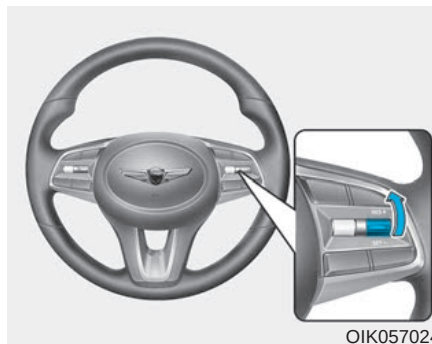
If there is a vehicle in front of you, the speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

On a steep gradient, the vehicle may slow down or speed up slightly when going uphill or downhill.

i Information

- Vehicle speed may decrease on an upward slope and increase on a downward slope.
- When you are setting the cruise control speed, with a vehicle in front and your vehicle speed is between 0 ~ 30 km/h, the speed will set to 30 km/h.

To increase Smart Cruise Control set speed



Follow either of these procedures:

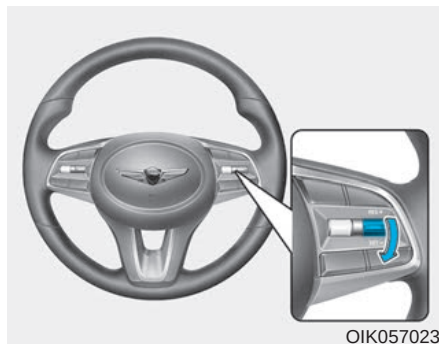
- Push the toggle switch up (RES+), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will increase by 1 km/h each time you move the toggle switch up in this manner.
- Push the toggle switch up (RES+), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will increase by 10 km/h. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want.
- You can set the speed up to 200 km/h.



CAUTION

Check the driving condition before using the toggle switch. Driving speed sharply increases, when you push up and hold the toggle switch.

To decrease the Smart Cruise Control set speed



Follow either of these procedures:

- Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and release it immediately. The cruising speed will decrease by 1 km/h each time you move the toggle switch down in this manner.
- Push the toggle switch down (SET-), and hold it. Your vehicle set speed will decrease by 10 km/h. Release the toggle switch at the speed you want.
- You can set the speed to 30 km/h.

To temporarily accelerate with the Smart Cruise Control on

If you want to speed up temporarily when the Smart Cruise Control is on, depress the accelerator pedal. Increased speed will not interfere with Smart Cruise Control operation or change the set speed.

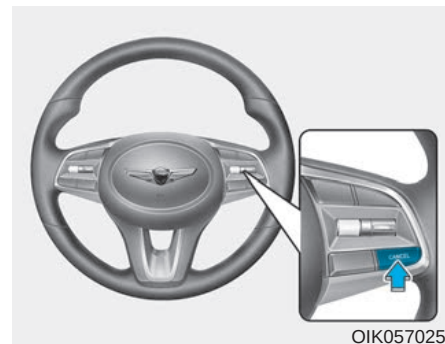
To return to the set speed, take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If you push the toggle switch down (SET-) at increased speed, the cruising speed will be set again.

***i* Information**

Be careful when accelerating temporarily, because the speed is not controlled automatically at this time even if there is a vehicle in front of you.

Smart Cruise Control will be temporarily cancelled when:



Cancelled manually

- Pressing the brake pedal.
- Pushing the CANCEL button located on the steering wheel.

The Smart Cruise Control turns off temporarily when the Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance indicator on the LCD display turns off.

The cruise indicator is illuminated continuously.

Cancelled automatically

- The driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle is shifted to N (Neutral), R (Reverse) or P (Park).
- The parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle speed is over 210 km/h.
- The ESC (Electronic Stability Control), TCS (Traction Control System) or ABS is operating.
- The ESC is turned off.
- The sensor or the cover is dirty or blocked with foreign matter.
- The vehicle is stopped for a certain period of time.
- The vehicle stops and goes repeatedly for a long period of time.
- The accelerator pedal is continuously depressed for a long period of time.
- The engine performance is abnormal.

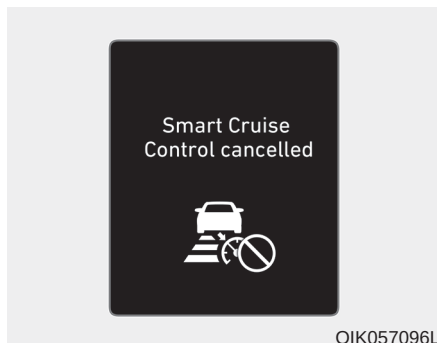
- Engine rpm is in the red zone.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES+)/down (SET-) or depressing the accelerator pedal, after the vehicle is stopped by the Smart Cruise Control system with no other vehicle ahead.
- The driver starts driving by pushing the toggle switch up (RES+)/down (SET-) or depressing the accelerator pedal, after stopping the vehicle with a vehicle stopped far away in front.
- The Forward Collision-Avoidance Assist (FCA) is activated.

Each of these actions will cancel the Smart Cruise Control operation. The Set Speed and Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance on the LCD display will go off.

In a condition the Smart Cruise Control is cancelled automatically, the Smart Cruise Control will not resume even though the RES+ or SET- toggle switch is pushed.

Information

If the Smart Cruise Control is cancelled by any other than the reasons mentioned, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.



OIK057096L

Smart Cruise Control cancelled

If the system is cancelled, the warning chime will sound and a message will appear for a few seconds.

You must adjust the vehicle speed by depressing the accelerator or brake pedal according to the road condition ahead and driving condition.

Always check the road conditions. Do not rely on the warning chime.

To resume Smart Cruise Control set speed

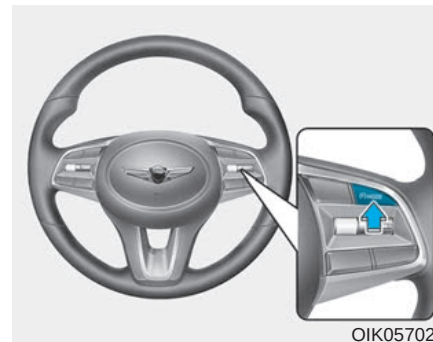
If any method other than the cruise toggle switch was used to cancel cruising speed and the system is still activated, the cruising speed will automatically resume when you push the toggle switch up (RES+) or down (SET-).

If you push the toggle switch up (RES+), the speed will resume to the recently set speed. However, if vehicle speed drops below 30 km/h, it will resume when there is a vehicle in front of your vehicle.

Information

Always check the road conditions when you push the toggle switch up (RES+) to resume speed.

To turn Cruise Control off



OIK057022

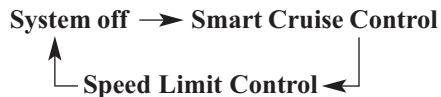
- Pushing the  MODE button. The cruise indicator will go off.

If you wish not to use the cruise control system, always turn the system off by pushing the  MODE button.

- Pushing the  MODE button. The cruise indicator will go off.
 - With the Smart Cruise Control on, pressing the button once will turn Off the Smart Cruise Control and turn on the Speed Limit Control.
 - With the Smart Cruise Control off and Speed Limit Control on, pressing the button will turn off both system.

Information

The mode changes, as below, whenever the  MODE button is pressed.



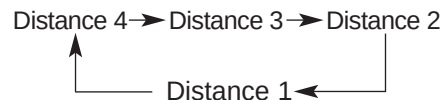
Smart Cruise Control Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance

To set Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance



When the Smart Cruise Control system is ON, you can set and maintain the distance from the vehicle ahead of you without pressing the accelerator or brake pedal.

Each time the button is pressed, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance changes as follows:



For example, if you drive at 90 km/h, the distance maintains as follows:

Distance 4 - approximately 52.5 m

Distance 3 - approximately 40 m

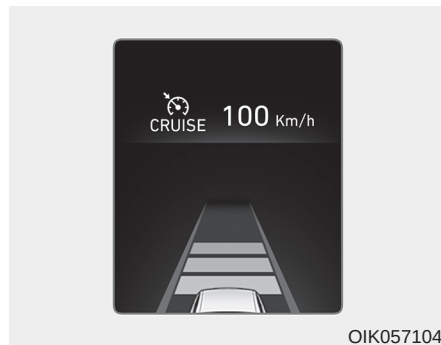
Distance 2 - approximately 32.5 m

Distance 1 - approximately 25 m

Information

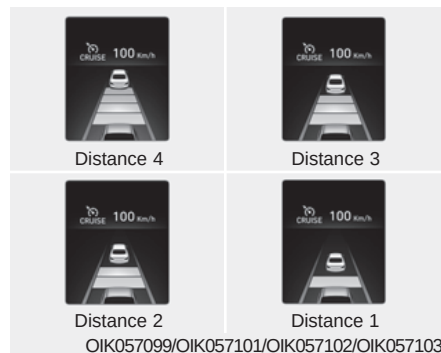
The distance is set to the last set distance when the system is used for the first time after starting the engine.

When the lane ahead is clear:



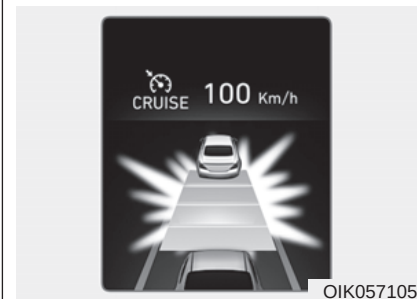
The vehicle speed will maintain the set speed.

When there is a vehicle ahead of you in your lane:



- Your vehicle speed will slow down or speed up to maintain the selected distance.
- If the vehicle ahead speeds up, your vehicle will travel at a steady cruising speed after accelerating to the set speed.

WARNING

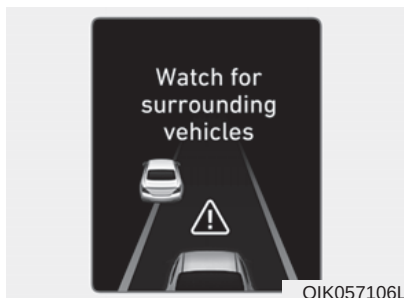


When using the Smart Cruise Control System:

- The warning chime sounds and the Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance indicator blinks if the vehicle is unable to maintain the selected distance from the vehicle ahead.
- If the warning chime sounds, depress the brake pedal to actively adjust the vehicle speed, and the distance to the vehicle ahead.

- Even if the warning chime is not activated, always pay attention to the driving conditions to prevent dangerous situations from occurring.
- Playing the vehicle audio system at high volume may offset the system warning sounds.

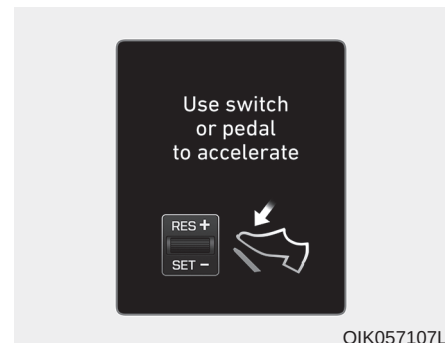
CAUTION



If the vehicle ahead (vehicle speed: less than 30km/h) disappears to the next lane, the warning chime will sound and a message "Watch for surrounding vehicles" will appear. Adjust your vehicle speed for vehicles or objects that can suddenly appear in front of you by depressing the brake pedal.

Always pay attention to the road condition ahead.

In traffic situation



Use switch or pedal to accelerate

- In traffic, your vehicle will stop if the vehicle ahead of you stops. Also, if the vehicle ahead of you starts moving, your vehicle will start as well. However, if the vehicle stops for more than 3 seconds, you must depress the accelerator pedal or push up the toggle switch (RES+) or push down the toggle switch (SET-) to start driving.

- If you push the smart cruise control toggle switch (RES+ or SET-) when Auto Hold and smart cruise control is operating the Auto Hold will be released regardless of accelerator pedal operation and the vehicle will start to move. The AUTO HOLD indicator changes from green to white.

Sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead

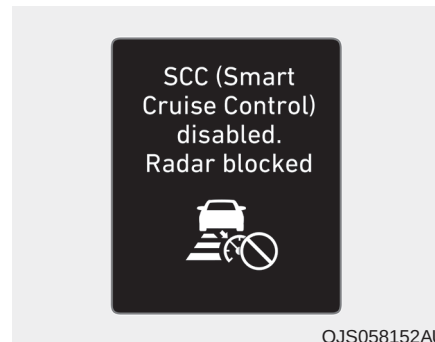


The Smart Cruise Control uses a sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead.

If the sensor is covered with dirt or other foreign matter, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not operate correctly.

Always keep the sensor clean.

Warning message



SCC (Smart Cruise Control) disabled. Radar blocked

When the sensor lens cover is blocked with dirt, snow, or debris, the Smart Cruise Control system operation may stop temporarily. If this occurs, a warning message will appear on the LCD display. Remove any dirt, snow, or debris and clean the radar sensor lens cover before operating the Smart Cruise Control system.

The Smart Cruise Control system may not properly activate, if the radar is totally contaminated, or if any substance is not detected after turning ON the engine (e.g. in an open terrain).

i Information

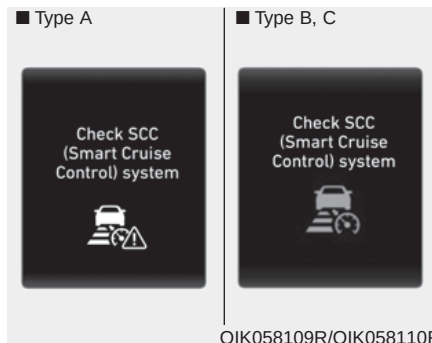
If the SCC operation is temporarily stopped because the radar is blocked, you may wish to use cruise control mode (speed control function) (refer to “To convert to Cruise Control mode” in the following page.).



CAUTION

- Do not apply a licence plate frame or foreign objects such as a bumper sticker or a bumper guard near the radar sensor. Doing so may adversely affect the sensing performance of the radar.
- Always keep the radar sensor and lens cover clean and free of dirt and debris.

- Use only a soft cloth to wash the vehicle. Do not spray pressurised water directly on the sensor or sensor cover.
- Be careful not to apply unnecessary force on the radar sensor or sensor cover. If the sensor is forcibly moved out of proper alignment, the Smart Cruise Control system may not operate correctly. In this case, a warning message may not be displayed. Have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If the front bumper becomes damaged in the area around the radar sensor, the Smart Cruise Control system may not operate properly. We recommend that you have the vehicle inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- Use only Genesis parts to repair or replace a damaged sensor or sensor cover. Do not apply paint to the sensor cover.

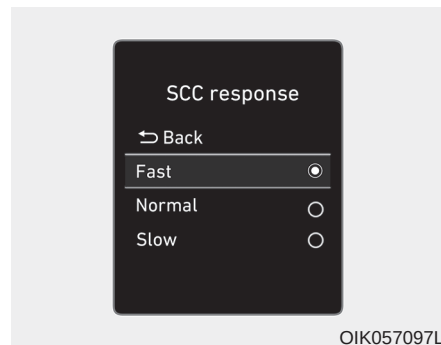


Check SCC (Smart Cruise Control) system

The message will appear when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control system is not functioning normally.

We recommend that you take your vehicle to an authorised Genesis dealer and have the system checked.

To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control



The sensitivity of vehicle speed when following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance can be adjusted. Go to the 'User Settings → Driver assistance → SCC response → Fast/Normal/Slow' on the LCD display. You may select one of the three stages you prefer.

- Fast:
Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is faster than normal speed.
- Normal:
Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is normal.
- Slow:
Vehicle speed following the front vehicle to maintain the set distance is slower than normal speed.

Information

The last selected speed sensitivity of the smart cruise control is remembered by the system.

To convert to Cruise Control mode

The driver may choose to only use the conventional Cruise Control mode (speed control function) by doing as follows:

1. Turn the Smart Cruise Control System on (the cruise indicator light will be on but the system will not be activated).
2. Push and hold the Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance button for more than 2 seconds.
3. Choose between "Smart Cruise Control" and "Cruise Control".

When the system is cancelled using the  MODE button or the  MODE button is used after the engine is turned on, the Smart Cruise Control mode will turn on.

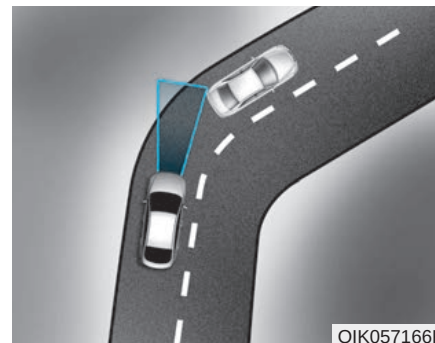
WARNING

When using the Cruise Control mode, you must manually adjust the distance to other vehicles by depressing the brake pedal. The system does not automatically adjust the distance to vehicles in front of you.

Limitations of the system

The Smart Cruise Control system may have limits to its ability to detect distance to the vehicle ahead depending on road and traffic conditions.

On curves

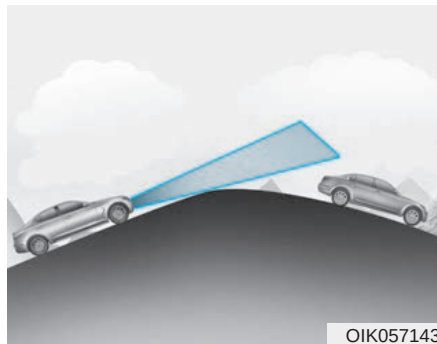


- The Smart Cruise Control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and then your vehicle could accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will decrease when the vehicle ahead is recognised suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on corners and apply the brakes or accelerator pedal if necessary.



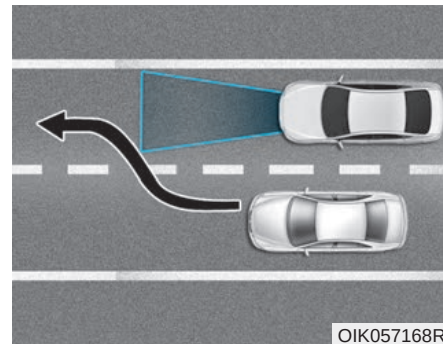
Your vehicle speed can be reduced due to a vehicle in the adjacent lane. Apply the accelerator pedal and select the appropriate set speed. Check to be sure that the road conditions permit safe operation of the Smart Cruise Control.

On inclines



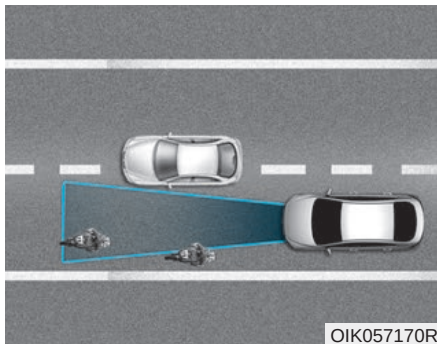
- During uphill or downhill driving, the Smart Cruise Control system may not detect a moving vehicle in your lane, and cause your vehicle to accelerate to the set speed. Also, the vehicle speed will rapidly decrease when the vehicle ahead is recognised suddenly.
- Select the appropriate set speed on inclines and apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.

Lane changing



- A vehicle which moves into your lane from an adjacent lane cannot be recognised by the sensor until it is in the sensor's detection range.
- The radar may not detect immediately when a vehicle cuts in suddenly. Always pay attention to the traffic, road and driving conditions.
- If a slower vehicle moves into your lane, your speed may decrease to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- If a faster vehicle which moves into your lane, your vehicle will accelerate to the set speed.

Vehicle recognition



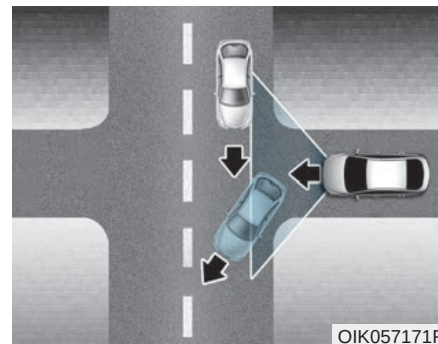
Some vehicles in your lane cannot be recognised by the sensor:

- Narrow vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles
- Vehicles offset to one side
- Slow-moving vehicles or sudden-decelerating vehicles
- Stopped vehicles
- Vehicles with small rear profile such as trailers with no loads

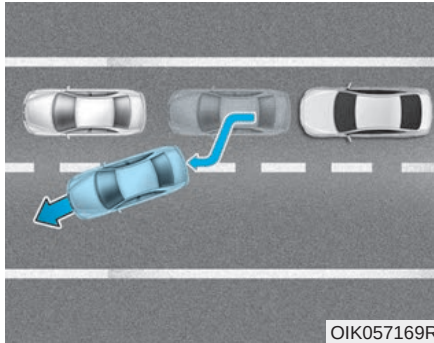
A vehicle ahead cannot be recognised correctly by the sensor if any of the following occurs:

- When the vehicle is pointing upwards due to overloading in the luggage compartment
- Whilst the steering wheel is operating
- When driving to one side of the lane
- When driving on narrow lanes or on bends

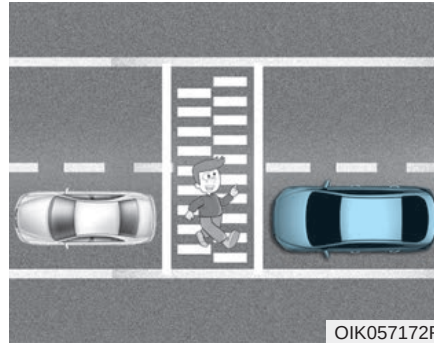
Apply the brake or accelerator pedal if necessary.



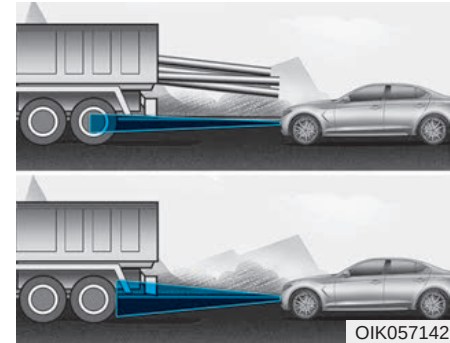
- Your vehicle may accelerate when a vehicle ahead of you disappears.
- When you are warned that the vehicle ahead of you is not detected, drive with caution.



- When driving in stop-and-go traffic, and a stopped vehicle in front of you merges out of the lane, the system may not immediately detect the new vehicle that is now in front of you. In this case, you must maintain a safe braking distance, and if necessary, depress the brake pedal to reduce your driving speed in order to maintain a safe distance.



- Always look out for pedestrians when your vehicle is maintaining a distance with the vehicle ahead.



- Always be cautious of vehicles with higher ground clearance or vehicles carrying loads that extend out from the back of the vehicle.

WARNING

When using the Smart Cruise Control take the following precautions:

- If an emergency stop is necessary, you must apply the brakes. The vehicle cannot be stopped at every emergency situation by using the Smart Cruise Control system.
- Keep a safe distance according to road conditions and vehicle speed. If the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is too close during a high-speed driving, serious collision may result.
- Always maintain sufficient braking distance and decelerate your vehicle by applying the brakes if necessary.
- The Smart Cruise Control system cannot recognise a stopped vehicle, pedestrians or an oncoming vehicle. Always look ahead cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.

- Vehicles moving in front of you with a frequent lane change may cause a delay in the system's reaction or may cause the system to react to a vehicle actually in an adjacent lane. Always drive cautiously to prevent unexpected and sudden situations from occurring.
- Always be aware of the selected speed and vehicle-to-vehicle distance. The driver should not solely rely on the system but always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.
- The Smart Cruise Control system may not recognise complex driving situations so always pay attention to driving conditions and control your vehicle speed.

NOTICE

The Smart Cruise Control system may not operate temporarily due to:

- Electrical interference
- Modifying the suspension
- Differences of tyre abrasion or tyre pressure
- Installing different type of tyres

SPECIAL DRIVING CONDITIONS

Hazardous driving conditions

When hazardous driving elements are encountered such as water, snow, ice, mud and sand, take the following precautions:

- Drive cautiously and maintain a longer braking distance.
- Avoid abrupt braking or steering.
- When your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, or sand, use the second gear. Accelerate slowly to avoid unnecessary wheel spinning.
- Put sand, rock salt, tyre chains or other non-slip materials under the wheels to provide additional traction when stuck in ice, snow, or mud.

WARNING

Downshifting with an automatic transmission when driving on slippery surfaces can cause an accident. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. Be careful when downshifting on slippery surfaces.

Rocking the vehicle

If it is necessary to rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand, or mud, first turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around your front wheels. Then, shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a forward gear.

Try to avoid spinning the wheels, and do not race the engine.

To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal when shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that may free the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is stuck and excessive wheel spin occurs, the temperature in the tyres can increase very quickly. If the tyres become damaged, a tyre blow out or tyre explosion can occur. This condition is dangerous - you and others may be injured. Do not attempt this procedure if people or objects are anywhere near the vehicle.

If you attempt to free the vehicle, the vehicle can overheat quickly, possibly causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Try to avoid spinning the wheels as much as possible to prevent overheating of either the tyres or the engine. DO NOT allow the vehicle to spin the wheels above 56 km/h.

i Information

The ESC system (if equipped) must be turned OFF before rocking the vehicle.

NOTICE

If you are still stuck after rocking the vehicle a few times, have the vehicle pulled out by a tow vehicle to avoid engine overheating, possible damage to the transmission, and tyre damage. See "Towing" in chapter 6.

Smooth cornering

Avoid braking or gear changing around corners, especially when roads are wet. Ideally, corners should always be taken under gentle acceleration.

Driving at night

Night driving presents more hazards than driving in the daylight. Here are some important tips to remember:

- Slow down and keep more distance between you and other vehicles, as it may be more difficult to see at night, especially in areas where there may not be any street lights.
- Adjust your mirrors to reduce the glare from other drivers' headlamps.
- Keep your headlamps clean and properly aimed. Dirty or improperly aimed headlamps will make it much more difficult to see at night.
- Avoid staring directly at the headlamps of oncoming vehicles. You could be temporarily blinded, and it will take several seconds for your eyes to readjust to the darkness.

Driving in the rain

Rain and wet roads can make driving dangerous. Here are a few things to consider when driving in the rain or on slick pavement:

- Slow down and allow extra following distance. A heavy rainfall makes it harder to see and increases the distance needed to stop your vehicle.
- Turn OFF your Cruise Control (if equipped).
- Replace your windscreen wiper blades when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windscreen.
- Ensure your tyres have enough tread. If your tyres do not have enough tread, making a quick stop on wet pavement can cause a skid and possibly lead to an accident. **See "Tyre replacement" in chapter 7.**
- Turn on your headlamps to make it easier for others to see you.
- Driving too fast through large puddles can affect your brakes. If you must go through puddles, try to drive through them slowly.

- If you believe your brakes may be wet, apply them lightly when driving until normal braking operation returns.

Hydroplaning

If the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough, your vehicle may have little or no contact with the road surface and actually ride on the water. The best advice is SLOW DOWN when the road is wet.

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the depth of tyre tread decreases, refer to "Tyre replacement" in chapter 7.

Driving in flooded areas

Avoid driving through flooded areas unless you are sure the water is no higher than the bottom of the wheel hub. Drive through any water slowly. Allow adequate stopping distance because brake performance may be reduced.

After driving through water, dry the brakes by gently applying them several times when the vehicle is moving slowly.

Highway driving

Tyres

Adjust the tyre inflation, as specified. Under-inflation may overheat or damage the tyres.

Do not install worn-out or damaged tyres, which may reduce traction or fail the braking operation.

i Information

Never over-inflate your tyres above the maximum inflation pressure, as specified on your tyres.

Fuel, engine coolant and engine oil

Driving at higher speeds on the highway consumes more fuel and is less efficient than driving at a slower, more moderate speed. Maintain a moderate speed in order to conserve fuel when driving on the highway.

Be sure to check both the engine coolant level and the engine oil before driving.

Drive belt

A loose or damaged drive belt may overheat the engine.

WINTER DRIVING

The severe weather conditions of winter quickly wear out tyres and cause other problems. To minimise winter driving problems, you should take the following suggestions:

Snow or icy conditions

You need to keep sufficient distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Apply the brakes gently. Speeding, rapid acceleration, sudden brake applications, and sharp turns are potentially very hazardous practices. During deceleration, use engine braking to the fullest extent. Sudden brake applications on snowy or icy roads may cause skids to occur.

To drive your vehicle in deep snow, it may be necessary to install tyre chains on your tyres.

Always carry emergency equipment. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, a flashlight, emergency flares, sand, a shovel, jumper cables, a window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, a blanket, etc.

Snow tyres

We recommend you winter tyres when the road temperature is below 7°C (45°F). Refer to the below chart, and mount the recommended snow tyre for your vehicle.

Standard tyre				Recommended snow tyre			
Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size	Tyre size	Wheel size
225/45R18	8.0Jx18	225/45R18	8.0Jx18	225/45R18	8.0Jx18	225/45R18	8.0Jx18
225/40ZR19	8.0Jx19	255/35ZR19	8.5Jx19	225/40R19	8.0Jx19	255/35R19	8.5Jx19

If you mount snow tyres on your vehicle, make sure to use the same inflation pressure as the original tyres. Mount snow tyres on all four wheels to balance your vehicle's handling in all weather conditions. The traction provided by snow tyres on dry road may not be as high as your vehicle's original equipment tyres. Check with the tyre dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Summer tyres

- Summer tyres are used to maximise the driving performance on dry roads.
- If the temperature is below 7°C or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, the summer tyres lose their brake performance and traction as the tyre grip weakens significantly.
- If the temperature is below 7°C or you are driving on snowy or icy roads, mount snow tyres or all-season tyres of the same size with your vehicle's standard tyre for safe driving. Both snow and all-season tyres have M+S markings.
- When using the M+S tyres, use tyres with the same tread produced by the same manufacturer for safe driving.
- When driving with the M+S tyres with the lower maximum allowable speed than that of the vehicle's standard summer tyre, be careful not to exceed the speed allowed for the M+S tyres.

Tyre chains



As the sidewalls of radial tyres are thinner than other types of tyres, they may be damaged by mounting some types of tyre chains on them. Do not mount tyre chains on vehicles equipped with aluminium wheels; if unavoidable, use AutoSock (fabric snow chain). Install the tyre chain after reviewing the instructions provided with the tyre chains. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper tyre chain use is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

⚠ WARNING

The use of AutoSock (fabric snow chain) may adversely affect vehicle handling:

- Drive less than 30 km/h or the chain manufacturer's recommended speed limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, sharp turns, and other road hazards, which may cause the vehicle to bounce.
- Avoid sharp turns or locked wheel braking.

i Information

- Install AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the rear tyres. It should be noted that installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain) on the tyres will provide a greater driving force, but will not prevent side skids.
- Do not install studded tyres without first checking local and municipal regulations for possible restrictions against their use.

Chain Installation

When installing AutoSock (fabric snow chain), follow the manufacturer's instructions and mount them as tightly as possible. Drive slowly (less than 30 km/h) with chains installed. If you hear the chains contacting the body or chassis, stop and tighten them. If they still make contact, slow down until the noise stops. Remove the AutoSock (fabric snow chain) as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

When mounting AutoSock (fabric snow chain), park the vehicle on level ground away from traffic. Turn on the vehicle Hazard Warning Flasher and place a triangular emergency warning device behind the vehicle (if available).

Always place the vehicle in P (Park), apply the parking brake and turn off the engine before installing tyre chains.

NOTICE

When using AutoSock (fabric snow chain):

- **Wrong size chains or improperly installed chains can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body and wheels.**
- **If you hear noise caused by chains contacting the body, retighten the chain to prevent contact with the vehicle body.**
- **To prevent body damage, retighten the chains after driving 0.5~1.0 km.**

Winter precautions

Use high quality ethylene glycol coolant

Your vehicle is delivered with high quality ethylene glycol coolant in the cooling system. It is the only type of coolant that should be used because it helps prevent corrosion in the cooling system, lubricates the water pump and prevents freezing. Be sure to replace or replenish your coolant in accordance with the maintenance schedule in chapter 7. Before winter, have your coolant tested to ensure that its freezing point is sufficient for the temperatures anticipated during the winter.

Check battery and cables

Winter temperatures affect battery performance. **Inspect the battery and cables, as specified in chapter 7.** The battery charging level can be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer or in a service station.

Change to "winter weight" oil if necessary

In some regions during winter, it is recommended to use the "winter weight" oil with lower viscosity. For further information, refer to chapter 8. When you are not sure about a type of winter weight oil, consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

Check spark plugs and ignition system

Inspect the spark plugs, as specified in chapter 7. If necessary, replace them. Also check all ignition wirings and components for any cracks, wear-out, and damage.

To prevent locks from freezing

To prevent the locks from being frozen, spray approved de-icing fluid or glycerin into key holes. When a lock opening is already covered with ice, spray approved de-icing fluid over the ice to remove it. When an internal part of a lock freezes, try to thaw it with a heated key. Carefully use the heated key to avoid an injury.

Use approved window washer anti-freeze solution in system

To prevent the window washer from being frozen, add authorised window washer anti-freeze solution, as specified on the window washer container. Window washer anti-freeze solution is available from an authorised Genesis dealer, and most vehicle accessory outlets. Do not use engine coolant or other types of anti-freeze solution, to prevent any damage to the vehicle paint.

Do not let your parking brake freeze

Under some conditions your parking brake can freeze in the engaged position. This is most likely to happen when there is an accumulation of snow or ice around or near the rear brakes or if the brakes are wet. When there is the risk that your parking brake may freeze, temporarily apply it with the shift lever in P (Park). Also, block the rear wheels in advance, so the vehicle may not roll. Then, release the parking brake.

Do not let ice and snow accumulate underneath

Under some conditions, snow and ice can build up under the wheel arches and interfere with the steering. When driving in such conditions during a severe winter, you should check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis, to ensure that the front wheels and steering components are unblocked.

Carry emergency equipment

In accordance with weather conditions, you should carry appropriate emergency equipment, whilst driving. Some of the items you may want to carry include tyre chains, tow straps or chains, flashlight, emergency flares, sand, shovel, jumper cables, window scraper, gloves, ground cloth, coveralls, blanket, etc.

Do not place objects or materials in the engine compartment

Putting objects or materials in the engine compartment may cause an engine failure or combustion, because they may block the engine cooling. Such damage will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

VEHICLE WEIGHT

Two labels on your driver's door sill show how much weight your vehicle was designed to carry: the Tyre and Loading Information Label and the Certification Label.

Before loading your vehicle, familiarise yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, from the vehicle's specifications and the Certification Label:

Base Kerb Weight

This is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Kerb Weight

This is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

Cargo Weight

This figure includes all weight added to the Base Kerb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

GAW (Gross Axle Weight)

This is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) - including vehicle kerb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). These numbers are shown on the Certification Label. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.

GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)

This is the Base Kerb Weight plus actual Cargo Weight plus passengers.

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)

This is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). The GVWR is shown on the Certification Label located on the driver's door sill.

Overloading

WARNING

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) and the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) for your vehicle are on the Certification Label attached to the driver's (or front passenger's) door. Exceeding these ratings can cause an accident or vehicle damage. You can calculate the weight of your load by weighing the items (and people) before putting them in the vehicle. Be careful not to overload your vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING

If you are considering towing with your vehicle, you should first check your country's legal requirements. As laws vary the requirements for towing trailers, cars, or other types of vehicles or apparatus may differ. Ask an authorised Genesis dealer for further details before towing.

Remember that towing is different from just driving your vehicle by itself. Towing means changes in handling, durability, and fuel economy. Successful, safe towing requires correct equipment, and it has to be used properly. Damage to your vehicle caused by improper trailer towing is not covered by your vehicle manufacturer's warranty.

This section contains many time-tested, important towing tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. Please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

WARNING

Take the following precautions:

- **If you don't use the correct equipment and/or drive improperly, you can lose control of the vehicle when you are pulling a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the braking performance may be reduced. You and your passengers could be seriously or fatally injured. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section.**
- **Before towing, make sure the total trailer weight, GCW (Gross Combination Weight), GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight), GAW (Gross Axle Weight) and trailer tongue load are all within the limits.**

If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised Genesis dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- On a long uphill gradient, do not exceed 70 km/h or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

Towing Trailer

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar, which will meet the requirements of Australian Standard: AS 4177.

For further information with regard to trailer towing:

- on Genuine Genesis parts and accessories (including Genuine Genesis Approved Tow Bar and it's availability for purchase) please consult your nearest Genesis Store or visit www.genesis-motors.com.au
- on Rules and Regulations please consult your State or Territory road authorities.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for your vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of your vehicle. Your Genesis vehicle should not be used to tow heavy loads as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, Genesis Motors Australia shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with the instructions set out in this owner's manual and under relevant law, rules and regulation.

WARNING

Genesis DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.

If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand)

Here are some important points if you decide to pull a trailer:

- Do not do any towing with your vehicle during its first 2,000 km in order to allow the engine to properly run in. Failure to heed this caution may result in serious engine or transmission damage.
- When towing a trailer, be sure to consult an authorised Genesis dealer for further information on additional requirements such as a towing kit, etc.
- Always drive your vehicle at a moderate speed (less than 100 km/h).
- On a long uphill gradient, do not exceed 70 km/h or the posted speed limit, whichever is lower.

Towing Capacity Note

The recommended towing capacity of this vehicle will be provided with the Genuine Genesis/Hyundai Approved Tow Bar.

- To enquire about the towing capacity of this vehicle, please visit www.hyundai.co.nz, or call us on 0800 HYUNDAI.
- To enquire about Genuine Genesis/Hyundai parts and accessories (including the Genuine Genesis/Hyundai Approved Tow Bar and its availability for purchase) please consult your nearest authorised Genesis dealer/service agent, call us on 0800 Genesis or visit www.hyundai.co.nz.

It is the owner's responsibility to ensure that any tow bar used is compatible with and suitable for their vehicle, and is within the towing capacity of their vehicle. Your Genesis vehicle should not be used to tow heavy loads beyond the recommended towing capacities displayed on www.hyundai.co.nz as it is not designed for such use.

Subject to applicable law, Genesis Brand Motors New Zealand Ltd shall not be liable for any losses, damages, costs, expenses (including but not limited to consequential and indirect losses, personal injury and deaths) caused by towing which is not in compliance with instructions set out in the owner's manual.

WARNING

Genesis DO NOT recommend the use of load levelling devices of any type. The use of a load levelling devices may place undue stress on the chassis causing chassis or mounting point failure.

Trailer towing equipment

Towbars

It's important to have the correct towbar equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by, and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right towbar. Here are some rules to follow:

- Do you have to make any holes in the body of your vehicle when you install a trailer towbar? If you do, then be sure to seal the holes later when you remove the towbar. If you don't seal them, carbon monoxide (CO) from your exhaust can get into your vehicle, as well as dirt and water.
- The bumpers on your vehicle are not intended for towbars. Do not attach rental towbars or other bumper-type towbars to them. Use only a frame-mounted towbar that does not attach to the bumper.
- A Genesis trailer towbar accessory is available at an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

We recommend only genuine Genesis towbars (the towbars are made and tested in Australia/NZ for local conditions).

Safety chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Instructions about safety chains may be provided by the towbar manufacturer or trailer manufacturer. Follow the manufacturer's recommendation for attaching safety chains. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your trailer. And, never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, make sure it conforms to your country's regulations and that it is properly installed and operating correctly.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes loaded, then it needs its own brakes and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly. Be sure not to modify your vehicle's brake system.

WARNING

Do not use a trailer with its own brakes unless you are absolutely certain that you have properly set up the brake system. This is not a task for amateurs. Use an experienced, competent trailer shop for this work.

Driving with a trailer

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you must get to know your trailer. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check the trailer towbar and platform, safety chains, electrical connector(s), lights, tyres and brakes.

During your trip, occasionally check to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lights and trailer brakes are still working.

Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You will need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because of the increased vehicle length, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Reversing

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move your hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always reverse slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making turns

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, kerbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden manoeuvres. Signal well in advance.

Turn signals

When you tow a trailer, your vehicle has to have a different turn signal flasher and extra wiring. The green arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly connected, the trailer lights will also flash to alert other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes, or stop.

When towing a trailer, the green arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signals when, in fact, they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working. You must also check the lights every time you disconnect and then reconnect the wires.

⚠ WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. Consult an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.

Driving on hills

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get overheated and may not operate efficiently.

On a long uphill grade, shift down and reduce your speed to around 70 km/h to reduce the possibility of engine and transmission overheating.

If your trailer weighs more than the maximum trailer weight without trailer brakes and you have an automatic transmission, you should drive in D (Drive) when towing a trailer.

Operating your vehicle in D (Drive) when towing a trailer will minimise heat build-up and extend the life of your transmission.

NOTICE

To prevent engine and/or transmission overheating:

- When towing a trailer on steep grades (in excess of 6%) pay close attention to the engine coolant temperature gauge to ensure the engine does not overheat. If the needle of the coolant temperature gauge moves towards "H" (HOT), pull over and stop as soon as it is safe to do so, and allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine has cooled sufficiently.
- If you tow a trailer with the maximum gross vehicle weight and maximum trailer weight, it can cause the engine or transmission to overheat. When driving in such conditions, allow the engine to idle until it cools down. You may proceed once the engine or transmission has cooled sufficiently.

- When towing a trailer, your vehicle speed may be much slower than the general flow of traffic, especially when climbing an uphill gradient. Use the left hand lane when towing a trailer on an uphill gradient. Choose your vehicle speed according to the maximum posted speed limit for vehicles with trailers, the steepness of the gradient, and your trailer weight.

Parking on hills

Generally, if you have a trailer attached to your vehicle, you should not park your vehicle on a hill.

However, if you ever have to park your trailer on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Pull the vehicle into the parking space.
Turn the steering wheel in the direction of the kerb (left if headed down hill, right if headed up hill).
2. Shift the vehicle to P (Park).

3. Set the parking brake and shut off the vehicle.
4. Place wheel chocks under the trailer wheels on the down hill side of the wheels.
5. Start the vehicle, hold the brakes, shift to neutral, release the parking brake and slowly release the brakes until the trailer chocks absorb the load.
6. Reapply the brakes and parking brake.
7. Move the shift lever to P (Park) when the vehicle is parked on an uphill gradient.
8. Shut off the vehicle and release the vehicle brakes but leave the parking brake set.

 WARNING

Do not connect a trailer lighting system directly to your vehicle's lighting system. Use an approved trailer wiring harness. Failure to do so could result in damage to the vehicle electrical system and/or personal injury. Consult an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.

Ready to leave after parking on a hill

1. With the shift lever in P (Park), apply your brakes and hold the brake pedal down whilst you:
 - Start your engine;
 - Shift into gear; and
 - Release the parking brake.
2. Slowly remove your foot from the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance when towing a trailer

Your vehicle will need service more often when you regularly pull a trailer. Important items to pay particular attention to include engine oil, automatic transmission fluid, axle lubricant and cooling system fluid. Brake condition is another important item to frequently check. If you're towing, it's a good idea to review these items before you start your trip. Don't forget to also maintain your trailer and towbar. Follow the maintenance schedule that accompanied your trailer and check it periodically. Preferably, conduct the check at the start of each day's driving. Most importantly, all towbar nuts and bolts should be tight.

NOTICE

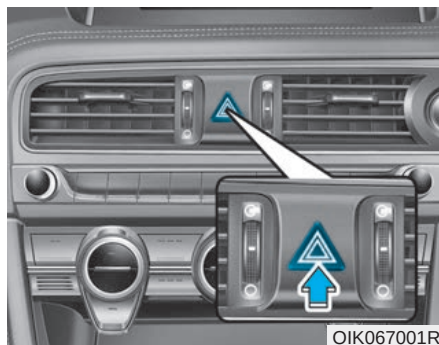
To prevent vehicle damage:

- **Due to higher load during trailer usage, overheating might occur on hot days or during uphill driving. If the coolant gauge indicates over-heating, switch off the air conditioner and stop the vehicle in a safe area to cool down the engine.**
- **Do not switch off the engine whilst the coolant gauge indicates over-heating.**
(Keep the engine idle to cool down the engine)
- **When towing check automatic transmission fluid more frequently.**

What to do in an emergency

Hazard warning flasher	6-2	If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre)	6-16
In case of an emergency whilst driving	6-2	Jack and tools	6-16
If the engine stalls whilst driving	6-2	Changing tyres	6-17
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing	6-2	Towing	6-22
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving	6-3	Towing service	6-22
If the engine will not start	6-3	Removable towing hook	6-24
If the engine doesn't turn over or		Emergency towing	6-25
turns over slowly	6-3		
If the engine turns over normally but doesn't			
start	6-4		
Jump starting	6-4		
Push-starting	6-7		
If the engine overheats	6-8		
Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	6-9		
Check tyre pressure	6-10		
Tyre pressure monitoring system	6-10		
Low tyre pressure telltale	6-12		
Low tyre pressure position telltale and			
tyre pressure telltale	6-12		
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System)			
malfunction indicator	6-13		
Changing a tyre with TPMS	6-14		

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER



The hazard warning flasher serves as a warning to other drivers to exercise extreme caution when approaching, overtaking, or passing your vehicle.

It should be used whenever emergency repairs are being made or when the vehicle is stopped near the edge of a roadway.

To turn the hazard warning flasher on or off, press the hazard warning flasher button with the Engine Start/Stop button in any position. The button is located in the centre fascia panel. All turn signal lights will flash simultaneously.

- The hazard warning flasher operates whether your vehicle is running or not.
- The turn signals do not work when the hazard flasher is on.

NOTICE

As the hazard warning flasher operates with the Engine Start/Stop button in any position. Always remember to switch off the hazard warning flashers when not in use.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY WHILST DRIVING

If the engine stalls whilst driving

- Reduce your speed gradually, keeping a straight line. Move cautiously off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on your hazard warning flasher.
- Try to start the engine again. If your vehicle will not start, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

If the engine stalls at a cross-road or crossing

If the engine stalls at a crossroads or crossing, if safe to do so, move the shift lever to the N (Neutral) position and then push the vehicle to a safe location.

If you have a flat tyre whilst driving

If a tyre goes flat whilst you are driving:

- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle slow down whilst driving straight ahead. Do not apply the brakes immediately or attempt to pull off the road as this may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. When the vehicle has slowed to such a speed that it is safe to do so, brake carefully and pull off the road. Drive off the road as far as possible and park on firm, level ground. If you are on a divided highway, do not park in the median area between the two traffic lanes.

- When the vehicle is stopped, press the hazard warning flasher button, shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Have all passengers get out of the vehicle. Ensure they all get out on the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.
- When changing a flat tyre, follow the instructions provided later in this chapter.

IF THE ENGINE WILL NOT START

If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly

- Ensure the vehicle shift lever is in N (Neutral) or P (Park). The engine starts only when the vehicle is in N (Neutral) or P (Park).
- Check the battery connections to ensure they are clean and tight.
- Turn on the interior light. If the light dims or goes out when you operate the starter, the battery has drained.

Do not push or pull the vehicle to start it. This could cause damage to your vehicle. **See instructions for "Jump Starting" provided in this chapter.**



CAUTION

Push or pull starting the vehicle may cause the catalytic converter to overload which can lead to damage to the emission control system.

If the engine turns over normally but doesn't start

- Check the fuel level and add fuel if necessary.

If the engine still does not start, we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.

JUMP STARTING

Jump starting can be dangerous if done incorrectly. Follow the jump starting procedure in this section to avoid serious injury or damage to your vehicle. If in doubt about how to properly jump start your vehicle, we strongly recommend that you have a service technician or towing service do it for you.

WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulfuric acid which is highly corrosive. Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- **NEVER** attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.
- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. **NEVER** touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.
- Do not allow the (+) and (-) jumper cables to touch. It may cause sparks.
- The battery may rupture or explode when you jump start with a low or frozen battery.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle:

- Only use a 12-volt power supply (battery or jumper system) to jump start your vehicle.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle by push-starting.

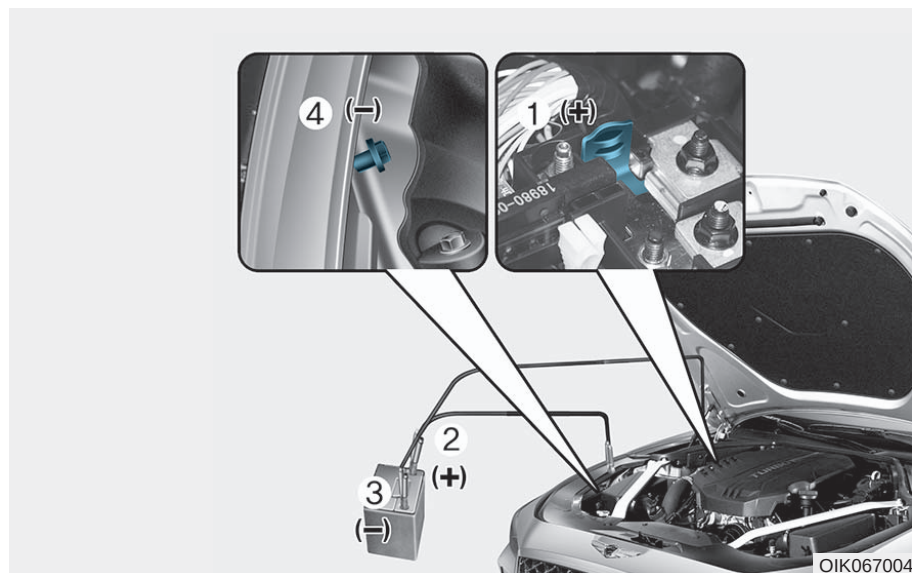
i Information

An inappropriately disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulations.

Jump starting procedure**i Information**

Your vehicle has a battery in the boot, but when you jump start your vehicle, use the jumper terminal in the engine compartment.

1. Position the two vehicles close enough that the jumper cables will reach, but do not allow the vehicles to touch.
2. Avoid fans or any moving parts in the engine compartment at all times, even when the vehicles are turned off.
3. Turn off all electrical devices such as radios, lights, air conditioning, etc. Put the vehicles in P (Park), and apply the parking brake. Turn both vehicles OFF.



4. Open the engine bonnet.
5. Remove the engine compartment fuse box cover.
6. Connect the jumper cables in the exact sequence shown in the illustration. First connect one jumper cable to the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).
7. Connect the other end of the jumper cable to the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
8. Connect the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
9. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
10. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run at approximately 2,000 rpm for a few minutes. Then start your vehicle.

If your vehicle will not start after a few attempts, it probably requires servicing. In this event please seek qualified assistance. If the cause of your battery discharging is not apparent, we recommend that your vehicle be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Disconnect the jumper cables in the exact reverse order you connected them:

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) chassis ground of your vehicle (4).
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the black, negative (-) battery/chassis ground of the assisting vehicle (3).
3. Disconnect the second jumper cable from the red, positive (+) battery/jumper terminal of the assisting vehicle (2).
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the red, positive (+) jumper terminal of your vehicle (1).

Push-starting

Vehicles equipped with automatic transmission cannot be push-started.

Follow the directions in this chapter for jump-starting.

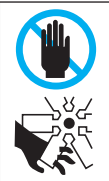
WARNING

Never tow a vehicle to start it because the sudden surge forward when the engine starts could cause a collision with the tow vehicle.

IF THE ENGINE OVERHEATS

If your temperature gauge indicates overheating, you experience a loss of power, or hear loud pinging or knocking, the engine may be overheating. If this happens, you should:

1. Pull off the road and stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Place the shift lever in P (Park), and apply the parking brake. If the air conditioning is ON, turn it OFF.
3. If engine coolant is running out under the vehicle or steam is coming out from the bonnet, stop the engine. Do not open the bonnet until the coolant has stopped running or the steaming has stopped. If there is no visible loss of engine coolant and no steam, leave the engine running and check to ensure the engine cooling fan is operating. If the fan is not running, turn the engine off.



⚠ WARNING

When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving parts such as the cooling fan and drive belt to prevent serious injury.

4. Check for coolant leaking from the radiator, hoses or under the vehicle. (If the air conditioning had been in use, it is normal for cold water to be draining from it when you stop.)
5. If engine coolant is leaking out, stop the engine immediately and we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.



⚠ WARNING

NEVER remove the radiator cap/engine coolant cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

Turn the engine off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap/engine coolant cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it anti-clockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning anti-clockwise to remove it.

6. If you cannot find the cause of the overheating, wait until the engine temperature has returned to normal. Then, if coolant has been lost, slowly, in small quantities, add coolant to the reservoir to bring the fluid level in the reservoir up to the halfway mark.
7. Proceed with caution, keeping alert for further signs of overheating. If overheating happens again, we recommend that you call an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.



CAUTION

- **Serious loss of coolant indicates a leak in the cooling system and we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.**
- **When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.**

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (IF EQUIPPED)



OIK067006R

- (1) Low Tyre Pressure Telltale/TPMS Malfunction Indicator
- (2) Low Tyre Pressure Position Telltale and Tyre Pressure Telltale
(Shown on the LCD display)



OIK067025L

Check tyre pressure



- You can check the tyre pressure in the Assist mode on the instrument cluster.

Refer to the "LCD Display Modes" in chapter 3.

- Tyre pressure is displayed after a few minutes of driving after initial engine start up.
- If tyre pressure is not displayed when the vehicle is stopped, "Drive to display" message will appear. After driving, check the tyre pressure.

- The displayed tyre pressure values may differ from those measured with a tyre pressure gauge.
- You can change the tyre pressure unit in the User Settings mode on the instrument cluster.
 - psi, kpa, Bar (Refer to "User Settings Mode" in chapter 3).

Tyre pressure monitoring system

WARNING

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

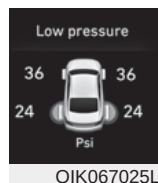
NOTICE

If any of the below happens, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

- 1. The low tyre pressure telltale/TPMS malfunction indicator does not illuminate for 3 seconds when the Engine Start/Stop button is pressed to the ON position or the engine is running.**
- 2. The TPMS malfunction indicator remains illuminated after blinking for approximately 1 minute.**
- 3. The low tyre pressure position telltale remains illuminated.**



Low tyre pressure telltale



Low tyre pressure position telltale and tyre pressure telltale

When the TPMS warning indicators are illuminated and a warning message is displayed on the cluster LCD display, one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. The low tyre pressure position telltale will indicate which tyre is significantly under-inflated by illuminating the corresponding parking light.

If either telltale illuminates, immediately reduce your speed, avoid hard cornering and anticipate increased stopping distances. You should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible. Inflate the tyres to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's placard or tyre inflation pressure label located on the driver's side centre pillar outer panel. If you cannot reach a service station or if the tyre cannot hold the newly added air, replace the low pressure tyre with a spare tyre.

The low tyre pressure telltale will remain on and the TPMS Malfunction Indicator may blink for one minute and then remain illuminated (when the vehicle is driven approximately 10 minutes at speed above 25 km/h) until you have the low pressure tyre repaired and replaced on the vehicle.



Information

The spare tyre is not equipped with a tyre pressure sensor.



CAUTION

In winter or cold weather, the low tyre pressure telltale may illuminate if the tyre pressure was adjusted to the recommended tyre inflation pressure in warm weather. It does not mean your TPMS is malfunctioning because the decreased temperature leads to a lowering of tyre pressure.

When you drive your vehicle from a warm area to a cold area or from a cold area to a warm area, or the outside temperature is higher or lower, you should check the tyre inflation pressure and adjust the tyres to the recommended tyre inflation pressure.

⚠ WARNING**Low pressure damage**

Significantly low tyre pressure makes the vehicle unstable and can contribute to loss of vehicle control and increased braking distances.

Continued driving on low pressure tyres can cause the tyres to overheat and fail.

**TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator**

The TPMS malfunction indicator will illuminate after it blinks for approximately one minute when there is a problem with the TPMS.

We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

If there is a malfunction with the TPMS, the low tyre pressure position telltale will not be displayed even though the vehicle has an under-inflated tyre.

NOTICE

The TPMS Malfunction Indicator may illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is near electric power supply cables or radio transmitters such as police stations, government and public offices, broadcasting stations, military installations, airports, transmitting towers, etc.

Additionally, using snow chains or electronic devices such as computers, chargers, remote starter, navigation etc. may all interfere with the normal operation of the TPMS causing the TPMS malfunction indicator to illuminate.

Changing a tyre with TPMS

If you have a flat tyre, the low Tyre Pressure and Position telltales will come on. We recommend that the flat tyre be repaired by an authorised Genesis dealer as soon as possible or replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre.



CAUTION

NEVER use a puncture-repairing agent to repair and/or inflate a low pressure tyre. The tyre sealant can damage the tyre pressure sensor. If used, you will have to replace the tyre pressure sensor.

The spare tyre (if equipped) does not come with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor. When the low pressure tyre or the flat tyre is replaced with the spare tyre, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale will remain on.

Also, the TPMS Malfunction Indicator will illuminate after blinking for one minute if the vehicle is driven at speed above 25 km/h for approximately 10 minutes.

Once the original tyre equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring sensor is reinflated to the recommended pressure and reinstalled on the vehicle, the Low Tyre Pressure Telltale and TPMS malfunction indicator will go off within a few minutes of driving.

If the indicators do not extinguish after a few minutes, please visit an authorised Genesis dealer.

Each wheel is equipped with a tyre pressure sensor mounted inside the tyre behind the valve stem (except for the spare tyre). You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you have your tyres serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

You may not be able to identify a tyre with low pressure by simply looking at it. Always use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to measure the tyre's inflation pressure. Please note that a tyre that is hot (from being driven) will have a higher pressure measurement than a tyre that is cold.

A cold tyre means the vehicle has been sitting for 3 hours and driven for less than 1.6 km in that 3 hour period.

Allow the tyre to cool before measuring the inflation pressure. Always ensure that the tyre is cold before inflating to the recommended pressure.

⚠ WARNING

- The TPMS cannot alert you to severe and sudden tyre damage caused by external factors such as nails or road debris.
- If you feel any vehicle instability, immediately take your foot off the accelerator, apply the brakes gradually and with light force, and slowly move to a safe position off the road.

⚠ WARNING**Protecting TPMS**

Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the TPMS components may interfere with the system's ability to warn the driver of low tyre pressure conditions and/or TPMS malfunctions. Tampering with, modifying, or disabling the TPMS components may void the warranty for that portion of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not modify the vehicle; it may interfere with the TPMS function.
- The wheels on the market do not have a TPMS sensor.
For your safety, we recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Genesis dealer.
- If you use the wheels on the market, use a TPMS sensor approved by an authorised Genesis dealer. If your vehicle is not equipped with a TPMS sensor or TPMS does not work properly, you may fail the periodic vehicle inspection conducted in your country.

IF YOU HAVE A FLAT TYRE (WITH SPARE TYRE)

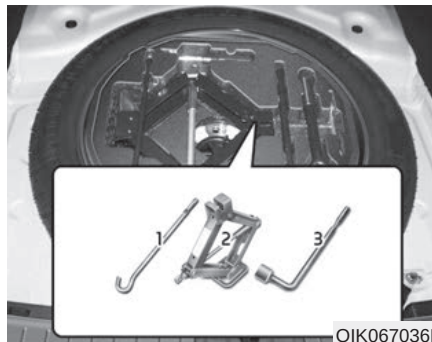
WARNING

Changing a tyre can be dangerous. Follow the instructions in this section when changing a tyre to reduce the risk of serious injury or death.

CAUTION

Be careful as you use the jack handle to stay clear of the flat end. The flat end has sharp edges that could cause cuts.

Jack and tools



- (1) Jack handle
- (2) Jack
- (3) Wheel nut wrench

The jack, jack handle, and wheel nut wrench are stored in the luggage compartment under the luggage box cover.

The jack is provided for emergency tyre changing only.



Turn the winged hold down bolt anti-clockwise to remove the spare tyre.

Store the spare tyre in the same compartment by turning the winged hold down bolt clockwise.

To prevent the spare tyre and tools from "rattling", store them in their proper location.



If it is hard to loosen the tyre hold-down wing bolt by hand, you can loosen it easily using the jack handle.

1. Put the jack handle (1) inside of the tyre hold-down wing bolt.
2. Turn the tyre hold-down wing bolt anti-clockwise with the jack handle.

⚠ WARNING



Do not touch luggage compartment metal surface whilst the engine is operating or hot.

Doing so could result in serious personal injury.

Turn the engine off and wait until it cools down or wear gloves to remove the spare tyre from the luggage compartment.

Changing tyres

⚠ WARNING

- Never attempt vehicle repairs in the traffic lanes of a public road or highway.
- Always move the vehicle completely off the road and onto the hard shoulder before trying to change a tyre. The jack should be used on firm level ground. If you cannot find a firm level place off the road, call a towing service company for assistance.

- Be sure to use the correct front and rear jacking positions on the vehicle; never use the bumpers or any other part of the vehicle for jacking support.
- The vehicle can easily roll off the jack causing serious injury or death.
- Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
- No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
- Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre.
- Do not start or run the engine when the vehicle is on the jack.
- Do not allow anyone to remain in the vehicle when it is on the jack.
- Make sure any children present are in a secure place away from the road and from the vehicle to be raised with the jack.

What to do in an emergency

Follow these steps to change your vehicle's tyre:

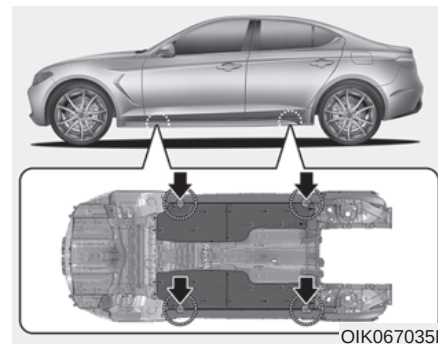
1. Park on a level, firm surface.
2. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
3. Press the hazard warning flasher button.
4. Remove the wheel nut wrench, jack, jack handle, and spare tyre from the vehicle.



5. Block both the front and rear of the tyre diagonally opposite of the tyre you are changing.



6. Loosen the wheel nuts anti-clockwise one turn each in the order shown above, but do not remove any wheel nuts until the tyre has been raised off of the ground.



7. Place the jack in the designated jacking position under the frame closest to the tyre you are changing. The jacking positions are plates welded to the frame with two notches. Never jack the vehicle at any other position or part of the vehicle. It may cause damage to the vehicle.



OIK067033L

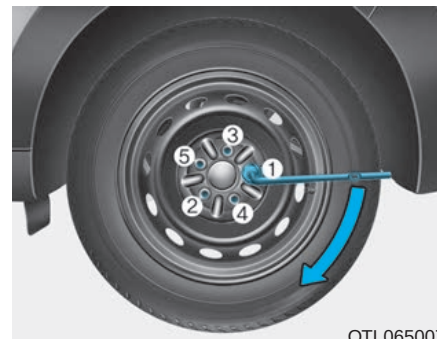
8. Insert the jack handle into the jack and turn it clockwise, raising the vehicle until the tyre clears the ground. Make sure the vehicle is stable on the jack.

9. Loosen the wheel nuts with the wheel nut wrench and remove them with your fingers. Clear the wheel from the studs and lay it flat on the ground out of the way. Remove any dirt or debris from the studs, mounting surfaces, and wheel.

10. Install the spare tyre onto the studs of the hub.

11. Tighten the wheel nuts with your fingers onto the studs with the smaller end of the wheel nuts closest to the wheel.

12. Lower the vehicle to the ground by turning the jack handle anti-clockwise.



OTL065007

13. Use the wheel nut wrench to tighten the wheel nuts in the order shown. Double-check each lug nut until they are tight. After changing tyres, we recommend that an authorised Genesis dealer tighten the wheel nuts to their proper torque as soon as possible. **The wheel nut should be tightened to 11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft).**

If you have a tyre pressure gauge, check the tyre pressure (see "Tyres and Wheels" in chapter 8 for tyre pressure instructions.). If the pressure is lower or higher than recommended, drive slowly to the nearest service station and adjust it to the recommended pressure. Always reinstall the valve cap after checking or adjusting tyre pressure. If the cap is not replaced, air may leak from the tyre. If you lose a valve cap, buy another and install it as soon as possible. After changing tyres, secure the flat tyre and return the jack and tools to their proper storage locations.

NOTICE

- **Check the tyre pressure as soon as possible after installing a spare tyre. Adjust it to the recommended pressure.**
- **Check and tighten the wheel nuts after driving over 50 km if tyres are replaced. Re-check the tyre wheel lug nuts after driving over 1,000 km.**



CAUTION

Your vehicle has metric threads on the studs and wheel nuts. Make certain when changing a tyre that the same wheel nuts that were removed are reinstalled. If you have to replace your wheel nuts make sure they have metric threads to avoid damaging the studs and ensure the wheel is properly secured to the hub. We recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer for assistance.

If any of the equipment such as the jack, wheel nuts, studs, or other equipment is damaged or in poor condition, do not attempt to change the tyre and call for assistance.

Use of compact spare tyres

Compact spare tyres are designed for emergency use only. Drive carefully on the compact spare tyre and always follow the safety precautions.



WARNING

To prevent compact spare tyre failure and loss of control possibly resulting in an accident:

- **Use the compact spare tyre only in an emergency.**
- **NEVER operate your vehicle over 80 km/h.**
- **Do not exceed the vehicle's maximum load rating or the load carrying capacity shown on the sidewall of the compact spare tyre.**
- **Do not use the compact spare tyre continuously. Repair or replace the original tyre as soon as possible to avoid failure of the compact spare tyre.**

When driving with the compact spare tyre mounted to your vehicle:

- Check the tyre pressure after installing the compact spare tyre. The compact spare tyre should be inflated to 420 kPa (60 psi).
- Do not take this vehicle through an automatic car wash with the compact spare tyre installed.
- Do not use the compact spare tyre on any other vehicle because this tyre has been designed especially for your vehicle.
- The compact spare tyre's tread life is shorter than a regular tyre. Inspect your compact spare tyre regularly and replace worn compact spare tyres with the same size and design, mounted on the same wheel.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at a time.
- Do not tow a trailer with the compact spare tyre installed.

NOTICE

When the original tyre and wheel are repaired and reinstalled on the vehicle, the wheel nut torque must be set correctly. The correct wheel nut tightening torque is 11~13 kgf·m (79~94 lbf·ft).

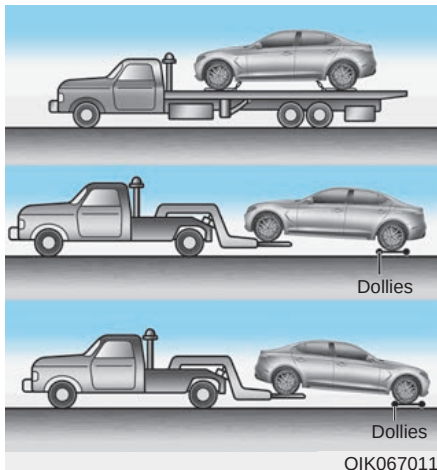
**CAUTION**

To prevent damaging the compact spare tyre and your vehicle:

- Drive slowly enough for the road conditions to avoid all hazards, such as a potholes or debris.
- Avoid driving over obstacles. The compact spare tyre diameter is smaller than the diameter of a conventional tyre and reduces the vehicle ground clearance approximately 25 mm.
- Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare tyre. Because a tyre chain will not fit due to the smaller size of the compact tyre.
- Do not use the compact spare tyre on any other wheels, nor should standard tyres, snow tyres, wheel covers or trim rings be used with the compact spare wheel.

TOWING

Towing service



If emergency towing is necessary, we recommend having it done by an authorised Genesis dealer or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing procedures are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. The use of wheel dollies or flatbed is recommended.

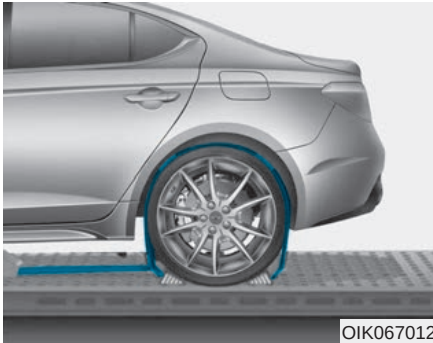
On 2WD vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground (without dollies) and the rear wheels off the ground.

If any of the loaded wheels or suspension components are damaged or the vehicle is being towed with the rear wheels on the ground, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

When being towed by a commercial tow truck and wheel dollies are not used, the rear of the vehicle should always be lifted, not the front.

NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake (EPB) does not release normally, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.



OIK067012

- Ensure any metal parts on the tie-down straps do not contact painted surfaces or the face of the wheels.
- Do not place straps over the body panels or through the wheels.

NOTICE

Attaching straps to the chassis, suspension or other parts of the body can cause damage.

⚠ WARNING

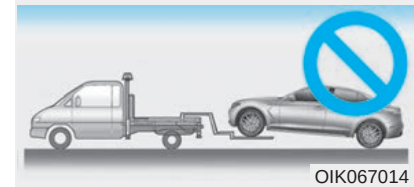
If equipped with rollover sensor

If your vehicle is equipped with side and curtain air bags, press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position when the vehicle is being towed.

The side and curtain air bags may deploy when the ignition is ON, and the rollover sensor detects the situation as a rollover.

NOTICE

- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground as this may cause damage to the vehicle.



OIK067014

- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. Use wheel lift or flatbed equipment.



OIK067013

When towing your vehicle in an emergency without wheel dollies:

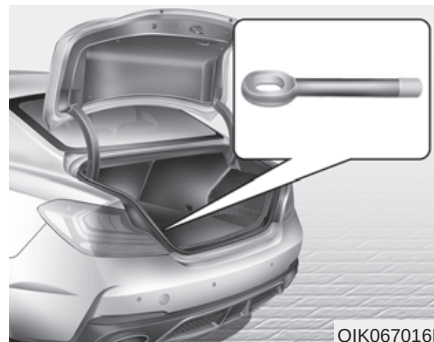
1. Whilst depressing the brake pedal shift to the N (Neutral) position and turn the vehicle off. The Engine Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position.
2. Release the parking brake.



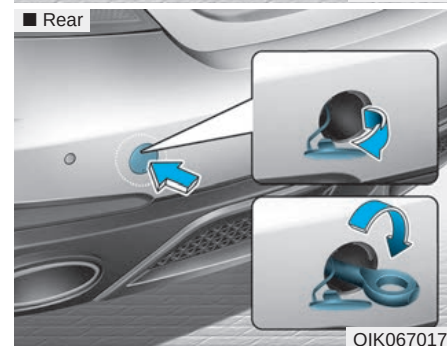
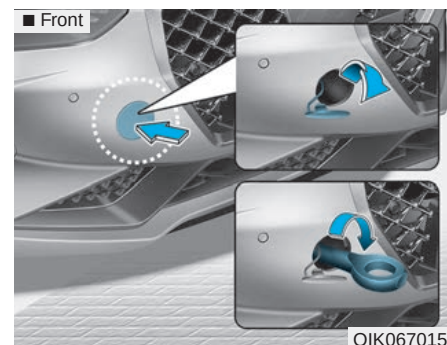
CAUTION

Failure to place the shift lever in N (Neutral) may cause internal damage to the transmission.

Removable towing hook



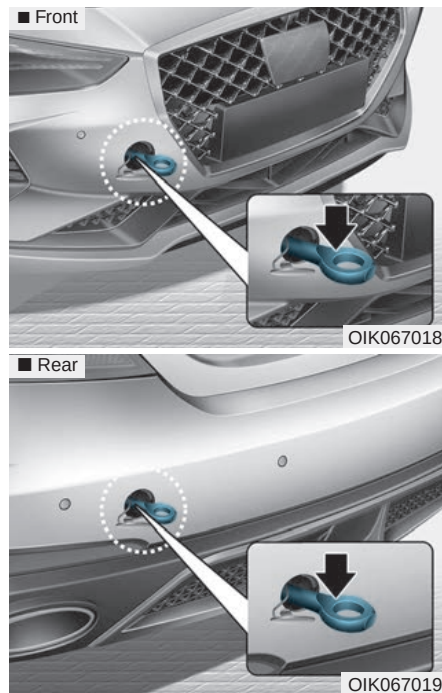
1. Open the boot, and remove the towing hook from the tool case.



2. Remove the hole cover by pressing the lower part of the cover on the bumper.
3. Install the towing hook by turning it clockwise into the hole until it is fully secured.

4. Remove the towing hook and install the cover after use.

Emergency towing



If towing is necessary, we recommend you have it done by an authorised Genesis dealer or a commercial tow truck service.

If a towing service is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing hook at the front (or rear) of the vehicle.

Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle with a cable or chain. A driver must be in the vehicle to steer it and operate the brakes.

Towing in this manner may be done only on hard-surfaced roads for a short distance and at low speeds. Also, the wheels, axles, power train, steering and brakes must all be in good condition.

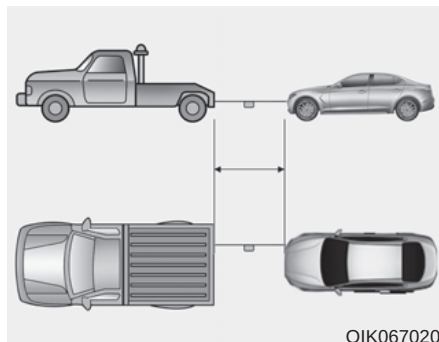


CAUTION

The driver must be in the vehicle for steering and braking operations when the vehicle is being towed. Passengers other than the driver must not be in the vehicle.

Always follow these emergency towing precautions:

- Whilst depressing the brake pedal shift to the N (Neutral) position and turn the vehicle off. The Engine Start/Stop button will be in the ACC position.
- Release the parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal with more force than normal as you will have reduced braking performance.
- More steering effort will be required because the power steering system will be disabled.
- Use a vehicle heavier than your own to tow your vehicle.
- The drivers of both vehicles should communicate with each other frequently.
- Before emergency towing, check that the hook is not broken or damaged.
- Fasten the towing cable or chain securely to the hook.
- Do not jerk the hook. Apply steady and even force.



- Use a towing cable or chain less than 5 m long. Attach a white or red cloth (about 30 cm wide) in the middle of the cable or chain for easy visibility.
- Drive carefully so the towing cable or chain remains tight during towing.
- Before towing, check the automatic transmission for fluid leaks under your vehicle. If the automatic transmission fluid is leaking, flatbed equipment or a towing dolly must be used.

NOTICE

Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle in a slow and gradual manner whilst maintaining tension on the tow rope or chain to start or drive the vehicle, otherwise tow hooks and the vehicle may be damaged.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle and vehicle components when towing:

- Always pull straight ahead when using the towing hooks. Do not pull from the side or at a vertical angle.
- Do not use the towing hooks to pull a vehicle out of mud, sand or other conditions from which the vehicle cannot be driven out under its own power.
- Limit the vehicle speed to 15 km/h and drive less than 1.5 km when towing to avoid serious damage to transmission. (for Automatic transmission vehicle).

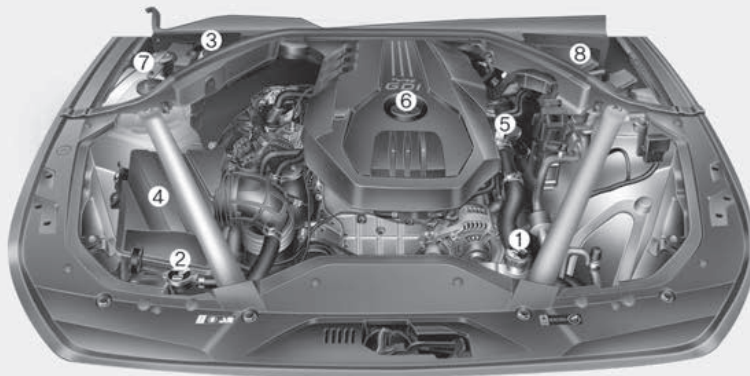
Maintenance

Engine compartment	7-3	Climate control air filter	7-24
Maintenance services	7-4	Filter inspection	7-24
Owner's responsibility	7-4	Filter replacement	7-24
Owner maintenance precautions	7-4	Wiper blades	7-25
Owner maintenance	7-5	Blade inspection	7-25
Owner maintenance schedule	7-6	Blade replacement	7-25
Scheduled maintenance services	7-7	Battery	7-27
Normal Maintenance Schedule	7-8	For best battery service	7-28
Maintenance Under Severe Usage and		Battery replacement	7-29
Low Mileage Conditions	7-11	Battery capacity label	7-29
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items	7-13	Battery recharging	7-29
Engine oil	7-16	Tyres and wheels	7-31
Checking the engine oil level	7-16	Tyre care	7-31
Checking the engine oil and filter	7-17	Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures	7-32
Engine coolant	7-18	Check tyre inflation pressure	7-33
Checking the engine coolant level	7-18	Tyre rotation	7-33
Changing the engine coolant	7-20	Wheel alignment and tyre balance	7-34
Brake fluid	7-21	Tyre replacement	7-35
Checking the brake fluid level	7-21	Wheel replacement	7-36
Washer fluid	7-22	Tyre traction	7-36
Checking the washer fluid level	7-22	Tyre maintenance	7-36
Air cleaner	7-23	Tyre sidewall labelling	7-36
Filter replacement	7-23	Low aspect ratio tyres	7-40

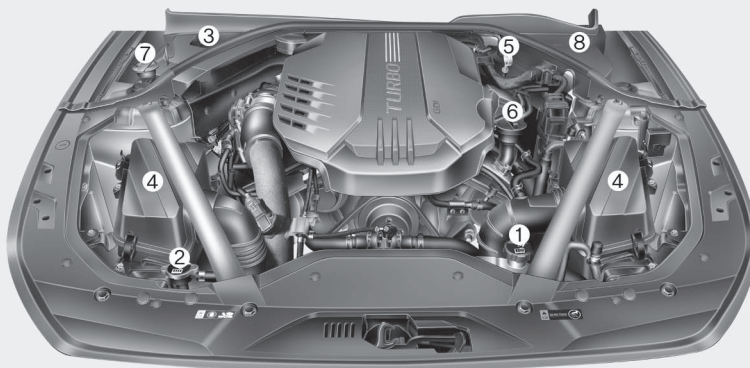
Fuses.....	7-41
Instrument panel fuse replacement	7-42
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement.....	7-43
Fuse/Relay panel description	7-45
Light bulbs.....	7-60
Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp and daytime running light bulb replacement	7-61
Side repeater lamp replacement	7-64
Rear combination lamp bulb replacement	7-65
High mounted stop lamp replacement.....	7-68
Licence plate light replacement	7-69
Interior light replacement	7-69
Appearance care	7-71
Exterior care	7-71
Interior care.....	7-76
Emission control system	7-79
Crankcase emission control system	7-79
Evaporative emission control system.....	7-79
Exhaust emission control system	7-80

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

■ Petrol Engine (Theta 2.0 T-GDI)



■ Petrol Engine (Lambda 3.3 T-GDI)



1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Radiator cap
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Air cleaner
5. Engine oil dipstick
6. Engine oil filler cap
7. Windscreen washer fluid reservoir
8. Fuse box

The actual engine compartment in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

OIK077001R/OIK017007R

MAINTENANCE SERVICES

You should exercise the utmost care to prevent damage to your vehicle and injury to yourself whenever performing any maintenance or inspection procedures.

We recommend you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised Genesis dealer. An authorised Genesis dealer meets Genesis vehicle's high service quality standards and receives technical support from Genesis vehicle in order to provide you with a high level of service satisfaction.

Owner's responsibility

Maintenance service and record retention are the owner's responsibility.

You should retain documents that show proper maintenance has been performed on your vehicle in accordance with the scheduled maintenance service charts shown on the following pages. You need this information to establish your compliance with the servicing and maintenance requirements of your vehicle warranties.

Detailed warranty information is provided in your Service Passport.

Repairs and adjustments required as a result of improper maintenance or a lack of required maintenance are not covered.

Owner maintenance precautions

Inadequate, incomplete or insufficient servicing may result in operational problems with your vehicle that could lead to vehicle damage, an accident, or personal injury. This chapter provides instructions only for the maintenance items that are easy to perform.

Several procedures can be done only by an authorised Genesis dealer with special tools.

Your vehicle should not be modified in any way. Such modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety or durability of your vehicle and may, in addition, violate conditions of the limited warranties covering the vehicle.

NOTICE

Improper owner maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Service Passport provided with the vehicle. If you're unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

OWNER MAINTENANCE

WARNING

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. If you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work, we recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer. **ALWAYS** follow these precautions for performing maintenance work:

- Park your vehicle on level ground. Shift the vehicle to P (Park), apply the parking brake, and press the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF position.
- Block the tyres (front and back) to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Remove loose clothing or jewellery that can become entangled in moving parts.

- If you must run the engine during maintenance, do so out doors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
- Keep flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery and fuel-related parts.

WARNING



Touching metal parts

Do not touch metal parts (including strut bars) whilst the engine is operating or hot. Doing so could result in serious personal injury. Turn the engine off and wait until the metal parts cool down to perform maintenance work on the vehicle.

The following lists are vehicle checks and inspections that should be performed by the owner or an authorised Genesis dealer at the frequencies indicated to help ensure safe, dependable operation of your vehicle.

Any adverse conditions should be brought to the attention of your dealer as soon as possible.

These Owner Maintenance vehicle checks are generally not covered by warranties and you may be charged for labour, parts and lubricants used.

Owner maintenance schedule

When you stop for fuel:

- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Check for low or under-inflated tyres.

WARNING

Be careful when checking your engine coolant level when the engine is hot. This may result in coolant being blown out of the opening and cause serious burns and other injuries.

Whilst operating your vehicle:

- Note any changes in the sound of the exhaust or any smell of exhaust fumes in the vehicle.
- Check for vibrations in the steering wheel. Notice if there is any increased steering effort or looseness in the steering wheel, or change in its straight-ahead position.
- Notice if your vehicle constantly turns slightly or “pulls” to one side when travelling on smooth, level road.
- When stopping, listen and check for unusual sounds, pulling to one side, increased brake pedal travel or “hard-to-push” brake pedal.
- If any slipping or changes in the operation of your transmission occurs, check the transmission fluid level.
- Check the automatic transmission P (Park) function.
- Check the parking brake.
- Check for fluid leaks under your vehicle (water dripping from the air conditioning system during or after use is normal).

At least monthly:

- Check coolant level in the engine coolant reservoir.
- Check the operation of all exterior lights, including the stoplights, turn signals and hazard warning flashers.
- Check the inflation pressures of all tyres including the spare for tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged.
- Check for loose wheel nuts.

At least twice a year: (i.e., every Spring and Autumn)

- Check radiator, heater and air conditioning hoses for leaks or damage.
- Check windscreen washer spray and wiper operation. Clean wiper blades with a clean cloth dampened with washer fluid.
- Check headlamp alignment.
- Check muffler, exhaust pipes, shields and clamps.
- Check the seat belts for wear and function.

At least once a year:

- Clean body and door drain holes.
- Lubricate door hinges and bonnet hinges.
- Lubricate door and bonnet locks and latches.
- Lubricate door rubber weather strips.
- Check the air conditioning system.
- Inspect and lubricate automatic transmission linkage and controls.
- Clean the battery and terminals.
- Check the brake fluid level.

SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE SERVICES

Follow the Normal Maintenance Schedule if the vehicle is usually operated where none of the following conditions apply. If any of the following conditions apply, you must follow the Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions.

- Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
- Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
- Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravel or salt-spread roads
- Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
- Driving in heavy dust conditions
- Driving in heavy traffic

- Driving on uphill, downhill, or mountain roads repeatedly
- Towing a trailer or using a camper, or roof rack
- Driving as a patrol car, taxi, or other commercial use of vehicle towing
- Driving over 170 km/h
- Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

If your vehicle is operated under the above conditions, you should inspect, replace or refill more frequently than the following Normal Maintenance Schedule. After the periods or distances shown in the chart, continue to follow the prescribed maintenance intervals.

Normal Maintenance Schedule

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
		Km x 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Engine oil and engine oil filter *1 *2			R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Drive belts *3				I		I		I		I
Intercooler, in/out hose, air intake hose			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel additives *4			Add every 10,000 km or 12 months							
Air cleaner filter			I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R
Spark plugs *5			Replace every 70,000 km or 84 months							
Valve clearance*5 *6			Inspect every 60,000 km or 72 months							
Vapour hose and fuel filler cap								I		
Fuel tank air filter								I		

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*1 : Check the engine oil level and for leaks every 500 km or before starting a long trip.

*2 : The engine oil level should be checked regularly and maintained properly. Operating with an insufficient amount of oil can damage the engine, and such damage is not covered by warranty.

*3 : Inspect drive belt tensioner, idler and alternator pulley and if necessary correct or replace.

*4 : If good quality petrols meet Europe Fuel standards (EN228) or equivalents including fuel additives is not available, one bottle of additive is recommended. Additives are available from your authorised Genesis dealer along with information on how to use them. Do not mix other additives.

*5 : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

*6 : Inspect for excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Normal Maintenance Schedule

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
		Km x 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Fuel filter ^{*7}								R		
Fuel line, hoses and connections								I		
Cooling system		Inspect coolant level for leaks every day At first, inspect 40,000 km or 48 months : after that, inspect every 20,000 km or 24 months								
Engine coolant ^{*8}		At first, replace at 210,000 km or 120 months : after that, replace every 30,000 km or 24 months ^{*5}								
Battery condition		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Parking brake		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

^{*5} : For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

^{*7} : The fuel filter is considered to be maintenance free but periodic inspection is recommended for this maintenance schedule depending on fuel quality. If there are some important matters like fuel flow restriction, surging, loss of power, or hard starting problems etc, we recommend replacing the fuel filter immediately regardless of maintenance schedule and consulting with an authorised Genesis Dealer for details.

^{*8} : When adding coolant, use only deionised water or soft water for your vehicle and never mix hard water in the coolant filled at the factory. An improper coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage. For your convenience, it can be replaced prior to it's interval when you do maintenance of other items.

Normal Maintenance Schedule

MAINTENANCE ITEM	MAINTENANCE INTERVALS	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
		Km x 1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80
Disc brakes and pads			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft and boots				I		I		I		I
Tyres (pressure & tread wear)			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front suspension ball joints			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Exhaust system				I		I		I		I
Air conditioner refrigerant			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air conditioner compressor			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Climate control air filter			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Automatic transmission fluid			No check, No service required							
Differential oil (rear) *9 *10	Without LSD							I		
	With LSD							R		
Propeller shaft					I			I		

I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace.

R : Replace or change.

*9 : Front/Rear differential oil should be changed anytime they have been submerged in water.

*10 : When replacing differential oil with LSD (Limited Slip Differential), use only specified LSD oil

Maintenance Under Severe Usage and Low Mileage Conditions

The following items must be serviced more frequently on vehicles mainly used under severe driving conditions. Refer to the chart below for the appropriate maintenance intervals.

R : Replace I : Inspect and if necessary, adjust, correct, clean or replace

Maintenance item	Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Engine oil and engine oil filter	R	5,000 km or 6 months	A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K
Air cleaner filter	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E
Spark plugs	R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	A, B, F, G, H, I, K
Steering gear rack, linkage and boots	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Front suspension ball joints	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G
Disc brakes and pads, calipers and rotors	I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, G, H

Maintenance item		Maintenance operation	Maintenance intervals	Driving condition
Parking brake		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, G, H
Driveshaft and boots		I	Inspect more frequently depending on the condition	C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J
Climate control air filter		R	Replace more frequently depending on the condition	C, E, G
Automatic transmission fluid		R	Every 100,000 km	A, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K
Differential oil (rear)	Without LSD	R	Every 120,000 km	C, E, G, H, I, J
	With LSD		Every 60,000 km	
Propeller shaft		I	Every 15,000 km or 12 months	C, E

Severe driving conditions

A : Repeatedly driving short distances of less than 8 km in normal temperatures or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures
 B : Extensive engine idling or low speed driving for long distances
 C : Driving on rough, dusty, muddy, unpaved, gravel or salt spread roads
 D : Driving in areas using salt or other corrosive materials or in very cold weather
 E : Driving in the heavy dust conditions

F : Driving in heavy dust conditions
 G : Driving uphill, downhill, or on mountain roads repeatedly
 H : Towing a trailer, or using a camper or roof rack
 I : Driving as a patrol car, taxi, commercial vehicle or vehicle towing
 J : Driving over 170 km/h
 K : Frequently driving in stop-and-go conditions

EXPLANATION OF SCHEDULED MAINTENANCE ITEMS

Engine oil and filter

The engine oil and filter should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. If the vehicle is being driven in severe conditions, more frequent oil and filter changes are required.

Drive belts

Inspect all drive belts for evidence of cuts, cracks, excessive wear or oil saturation and replace if necessary. Drive belts should be checked periodically for proper tension and adjusted as necessary.



CAUTION

When you are inspecting the belt, place the Engine Start/Stop button to the OFF or ACC position.

Fuel filter (cartridge)

A clogged filter can limit the speed at which the vehicle may be driven, damage the emission system and cause multiple issues such as hard starting.

If an excessive amount of foreign matter accumulates in the fuel tank, the filter may require replacement more frequently.

After installing a new filter, run the engine for several minutes, and check for leaks at the connections. We recommend that the fuel filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections

Check the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections for leakage and damage. We recommend that the fuel lines, fuel hoses and connections be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Vapour hose and fuel filler cap

The vapour hose and fuel filler cap should be inspected at those intervals specified in the maintenance schedule. Make sure that a new vapour hose or fuel filler cap is correctly replaced.

Vacuum crankcase ventilation hoses (if equipped)

Inspect the surface of hoses for evidence of heat and/or mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling indicate deterioration. Particular attention should be paid to examine those hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

Inspect the hose routing to ensure that the hoses do not come in contact with any heat source, sharp edges or moving component which might cause heat damage or mechanical wear. Inspect all hose connections, such as clamps and couplings, to make sure they are secure, and that no leaks are present. Hoses should be replaced immediately if there is any evidence of deterioration or damage.

Air cleaner filter

We recommend that the air cleaner filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Spark plugs

Make sure to install new spark plugs of the correct heat range.

WARNING

Do not disconnect and inspect spark plugs when the engine is hot. You may burn yourself.

Valve clearance

Inspect excessive valve noise and/or engine vibration and adjust if necessary. We recommend that the system be serviced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Cooling system

Check the cooling system parts, such as radiator, coolant reservoir, hoses and connections for leakage and damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Engine coolant

The coolant should be changed at the intervals specified in the maintenance schedule.

Automatic transmission fluid

Automatic transmission fluid should not be checked under normal usage conditions.

We recommend that the automatic transmission fluid is changed by an authorised Genesis dealer according to the maintenance schedule.

i Information

Automatic transmission fluid colour is red when new.

As the vehicle is driven, the automatic transmission fluid will begin to look darker.

This is a normal condition. It does not need to be replaced based on the colour change.

NOTICE

The use of a non-specified fluid could result in transmission malfunction and failure.

Use only specified automatic transmission fluid.
(Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in chapter 8.)

Brake hoses and lines

Visually check for proper installation, chafing, cracks, deterioration and any leakage. Replace any deteriorated or damaged parts immediately.

Brake fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir. The level should be between “MIN” and “MAX” marks on the side of the reservoir. Use only hydraulic brake fluid conforming to DOT 4 specification.

Parking brake

Inspect the parking brake system including the parking brake and cables.

Brake pads, calipers and rotors

Check the pads for excessive wear, discs for run out and wear, and calipers for fluid leakage.

Suspension mounting bolts

Check the suspension connections for looseness or damage. Retighten to the specified torque.

Steering gear rack, linkage & boots/lower arm ball joint

With the vehicle stopped and engine off, check for excessive free-play in the steering wheel.

Check the linkage for bends or damage. Check the dust boots and ball joints for deterioration, cracks, or damage. Replace any damaged parts.

Drive shafts and boots

Check the drive shafts, boots and clamps for cracks, deterioration, or damage. Replace any damaged parts and, if necessary, repack the grease.

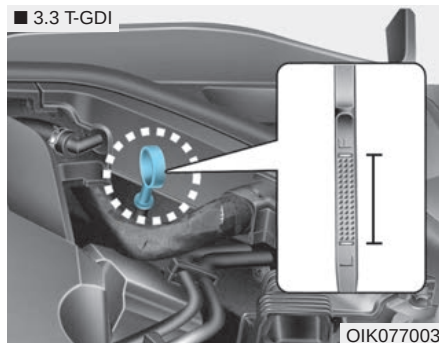
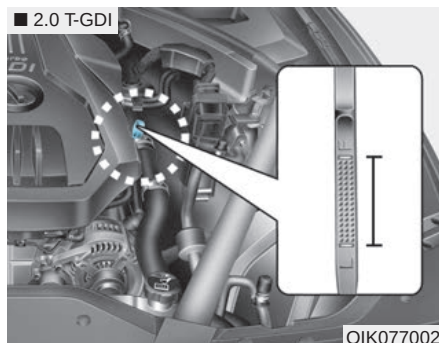
Air conditioning refrigerant/compressor

Check the air conditioning lines and connections for leakage and damage.

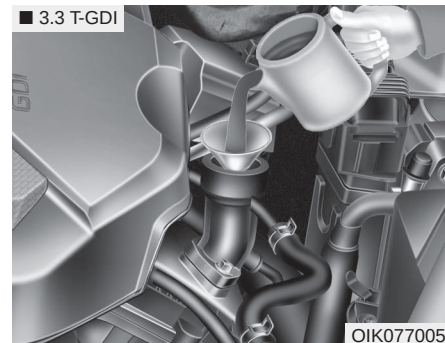
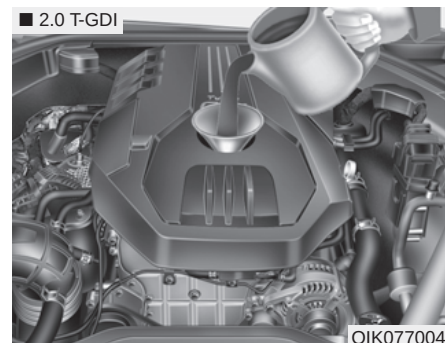
ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil level

1. Follow all of the oil manufacturer's precautions.
2. Be sure the vehicle is on the level ground in P (Park) with the parking brake set. If possible, block the wheels.
3. Turn the engine on and allow the engine to reach normal operating temperature.
4. Turn the engine off and wait for a few minutes (about 5 minutes) for the oil to return to the oil pan.
5. Pull the dipstick out, wipe it clean, and re-insert it fully.



6. Pull the dipstick out again and check the level. The level should be between F (Full) and L (Low).



7. If it is near or at L, add enough oil to bring the level to F. Do not over-fill.

Use only the specified engine oil.
(Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in chapter 8.)

⚠ WARNING**Radiator hose**

Be very careful not to touch the radiator hose when checking or adding engine oil as it may be hot enough to burn you.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to your engine:

- Do not overfill with engine oil. Add oil in small quantities and recheck level to ensure engine is not overfilled.
- Do not spill engine oil when adding or changing engine oil. Use a funnel to help prevent oil from being spilled on engine components. Wipe off spilled oil immediately.

Checking the engine oil and filter

We recommend that the engine oil and filter be replaced by an authorised Genesis dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Used engine oil may cause irritation or cancer of the skin if left in contact with the skin for prolonged periods of time. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing your hands thoroughly with soap and warm water as soon as possible after handling used oil.

ENGINE COOLANT

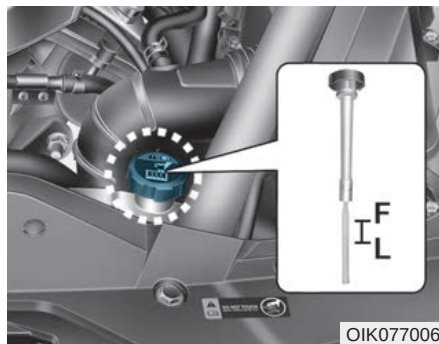
The high-pressure cooling system has a reservoir filled with year-round antifreeze coolant. The reservoir is filled at the factory.

Check the antifreeze protection and coolant concentration level at least once a year, at the beginning of the winter season, and before travelling to a colder climate.

NOTICE

- **When the engine overheats from low engine coolant, suddenly adding engine coolant may cause cracks in the engine. To prevent damage, add engine coolant slowly in small quantities.**
- **Do not drive without engine coolant. It may cause water pump failure and engine seizure, etc.**

Checking the engine coolant level



Check the condition and connections of all cooling system hoses and heater hoses. Replace any swollen or deteriorated hoses.

The coolant level should be filled between F (Full) and L (Low) marks on the coolant level gauge when the engine is cool.

If the coolant level is low, add enough distilled (deionised) water. Bring the level to F (Full) but do not overfill.

If frequent additions are required, we recommend that the system be inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure the coolant cap is properly closed after refilling coolant. Otherwise the engine could be overheated whilst driving.

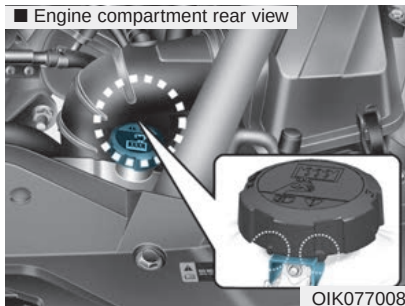
■ Engine compartment front view



OTL075062

1. **Check if the coolant cap label is straight in front.**

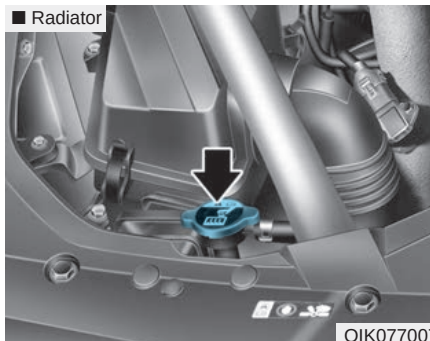
■ Engine compartment rear view



OIK077008

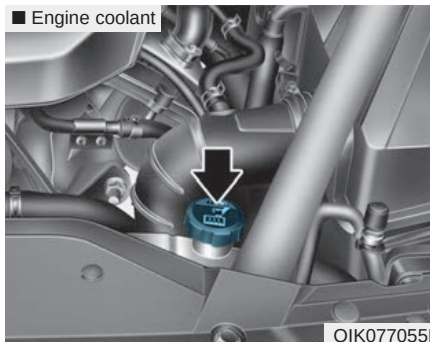
2. Make sure that the tiny protrusions inside the coolant cap are securely interlocked.

■ Radiator



OIK077007

■ Engine coolant



OIK077055L

⚠ WARNING



Never remove the radiator cap/engine coolant cap or the drain plug whilst the engine and radiator are hot. Hot coolant and steam may blow out under pressure, causing serious injury.

Turn the engine off and wait until the engine cools down. Use extreme care when removing the radiator cap. Wrap a thick towel around it, and turn it anti-clockwise slowly to the first stop. Step back whilst the pressure is released from the cooling system. When you are sure all the pressure has been released, press down on the cap, using a thick towel, and continue turning anti-clockwise to remove it.

WARNING



The electric motor for the cooling fan may continue to operate or start up when the engine is not running and can cause serious injury.

Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan blades of the cooling fan.

Recommended engine coolant

- When adding coolant, use only distilled (deionised) water for your vehicle and never mix hard water with the coolant filled at the factory. An incorrect coolant mixture can result in serious malfunction or engine damage.
- The engine in your vehicle has aluminium engine parts and must be protected by an ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant to prevent corrosion and freezing.
- DO NOT USE alcohol or methanol coolant or mix them with the specified coolant.

- Do not use a solution that contains more than 60% antifreeze or less than 35% antifreeze, as this would reduce the effectiveness of the solution.

For mixture percentage, refer to the following table.

Ambient Temperature	Mixture Percentage (volume)	
	Antifreeze	Water
-15°C (5°F)	35	65
-25°C (-13°F)	40	60
-35°C (-31°F)	50	50
-45°C (-49°F)	60	40

Information

If in doubt about the mix ratio, a 50% water and 50% antifreeze mix is the easiest to mix together as it will be the same quantity of each. It is suitable to use for most temperature ranges of -35°C (-31°F) and higher.

Changing the engine coolant

We recommend that coolant is changed by an authorised Genesis dealer according to the Maintenance Schedule at the beginning of this chapter.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine parts, put a thick towel around the radiator cap before refilling the coolant to prevent the coolant from overflowing into engine parts, such as the alternator.

WARNING

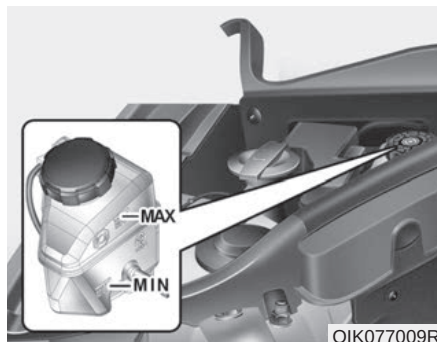
Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir.

Engine coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Engine coolant may also cause damage to paint and body trim.

BRAKE FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Checking the brake fluid level



Check the fluid level in the reservoir periodically. The fluid level should be between MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir.

Before removing the reservoir cap and adding brake fluid, clean the area around the reservoir cap thoroughly to prevent brake fluid contamination.

If the level is low, add fluid to the MAX level. The level will fall with accumulated kilometres. This is a normal condition associated with the wear of the brake linings.

If the fluid level is excessively low, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

i Information

Use only the specified brake fluid. Refer to “Recommended lubricants and capacities” in chapter 8.

i Information

Before removing the brake fluid filler cap, read the warning on the cap.

i Information

Clean the filler cap before removing. Use only DOT 4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

⚠ WARNING

If the brake system requires frequent additions of fluid this could indicate a leak in the brake system. We recommend that the vehicle be inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Do not allow brake fluid to come in contact with your eyes. If brake fluid comes in contact with your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention.

NOTICE

- Do not allow brake fluid to contact the vehicle's body paint, as paint damage will result.
- Brake fluid, which has been exposed to open air for an extended time should never be used as its quality cannot be guaranteed. It should be disposed of properly.
- Don't put in the wrong kind of fluid. A few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage system parts.

WASHER FLUID

Checking the washer fluid level



Check the fluid level in the washer fluid reservoir and add fluid if necessary. Plain water may be used if washer fluid is not available. However, use washer solvent with antifreeze characteristics in cold climates to prevent freezing.

WARNING

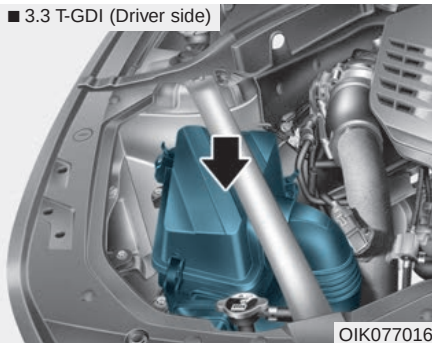
To prevent serious injury or death, take the following safety precautions when using washer fluid:

- Do not use engine coolant or antifreeze in the washer fluid reservoir. Engine coolant can severely obscure visibility when sprayed on the windscreen and may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident or damage to paint and body trim.
- Do not allow sparks or flames to contact the washer fluid or the washer fluid reservoir. Washer fluid may contain alcohol and can be flammable.
- Do not drink washer fluid and avoid contact with skin. Washer fluid is poisonous to humans and animals.
- Keep washer fluid away from children and animals.

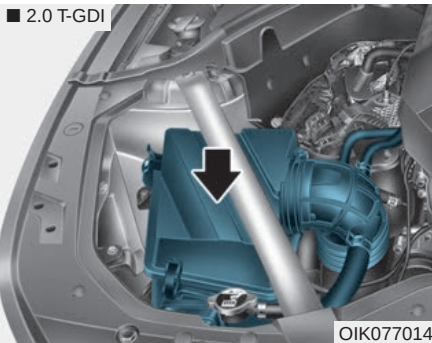
AIR CLEANER

Filter replacement

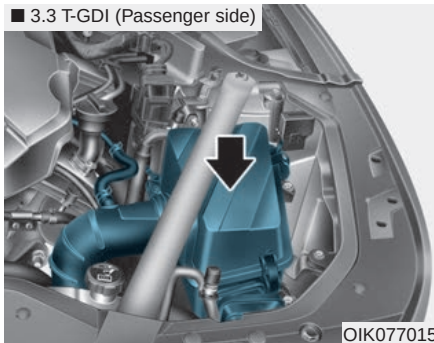
■ 3.3 T-GDI (Driver side)



■ 2.0 T-GDI



■ 3.3 T-GDI (Passenger side)



Do not attempt to wash or to rinse it, as water will damage the filter.

If soiled, the air cleaner filter must be replaced.

We recommend that you visit an authorised Genesis dealer to replace the air cleaner filter.

i Information

If the vehicle is operated in extremely dusty or sandy areas, replace the element more often than the usual recommended intervals (refer to “Maintenance Under Severe Usage Conditions” in this chapter).

NOTICE

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. This will result in excessive engine wear.
- When removing the air cleaner filter, be careful that dust or dirt does not enter the air intake, or damage may result.
- We recommend that you use parts for replacement from an authorised Genesis dealer.

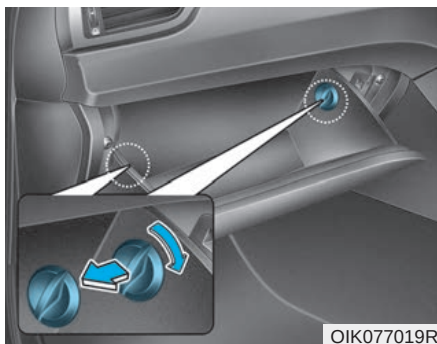
CLIMATE CONTROL AIR FILTER

Filter inspection

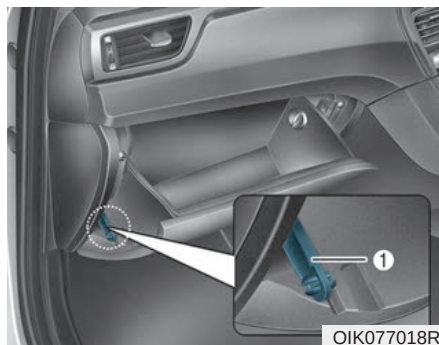
If the vehicle is operated in severely air-polluted cities or on dusty rough roads for a long period, it should be inspected more frequently and replaced earlier. When you, the owner, replace the climate control air filter, replace it performing the following procedure, and be careful to avoid damaging other components.

Replace the filter according to the Maintenance Schedule.

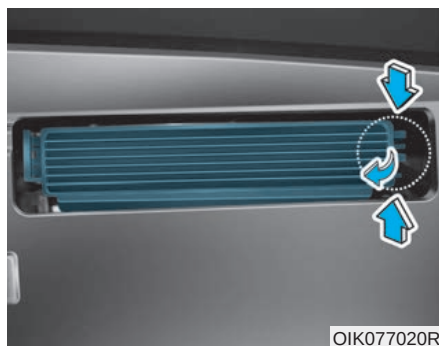
Filter replacement



1. With the glove box open, remove the stoppers on both sides.



2. Remove the support strap (1).



3. Press and hold the lock on the right side of the cover.

4. Pull out the cover.



5. Replace the climate control air filter.

6. Reassemble in the reverse order of disassembly.

NOTICE

Install a new climate control air filter in the correct direction with the arrow symbol(↓) facing downwards, otherwise, it may be noisy and the effectiveness of the filter may be reduced.

WIPER BLADES

Blade inspection

Contamination of either the windscreen or the wiper blades with foreign matter can reduce the effectiveness of the windscreen wipers.

Common sources of contamination are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the window and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent, and rinse thoroughly with clean water.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, arms or other components, do not:

- Use petrol, kerosene, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.
- Attempt to move the wipers manually.
- Use non-specified wiper blades.

i Information

Commercial hot waxes applied by automatic car washes have been known to make the windscreen difficult to clean.

i Information

Wiper blades are a consumable item. Normal wear of the wipers may not be covered by your vehicle warranty.

Blade replacement

When the wipers no longer clean adequately, the blades may be worn or cracked, and require replacement.

NOTICE

- To prevent damage to the wiper arms or other components, do not attempt to move the wipers manually.
- In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, the wiper arms should only be lifted when in the fully up position.
- Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey.

NOTICE

The use of a non-specified wiper blade could result in wiper malfunction and failure.

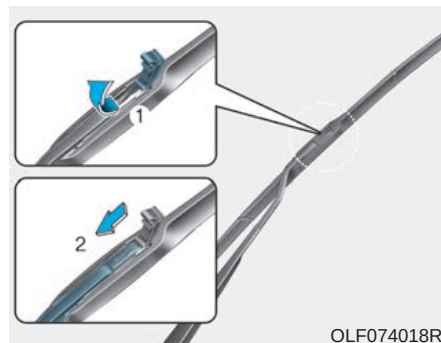
Front windscreen wiper service positions



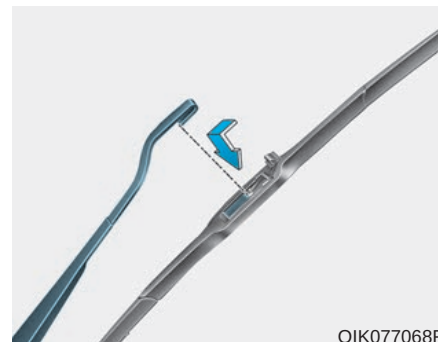
1. Within 20 seconds of turning off the engine, lift up and hold the wiper lever to the MIST position for about 2 seconds until the wipers move to the top wipe position.
2. At this time you can lift the wipers off the windscreen.
3. Gently put the wipers back down onto the windscreen.
4. Turn the wipers to any ON position to return the wipers to the bottom resting position.

Front windscreen wiper blade replacement

1. Put the front windscreen wipers into the service position.



2. Lift up the wiper blade clip. Then pull down the blade assembly and remove it.



3. Install the new blade assembly.
4. Return the wiper arm on the windscreen.

BATTERY

WARNING

To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** to you or bystanders, always follow these precautions when working near or handling the battery:



Always read and follow instructions carefully when handling a battery.



Wear eye protection designed to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.



Hydrogen is always present in battery cells, is highly combustible, and may explode if ignited.



Keep batteries out of reach of children.



Batteries contain sulphuric acid which is highly corrosive.

Do not allow acid to contact your eyes, skin or clothing.

If acid gets into your eyes, flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If acid gets on your skin, thoroughly wash the area. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, get medical attention immediately.

- When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the case may cause battery acid to leak. Lift with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.
- Do not attempt to jump start your vehicle if your battery is frozen.
- **NEVER** attempt to recharge the battery when the vehicle's battery cables are connected to the battery.

- The electrical ignition system works with high voltage. **NEVER** touch these components with the engine running or when the Engine Start/Stop button is in the ON position.

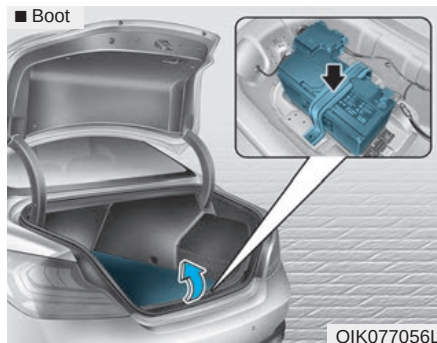
NOTICE

- When you do not use the vehicle for a long time in a low temperature area, disconnect the battery and keep it indoors.
- Always charge the battery fully to prevent battery case damage in low temperature areas.

NOTICE

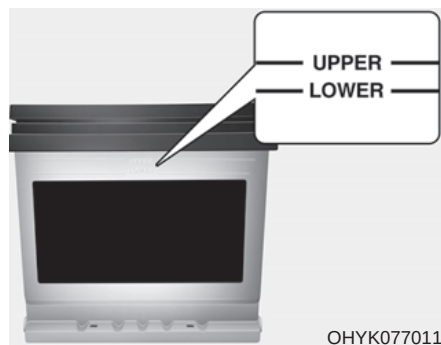
If you connect unauthorised electronic devices to the battery, the battery may be discharged. Never use unauthorised devices.

For best battery service



- Keep the battery securely mounted.
- Keep the battery top clean and dry.
- Keep the terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse any spilled electrolyte from the battery immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.
- If the vehicle is not going to be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery cables.

i Information - For batteries marked with **UPPER** and **LOWER**



If your vehicle is equipped with a battery marked with **LOWER (MIN)** and **UPPER (MAX)** on the side, you should check the electrolyte level.

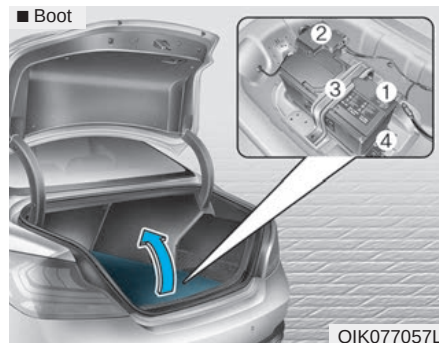
The electrolyte level should be between **LOWER (MIN)** and **UPPER (MAX)**. When the electrolyte level is low, add distilled (or de-mineralised) water. (Never add sulphuric acid or other electrolyte).

Be careful not to spill distilled (or de-mineralised) water over the battery surface or other adjacent components.

Also, do not overfill the battery cells.

If not, it may corrode the battery or other components. Finally, securely close the cell cap. However, we recommend you to contact an authorised Genesis dealer for better battery service.

Battery replacement



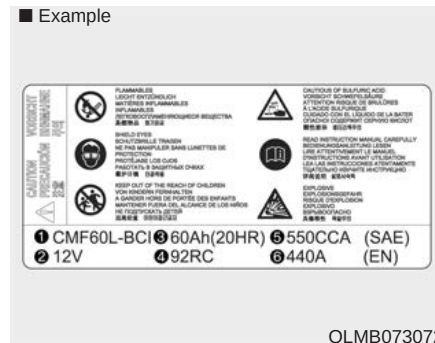
When replacing the battery, disconnect the negative (-) cable (1) and remove the positive (+) battery fuse box (2). Remove the boot panel support bracket and then the battery mounting bracket (4).

⚠ WARNING



Do not touch the vehicle's lower area of the boot when the engine is running or hot. It may cause serious injury. Turn the engine OFF and wait until the area is cooled before replacing the battery.

Battery capacity label



The actual battery label in the vehicle may differ from the illustration.

1. CMF60L-BCI : The Genesis vehicle model name of battery
2. 12V : The nominal voltage
3. 60Ah(20HR) : The nominal capacity (in Ampere hours)
4. 92RC : The nominal reserve capacity (in min.)
5. 550CCA : The cold-test current in amperes by SAE
6. 440A : The cold-test current in amperes by EN

Battery recharging

By battery charger

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free, calcium-based battery.

- If the battery becomes discharged over a short time (because, for example, the headlamps or interior lights were left on whilst the vehicle was not in use), recharge it by slow charging (trickle) for 10 hours.
- If the battery gradually discharges because of high electrical load when the vehicle is being used, recharge it at 20-30A for two hours.

WARNING

Always follow these instructions when recharging your vehicle's battery to avoid the risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH** from explosions or acid burns:

- Before performing maintenance or recharging the battery, turn off all accessories and stop the engine.
- Keep all flames, sparks, or smoking materials away from the battery.
- Always work outdoors or in an area with plenty of ventilation.
- Wear eye protection when checking the battery during charging.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle and placed in a well ventilated area.
- Watch the battery during charging, and stop or reduce the charging rate if the battery cells begin boiling violently.

- The negative battery cable must be removed first and installed last when the battery is disconnected. Disconnect the battery charger in the following order:

- (1) Turn off the battery charger main switch.
- (2) Unhook the negative clamp from the negative battery terminal.
- (3) Unhook the positive clamp from the positive battery terminal.

- We recommend that you use batteries for replacement from an authorised Genesis dealer.

By jump starting

After a jump start from a good battery, drive the vehicle for 20-30 minutes before it is shutoff. The vehicle may not restart if you shut it off before the battery had a chance to adequately recharge. See "Jump Starting" in chapter 6 for more information on jump starting procedures.

Information



An inappropriately disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Dispose of the battery according to your local law(s) or regulation.

Reset items

The following items may need to be reset after the battery has been discharged or the battery has been disconnected.

- Auto up/down window
- Sunroof
- Trip computer
- Climate control system
- Clock

TYRES AND WHEELS

WARNING

Tyre failure may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. To reduce risk of **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**, take the following precautions:

- Inspect your tyres monthly for proper inflation as well as wear and damage.
- The recommended cold tyre pressure for your vehicle can be found in this manual and on the tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar. Always use a tyre pressure gauge to measure tyre pressure. Tyres with too much or too little pressure wear unevenly causing poor handling.
- Check the pressure of the spare every time you check the pressure of the other tyres on your vehicle.

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, or traction.
- **ALWAYS** replace tyres with the same size as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.

Tyre care

For proper maintenance, safety, and maximum fuel economy, you must always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the load limits and weight distribution recommended for your vehicle.



OIK087002R

All specifications (sizes and pressures) can be found on a label attached to the driver's side centre pillar.

Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures

All tyre pressures (including the spare) should be checked when the tyres are cold. "Cold tyres" means the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or less than 1.6 km.

Warm tyres normally exceed recommended cold tyre pressures by 28 to 41 kPa (4 to 6 psi). Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure or the tyres will be under-inflated. For recommended inflation pressure, refer to "Tyre and Wheels" in chapter 8.

WARNING

Recommended pressures must be maintained for the best ride, vehicle handling, and minimum tyre wear.

Over-inflation or under-inflation can reduce tyre life, adversely affect vehicle handling, and lead to sudden tyre failure that could result in loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Severe under-inflation can lead to severe heat build-up, causing blowouts, tread separation and other tyre failures that can result in the loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. This risk is much higher on hot days and when driving for long periods at high speeds.

CAUTION

- **Under-inflation results in excessive wear, poor handling and reduced fuel economy. Wheel deformation is also possible. Keep your tyre pressures at the proper levels. If a tyre frequently needs refilling, we recommend it be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.**
- **Over-inflation produces a harsh ride, excessive wear at the centre of the tyre tread, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.**

Check tyre inflation pressure

Check your tyres, including the spare tyre, once a month or more.

How to check

Use a good quality tyre pressure gauge to check tyre pressure. You can not tell if your tyres are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tyres may look properly inflated when they are under-inflated.

Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem. Press the tyre gauge firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tyre inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the tyre and loading information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended pressure. Make sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

If you overfill the tyre, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the centre of the tyre valve. Recheck the tyre pressure with the tyre gauge. Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture could get into the valve core and cause air leakage. If a valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

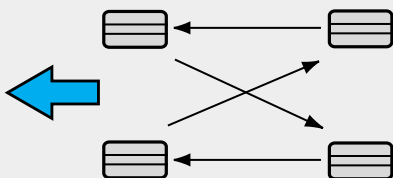
Tyre rotation

To equalise tread wear, Genesis vehicle recommended that the tyres be rotated according to the maintenance schedule or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, check the tyres for correct balance.

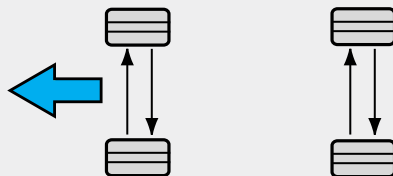
When rotating tyres, check for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by incorrect tyre pressure, improper wheel alignment, out-of-balance wheels, severe braking or severe cornering. Look for bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tyre. Replace the tyre if you find any of these conditions. Replace the tyre if fabric or cord is visible. After rotation, be sure to bring the front and rear tyre pressures to specification and check wheel nut tightness (proper torque is 11~13 kgf·m [79~94 lbf·ft]).

■ 18inch tyre



ODH073802

■ 19inch tyre



ODH073803

Disc brake pads should be inspected for wear whenever tyres are rotated.

i Information

The outside and inside of the unsymmetrical tyre is distinguishable. When installing an unsymmetrical tyre, be sure to install the side marked "outside" facing the outside. If the side marked "inside" is installed on the outside, it will have a negative effect on vehicle performance.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use the compact spare tyre for tyre rotation.
- Do not mix bias ply and radial ply tyres under any circumstances. This may cause unusual handling characteristics that may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Wheel alignment and tyre balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tyre life and best overall performance.

In most cases, you will not need to have your wheels aligned again. However, if you notice unusual tyre wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset.

If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

NOTICE

Incorrect wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminium wheels. Use only approved wheel weights.

Tyre replacement



If the tyre is worn evenly, a tread wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1.6 mm of tread left on the tyre. Replace the tyre when this happens.

Do not wait for the band to appear across the entire tread before replacing the tyre.

CAUTION

When replacing the tyres, recheck and tighten the wheel nuts after driving about 1,000 km. If the steering wheel shakes or the vehicle vibrates whilst driving, the tyre is out of balance. Align the tyre balance. If the problem is not solved, we recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY:

- Replace tyres that are worn, show uneven wear, or are damaged. Worn tyres can cause loss of braking effectiveness, steering control, and traction.

- Always replace tyres with the same size as each tyre that was originally supplied with this vehicle. Using tyres and wheels other than the recommended sizes could cause unusual handling characteristics, poor vehicle control, or negatively affect your vehicle's Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) resulting in a serious accident.
- It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that is not possible, or necessary, then replace the two front or two rear tyres as a pair. Replacing just one tyre can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.
- Tyres degrade over time, even when they are not being used. Regardless of the remaining tread, we recommend that tyres be replaced after six (6) years of normal service.

- Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process. Failure to follow this warning may cause sudden tyre failure, which could lead to a loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Compact spare tyre replacement

A compact spare tyre has a shorter tread life than a regular size tyre. Replace it when you can see the tread wear indicator bars on the tyre. The replacement compact spare tyre should be the same size and design tyre as the one provided with your new vehicle and should be mounted on the same compact spare tyre wheel. The compact spare tyre is not designed to be mounted on a regular size wheel, and the compact spare tyre wheel is not designed for mounting a regular size tyre.

⚠ WARNING

The original tyre should be repaired or replaced as soon as possible to avoid failure of the spare and loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident. The compact spare tyre is for emergency use only. Do not operate your vehicle over 80 km/h when using the compact spare tyre.

Tyre replacement

When replacing the wheels for any reason, make sure the new wheels are equivalent to the original factory units in diameter, rim width and offset.

Tyre traction

Tyre traction can be reduced if you drive on worn tyres, tyres that are improperly inflated or on slippery road surfaces. Tyres should be replaced when tread wear indicators appear. To reduce the possibility of losing control, slow down whenever there is rain, snow or ice on the road.

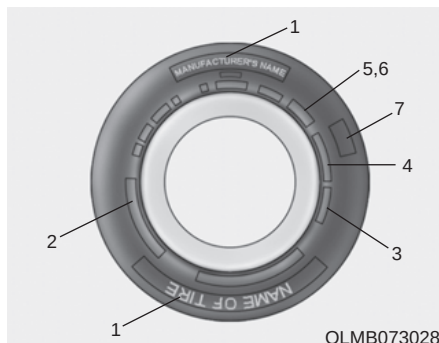
Tyre maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tyre wear. If you find a tyre is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

When you have new tyres installed, make sure they are balanced. This will increase vehicle ride comfort and tyre life. Additionally, a tyre should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel.

Tyre sidewall labelling

This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tyre and also provides the tyre identification number (TIN) for safety standard certification. The TIN can be used to identify the tyre in case of a recall.



1. Manufacturer or brand name

Manufacturer or brand name is shown.

2. Tyre size designation

A tyre's sidewall is marked with a tyre size designation. You will need this information when selecting replacement tyres for your vehicle. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the tyre size designation mean.

Example tyre size designation:

(These numbers are provided as an example only; your tyre size designator could vary depending on your vehicle.)

225/45R18 95Y

225 - Tyre width in millimetres.

45 - Aspect ratio. The tyre's section height as a percentage of its width.

R - Tyre construction code (Radial).

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

95 - Load Index, a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tyre can carry.

Y - Speed Rating Symbol. See the speed rating chart in this section for additional information.

Wheel size designation

Wheels are also marked with important information that you need if you ever have to replace one. The following explains what the letters and numbers in the wheel size designation mean.

Example wheel size designation:

8.0J x 18

8.0 - Rim width in inches.

J - Rim contour designation.

18 - Rim diameter in inches.

Tyre speed ratings

The chart below lists many of the different speed ratings currently being used for passenger vehicle tyres. The speed rating is part of the tyre size designation on the sidewall of the tyre. This symbol corresponds to that tyre's designed maximum safe operating speed.

Speed Rating Symbol	Maximum Speed
S	180 km/h
T	190 km/h
H	210 km/h
V	240 km/h
W	270km/h
Y	300km/h

3. Checking tyre life (TIN : Tyre Identification Number)

Any tyres that are over six years old, based on the manufacturing date, (including the spare tyre) should be replaced by new ones. You can find the manufacturing date on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the inside of the wheel), displaying the DOT Code. The DOT Code is a series of numbers on a tyre consisting of numbers and English letters. The manufacturing date is designated by the last four digits (characters) of the DOT code.

DOT : XXXX XXXX 0000

The front part of the DOT shows a plant code number, tyre size and tread pattern and the last four numbers indicate week and year manufactured.

For example:

DOT XXXX XXXX 1520 represents that the tyre was produced in the 15th week of 2020.

4. Tyre ply composition and material

The number of layers or plies of rubber-coated fabric in the tyre. Tyre manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tyre, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. The letter "R" means radial ply construction; the letter "D" means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter "B" means belted-bias ply construction.

5. Maximum permissible inflation pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should be put in the tyre. Do not exceed the maximum permissible inflation pressure. Refer to the Tyre and Loading Information label for recommended inflation pressure.

6. Maximum load rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tyre. When replacing the tyres on the vehicle, always use a tyre that has the same load rating as the factory installed tyre.

7. Uniform tyre quality grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tyre sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example:

TREADWEAR 200

TRACTION AA

TEMPERATURE A

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tyre when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tyre graded 150 would wear one-and-a-half times ($1\frac{1}{2}$) as well on the government course as a tyre graded 100.

The relative performance of tyres depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

These grades are molded on the sidewalls of passenger vehicle tyres. The tyres available as standard or optional equipment on your vehicle may vary with respect to grade.

Traction - AA, A, B & C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tyre's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tyre marked C may have poor traction performance.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tyre is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature - A, B & C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), then B and C representing the tyre's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tyre to degenerate and reduce tyre life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tyre failure. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tyre is established for a tyre that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, over-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build-up and possible sudden tyre failure. This may cause loss of vehicle control resulting in an accident.

Low aspect ratio tyres

Low aspect ratio tyres, the aspect ratio is lower than 50, are provided for sporty looks.

Because low aspect ratio tyres are optimised for handling and braking, their sidewall is a little stiffer than a standard tyre. Also low aspect ratio tyres tend to be wider and consequently have a greater contact patch with the road surface. In some instances they may generate more road noise compared with standard tyres.

CAUTION

Because the sidewall of a low aspect ratio tyre is shorter than a standard tyre, the rim of the wheel and the tyre itself is more easily susceptible to damage. Use caution when driving and follow the guidelines below to help minimise damage to the wheel and tyre:

- When driving on a rough road or driving off a road, be careful not to damage the tyres and wheels. After driving, inspect the tyres and wheels.
- When passing over a pothole, speed bump, manhole, or kerb stone, drive the vehicle slowly so as not to damage the tyres and wheels.
- If the tyre is subjected to a severe impact, we recommend you have the tyre and wheel inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

- Inspect the tyre condition and pressure every 3,000 km to prevent tyre damage.
- It is not easy to recognise tyre damage with your own eyes. But if there is the slightest hint of tyre damage, have the tyre checked or replaced because the tyre damage may cause air leakage from the tyre.
- If the tyre is damaged by driving on a rough road, off road, pothole, manhole, or kerb stone, it will not be covered by the warranty.

FUSES

■ Blade type



Normal



Blown

■ Cartridge type

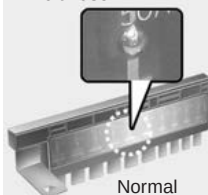


Normal

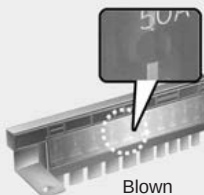


Blown

■ Multi fuse



Normal



Blown

■ Fusible link



Normal



Blown

OCK077071

A vehicle's electrical system is protected from electrical overload damage by fuses.

This vehicle has 2 (or 3) fuse panels, one located in the driver's side panel bolster, the other in the engine compartment.

If any of your vehicle's lights, accessories, or controls do not work, check the appropriate circuit fuse. If a fuse has blown, the element inside the fuse will be melted or broken.

If the electrical system does not work, first check the driver's side fuse panel. Before replacing a blown fuse, turn the engine and all switches off, and then disconnect the negative battery cable. Always replace a blown fuse with one of the same rating.

If the replacement fuse blows, this indicates an electrical problem. Avoid using the system involved and immediately consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

i Information

Four kinds of fuses are used: blade type for lower amperage rating, cartridge type, multi fuse and fusible link for higher amperage ratings.

⚠ WARNING

- **NEVER** replace a fuse with anything but another fuse of the same rating.
- A higher capacity fuse could cause damage and possibly cause a fire.
- Do not install a wire or aluminium foil instead of the proper fuse - even as a temporary repair. It may cause extensive wiring damage and possibly a fire.

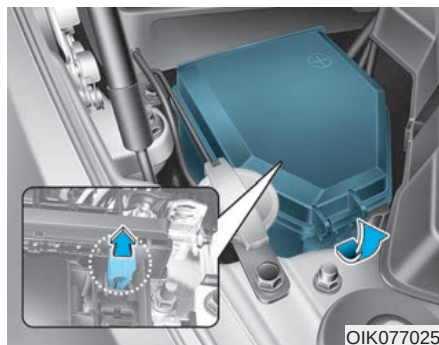
NOTICE

Do not use a screwdriver or any other metal object to remove fuses because it may cause a short circuit and damage the system.

Instrument panel fuse replacement



1. Turn the engine off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Open the fuse panel cover.
4. Refer to the label on the inside of the fuse panel cover to locate the suspected fuse location.

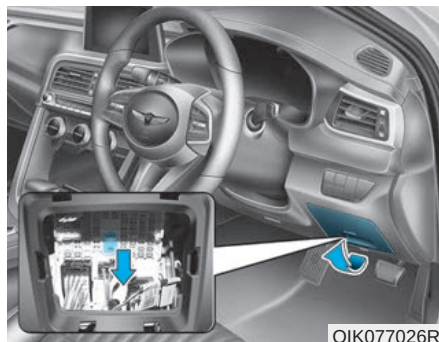


5. Pull the suspected fuse straight out. Use the removal tool provided in the engine compartment fuse panel.
6. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. Spare fuses are provided in the instrument panel fuse panels (or in the engine compartment fuse panel).
7. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

In an emergency, if you do not have a spare fuse, use a fuse of the same rating from a circuit you may not need for operating the vehicle, such as the cigarette lighter fuse.

If the headlamps or other electrical components do not work and the fuses are undamaged, check the fuse panel in the engine compartment. If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced with the same rating.

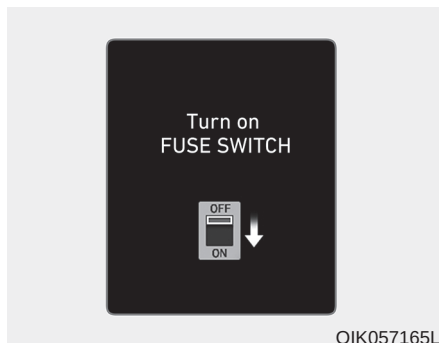
Fuse switch



Always, place the fuse switch to the ON position.

If you move the switch to the OFF position, some items such as the audio system and digital clock must be reset and the smart key may not work properly.

Information

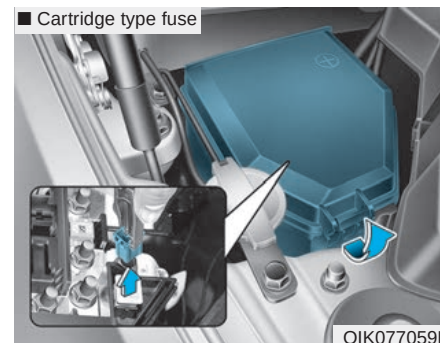
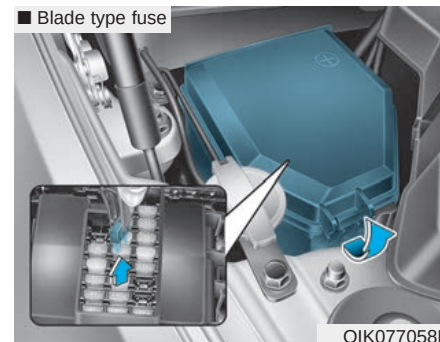


If the fuse switch is OFF, “Turn on FUSE SWITCH” message will appear.

NOTICE

- Always place the fuse switch in the ON position whilst driving the vehicle.
- Place the fuse switch in the OFF position when the vehicle is parked more than a month to prevent battery discharge.
- Do not move the transportation fuse switch repeatedly. The fuse switch may be damaged.

Engine compartment panel fuse replacement



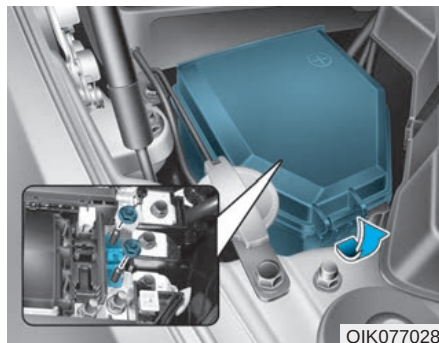
1. Turn the engine off.
2. Turn all other switches off.

3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling up.
4. Check the removed fuse; replace it if it is blown. To remove or insert the fuse, use the fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel.
5. Push in a new fuse of the same rating, and make sure it fits tightly in the clips. If it fits loosely, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

NOTICE

After checking the fuse panel in the engine compartment, securely install the fuse panel cover. You may hear a clicking sound if the cover is securely latched. If it is not securely latched, electrical failure may occur from water contact.

Main fuse

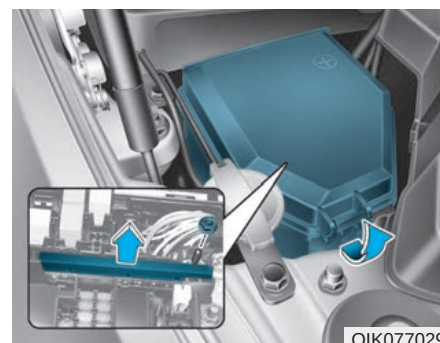


1. Turn the engine off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling it up.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

i Information

If the main fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

Multi fuse



If the multi fuse is blown, it must be removed as follows:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Turn all other switches off.
3. Remove the fuse panel cover by pressing the tab and pulling it up.
4. Remove the nuts shown in the picture above.
5. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same rating.
6. Reinstall in the reverse order of removal.

i Information

If the multi fuse is blown, we recommend that you consult an authorised Genesis dealer.

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MULTI MEDIA 1	¹ MULTI MEDIA	20A	[Without ISG] Fuse - MULTI MEDIA 3, MULTI MEDIA 2 [With ISG] Low DC-DC Converter (Audio)
AIR BAG		15A	SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) Control Module
ROOM LAMP		10A	Overhead Console Lamp, Centre Passenger Compartment Lamp, Passenger Compartment Lamp, Vanity Lamp Switch Left Handle side/Right Handle side, Luggage Lamp Left Handle side/Right Handle side, Glove Box Lamp, Driver/Passenger Footwell Lamp
STOP LAMP	STOP LAMP	10A	IBU, Stop Lamp Switch
CLUSTER	CLUSTER	10A	Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display
E-SHIFTER 2	² E-SHIFTER	10A	Electronic Auto Transmission Shift Lever
IBU 4	⁴ IBU	10A	IBU
MULTI MEDIA 3	³ MULTI MEDIA	15A	[With ISG] Instrument Cluster, Head-Up Display, Air Conditioning Switch, Wireless Charger
MULTI MEDIA 2	² MULTI MEDIA	15A	Audio
MEMORY 1	¹ MEMORY	10A	Air Conditioning Control Module, Air Conditioning Switch, Security Indicator, Head-Up Display [Without ISG] Instrument Cluster
IBU 3	³ IBU	10A	IBU

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
E-SHIFTER 1	¹ E-SHIFTER	10A	Electronic Auto Transmission Shift Lever
AIR BAG INDICATOR	IND 	10A	Instrument Cluster
IBU 1	¹ IBU	15A	IBU
DRIVER DOOR MODULE	DDM	10A	Driver Door Module, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror
E-CALL	E-CALL	10A	MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module
MODULE 2	² MODULE	10A	IBU
MODULE 3	³ MODULE	10A	Driver Door Module, Stop Lamp Switch
DOOR LOCK		20A	Door Lock Relay, Door Unlock Relay, Dead Lock Relay
SEAT HEATER		25A	Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front Seat Warmer Control Module
BOOT		10A	Boot Lid Relay, Fuel Lid Relay, Crash Pad Switch
IBU 2	² IBU	10A	Rain Sensor
POWER OUTLET	POWER OUTLET	20A	Front Power Outlet

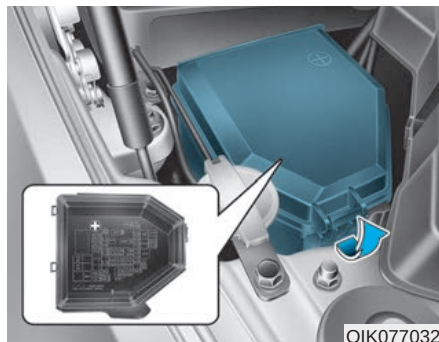
Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
MODULE 8	⁸ MODULE	10A	Cooling Fan Controller (BLDC Motor), Surround View Monitor, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
MODULE 7	⁷ MODULE	10A	IBU, ECS Unit, AWD (All Wheel Drive) ECM (Electronic Control Module), Smart Cruise Control Module, Multi-Function Camera Unit, Console Switch, Crash Pad Switch, Blind-Spot Collision Warning Unit Left Handle side/Right Handle side, Steering Angle Sensor, Steering Tilt & Telescopic Module, Active Air Flap Module
POWER HANDLE	POWER HANDLE	15A	Steering Tilt & Telescopic Module
MODULE 9	⁹ MODULE	10A	Driver Air Lumbar Control Unit
MODULE 1	¹ MODULE	10A	Data Link Connector, Console Switch, Hazard Switch
MODULE 5	⁵ MODULE	10A	Air Conditioning Control Module, Air Conditioning Switch, Audio, Head Lamp Left Handle side/Right Handle side, Low DC-DC Converter (Audio/AMP (Amplifier)), Electro Chromic Mirror, AMP (Amplifier), MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module, Driver Integrated Memory System Control Module, Front Air Ventilation Seat Control Module, Front/Rear Seat Warmer Control Module, AFS Control Unit
SUNROOF 1	¹ 	20A	Sunroof Control Unit (Glass)
PASSENGER POWER WINDOW	^{RH} 	25A	Passenger Safety Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module Right Handle side, Rear Safety Power Window Module Right Handle side

Instrument panel (Driver's side fuse panel)

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
WASHER		15A	Multifunction Switch
MDPS		10A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit (R-MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering))
DRIVER POWER SEAT		30A	Driver Integrated Memory System Control Module, Driver Seat Manual Switch
PASSENGER POWER SEAT		30A	Passenger Seat Manual Switch, Passenger Walk-in Relay Module
DRIVER POWER WINDOW		25A	Driver Safety Power Window Module, Rear Power Window Module Left Handle side, Rear Safety Power Window Module Left Handle side
MODULE 6		10A	IBU, Around View Monitor, Audio, AMP (Amplifier), MTS (Mozen Telematics System) E-Call Module, Low DC-DC Converter (Audio/AMP (Amplifier)), Electronic Auto Transmission Shift Lever (SBW (Shift By Wire)), Overhead Console Lamp
AIR CONDITIONER		10A	Air Conditioning Control Module, Air Conditioning Switch, Engine Compartment Junction Block (Blower Relay)
MODULE 4		10A	Head Lamp Left Handle side/Right Handle side, AFS Control Unit, Auto Head Lamp Levelling Device Module

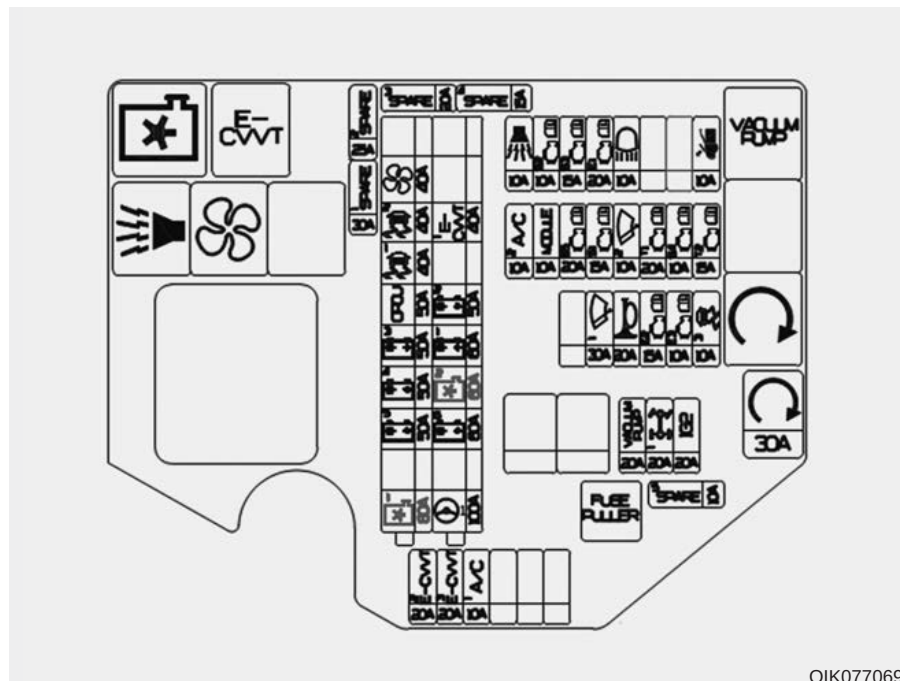
Engine compartment fuse panel



Inside the fuse/relay box covers, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

i Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle. It is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse box on your vehicle, refer to the fuse box label.



Engine compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ALT	ALT	175A 200A	Alternator, Fuse - GLOW, Multi Fuse - C/FAN1 / B+5 / B+4 / B+3 / OPCU / ESC1 / ESC2 / BLOWER
COOLING FAN 3	³ 	125A	[BLDC (Brushless Direct Current) Motor] Cooling Fan Controller
START		30A	Start Relay
C/FAN 1	¹ 	80A	[BLDC (Brushless Direct Current) Motor] Cooling Fan Controller
B+5	⁵ 	50A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse - STOP LAMP / MULTI MEDIA1 / MULTI MEDIA3 / MULTI MEDIA2 / MEMORY1 / IBU3 / DRIVER DOOR MODULE / E-CALL)
B+4	⁴ 	50A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse - DOOR LOCK / POWER HANDLE / SUNROOF / DRIVER POWER SEAT / PASSENGER POWER SEAT)
B+3	³ 	50A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse - SEAT HEATER / BOOT / MODULE9 / PASSEN- GER POWER WINDOW / DRIVER POWER WINDOW)
OPCU	OPCU	50A	[With ISG] Electric Oil Pump Inverter
ESC 1	¹ 	40A	ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module
ESC 2	² 	40A	ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector
BLOWER		40A	Blower Relay
MDPS	 ¹	100A	MDPS (Motor Driven Power Steering) Unit

Engine compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
B+6	⁶ 	60A	Engine Control Relay, Fuse - HORN / MODULE / A/CON 2 / H/BEAM H/LAMP / B/ALARM)
C/FAN 2	² 	60A	[DC (Direct Current) Motor] Cooling Fan Relay
B+1	¹ 	60A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse - IBU1 / IBU2)
B+2	² 	50A	Instrument Panel Junction Block (Fuse - E-SHIFTER1 / MODULE1)
E-CVVT 1	¹ E-CVVT	40A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] E-CVVT Relay
VACUUM PUMP	VACUUM PUMP	20A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine/Lambda II 3.3L T-GDI Engine] Vacuum Pump Relay
AWD		20A	AWD (All Wheel Drive) ECM (Electronic Control Module)
IG 2	IG2	20A	IG2 Relay
AIR CONDITIONER		10A	Air Conditioning Control Module
E-CVVT 3	³ E-CVVT	20A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] ECM (Engine Control Module)
E-CVVT 2	² E-CVVT	20A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] ECM (Engine Control Module)
ESC 3	³ 	10A	ESC (Electronic Stability Control) Control Module, Multipurpose Check Connector

Engine compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ECU 3		10A	ECM (Engine Control Module)
ECU 2		15A	ECM (Engine Control Module)
HORN		20A	Horn Relay
WIPER 1		30A	Wiper Power Relay
TCU 2		15A	TCM (Transmission Control Module)
SENSOR 4		10A	Brake Vacuum Switch, Brake Vacuum Relay
TCU 1		20A	TCM (Transmission Control Module)
WIPER 2		10A	Wiper Power Relay
SENSOR 1		15A	Rear Sub Junction Block (Fuel Pump Relay)
SENSOR 5		20A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4 [Lambda II 3.3L T-GDI Engine] Ignition Coil #1/#2/#3/#4/#5/#6
MODULE	MODULE	10A	Active Air Flap Module
AIR CONDITIONER 2		10A	Burglar Alarm Horn Relay

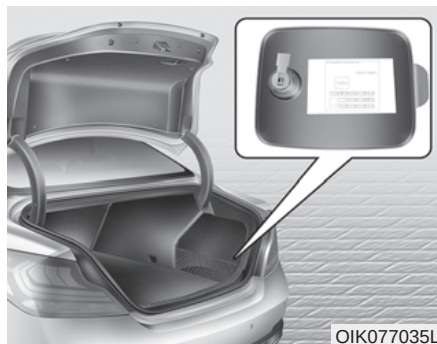
Engine compartment fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ACTIVE BONNET		10A	Active Bonnet Lift Control Module
HIGH BEAM HEADLAMP		10A	Head Lamp (High) Relay
ECU 1		20A	ECM (Engine Control Module)
SENSOR 3		15A	[THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] Oxygen Sensor (Up/Down) [Lambda II 3.3L T-GDI Engine] Oxygen Sensor #1/#2/#3/#4
SENSOR 2		10A	Cooling Fan Relay [THETA II 2.0L T-GDI Engine] Electronic Thermostat, Oil Control Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve, RCV (Recirculation Valve Control) Control Solenoid Valve [Lambda II 3.3L T-GDI Engine] Electronic Thermostat, Oil Pressure Solenoid Valve, Oil Control Valve #1/#2/#3/#4 (Intake/Exhaust), RCV (Recirculation Valve Control) Control Solenoid Valve, Purge Control Solenoid Valve
B/ALARM		10A	Burglar Alarm Horn Relay

Relay

Relay Name	Symbol	Type
Vacuum Pump Relay	VACUUM PUMP	ISO HC MICRO
Burglar Alarm Horn Relay		ISO MICRO
Power Outlet Relay	POWER OUTLET	ISO HC MICRO
Blower Relay		ISO HC MICRO
Start Relay		ISO HC MICRO
E-CVVT Relay (G4KL)	E-CVVT	ISO MICRO
Cooling Fan Relay		3725 MINI

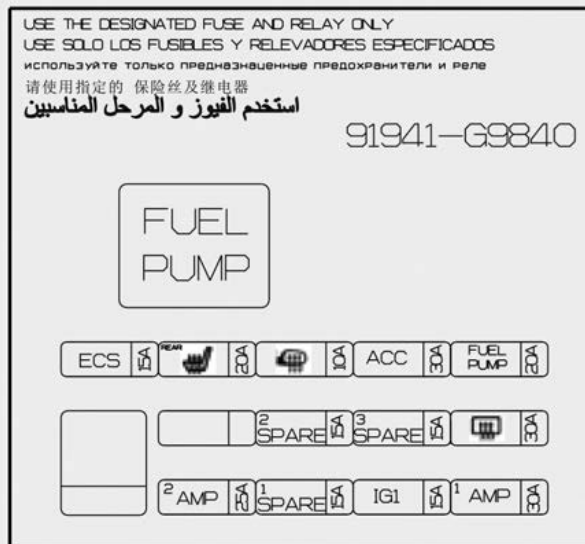
Boot fuse panel (Rear fuse box panel)



Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

i Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.

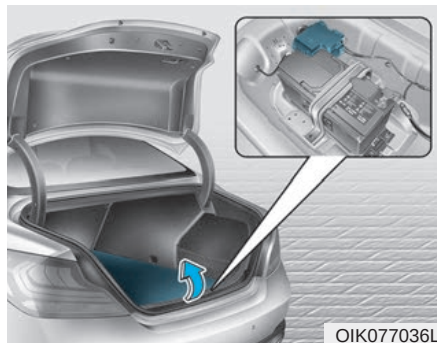


OIK077053L

Rear fuse box panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
ECS	ECS	15A	ECS (Electronic Control Suspension) Unit
REAR S/HEAT		20A	Rear Seat Warmer Control Module
HEAT MIRROR		10A	Air Conditioning Switch, Driver/Passenger Power Outside Mirror
ACCESSORY	ACC	30A	ICU Junction Block
FUEL PUMP	FUEL PUMP	20A	Fuel Pump Relay
REAR HEATED		30A	Rear Heated Relay
AMP 2	² AMP	25A	AMP (Amplifier) (MOBIS/PREMIUM)
AMP 1	¹ AMP	30A	[Without ISG] Fuse - AMP2 [With ISG] Low DC-DC Converter (AMP (Amplifier))
IG 1	IG1	40A	[LHD] IG1/ACC Relay

Boot fuse panel (Battery box fuse panel)



Inside the fuse/relay box cover, you can find the fuse/relay label describing fuse/relay names and ratings.

i Information

Not all fuse panel descriptions in this manual may be applicable to your vehicle; the information is accurate at the time of printing. When you inspect the fuse panel in your vehicle, refer to the fuse panel label.



OIK077054

Battery box fuse panel

Fuse Name	Symbol	Fuse rating	Circuit Protected
B+1	¹ 	80A	Rear Sub Junction Block (Fuse - FUEL PUMP / REAR HEATED / IGN1 / AMP1)
B+2	² 	80A	Rear Sub Junction Block (DCU Relay, Fuse - ECS1 / REAR S/HEAT)
START		40A	Engine Compartment Junction Block (Start Relay), PCB Block (ECM / TCM)
AMS	AMS	10A	Battery Sensor

LIGHT BULBS

Consult an authorised Genesis dealer to replace most vehicle light bulbs. It is difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs because other parts of the vehicle must be removed before you can get to the bulb. This is especially true for removing the headlamp assembly to get to the bulb(s).

Removing/installing the headlamp assembly can result in damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

Prior to working on the light, firmly apply the parking brake, ensure that the Engine Start/Stop button is turned to the “OFF” position to avoid sudden movement of the vehicle and turn off the lights to avoid burning your fingers or receiving an electric shock.

NOTICE

Be sure to replace the burned-out bulb with one of the same wattage rating. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the fuse or electrical wiring system.

Information

The headlamp and tail lamp lenses could appear frosty if the vehicle is washed after driving or the vehicle is driven at night in wet weather. This condition is caused by temperature difference between the lamp inside and outside and, it does not indicate a problem with your vehicle. When moisture condenses in the lamp, it will be removed after driving with the headlamp on. The removable level may differ depending on lamp size, lamp position and environmental condition. However, if moisture is not removed, we recommend that your vehicle is inspected by an authorised Genesis dealer.

Information

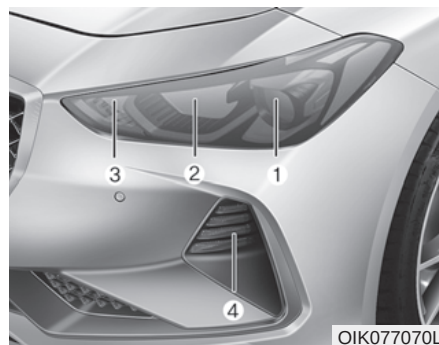
The headlamp aiming should be adjusted after an accident or after the headlamp assembly is reinstalled at an authorised Genesis dealer.

Information

- A normally functioning lamp may flicker momentarily to stabilise the vehicle's electrical control system. However, if the lamp goes out after flickering momentarily, or continues to flicker, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- The parking lamp may not turn on when the parking lamp switch is turned on, but the parking lamp and headlamp switch may turn on when the headlamp switch is turned on. This may be caused by network failure or vehicle electrical control system malfunction. If this occurs, we recommend the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

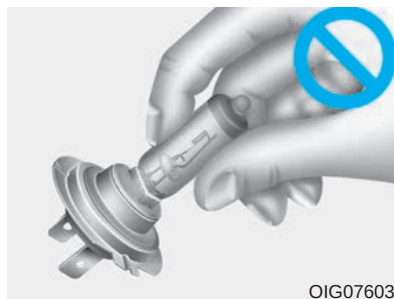
Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp and daytime running light bulb replacement

Type A



- (1) Headlamp (Low)
- (2) Headlamp (High)
- (3) Turn signal lamp
- (4) Daytime running light (DRL) and Parking lamp

⚠ WARNING



- Handle halogen bulbs with care. Halogen bulbs contain pressurised gas that will produce flying pieces of glass that could cause injuries if broken.
- Wear eye protection when changing a bulb. Allow the bulb to cool down before handling it.

- Always handle them carefully, and avoid scratches and abrasions. If the bulbs are lit, avoid contact with liquids.
- Never touch the glass with bare hands. Residual oil may cause the bulb to overheat and burst when lit.
- A bulb should be operated only when installed in a headlamp.
- If a bulb becomes damaged or cracked, replace it immediately and carefully dispose of it.



Headlamp (High)

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the bulb cover by turning it anti-clockwise.
4. Disconnect the bulb socket-connector.
5. Remove the bulb-socket from the headlamp assembly by turning the bulb-socket anti-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb-socket align with the slots on the headlamp assembly.
6. Install a new headlamp bulb into the bulb-socket.
7. Push the bulb-socket into the headlamp assembly and turn the bulb-socket clockwise.
8. Connect the bulb socket-connector.
9. Install the bulb cover by turning it clockwise.

Headlamp (Low)

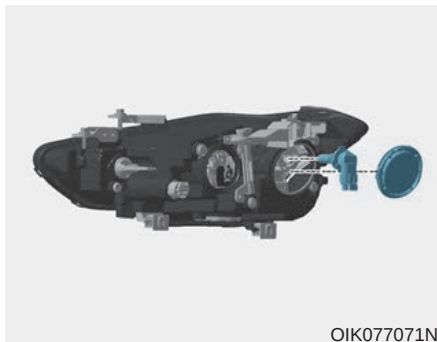
1. Disconnect the negative battery cable.



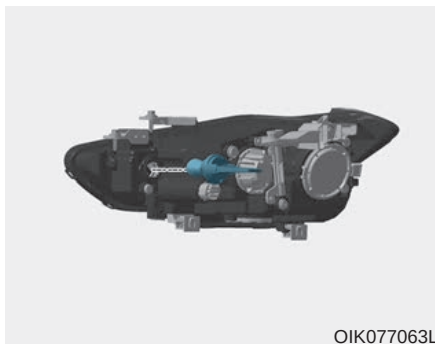
2. Remove the service cover under the wheel housing by pushing out the retainer clip with a slim tool. If it is difficult to remove the service cover because of the tyre, turn the tyre inward.



3. Remove the bulb cover by turning it anti-clockwise.



4. Disconnect the bulb socket-connector.



Turn signal lamp

1. Open the bonnet.
2. Disconnect the negative battery cable.
3. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket anti-clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.
4. Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it anti-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.

5. Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.
6. Install the socket in the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly.
7. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

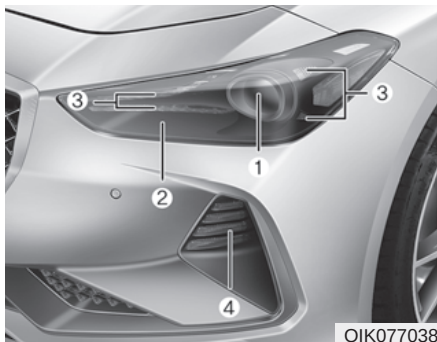
Daytime running light (DRL) and Parking lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Type B



- (1) Headlamp (High/Low)
- (2) Headlamp (High)
- (3) Daytime running light (DRL) and Parking lamp
- (4) Turn signal lamp

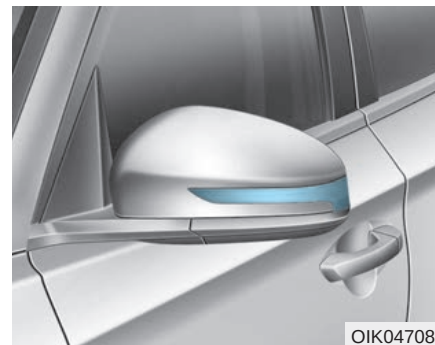
Headlamp, turn signal lamp, daytime running light (DRL) and parking lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Side repeater lamp replacement



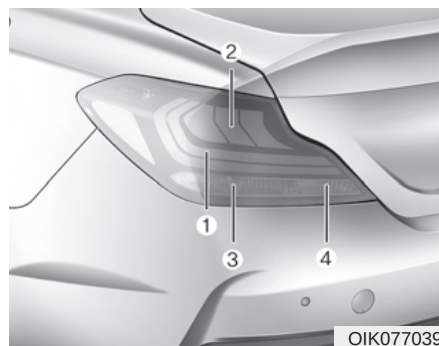
If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Rear combination lamp bulb replacement

Type A



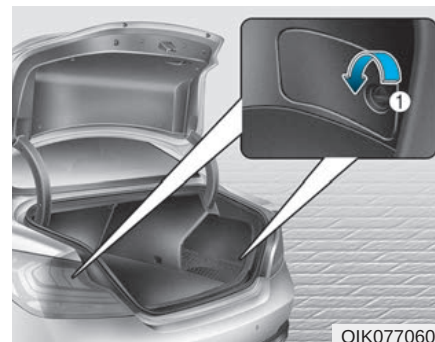
- (1) Stop/Tail lamp
- (2) Stop lamp
- (3) Turn signal lamp
- (4) Reverse lamp

Stop/Tail lamp

If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

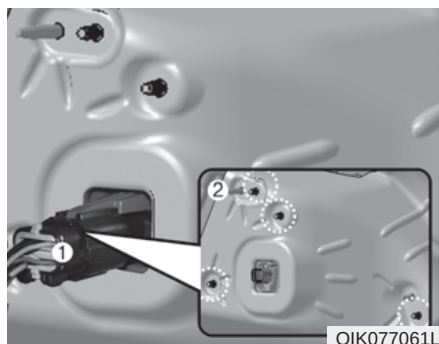
The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.



Stop lamp, turn signal lamp and reverse lamp

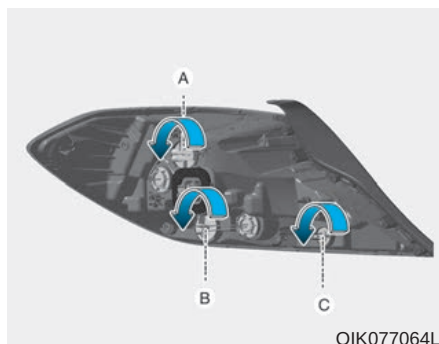
1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the boot.
3. Remove the service cover by turning the lock (1) anti-clockwise.



4. Remove the connector (1).
5. Remove the 4 nuts (2).
6. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.

i Information

When removing the nut, be careful not to drop it on the floor as it is extremely difficult to find. Use a magnetic pick up tool to find the nut if necessary.



7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket anti-clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

8. - Stop lamp (A), Turn signal lamp (B)

Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it anti-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.

- Reverse lamp (C)

Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

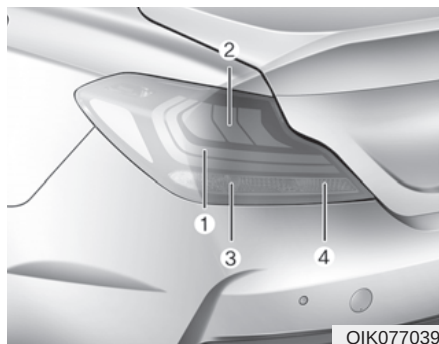
9. - Stop lamp (A), Turn signal lamp (B)

Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.

- Reverse lamp (C)

Insert a new bulb by pushing it into the socket.

10. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.
11. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

Type B

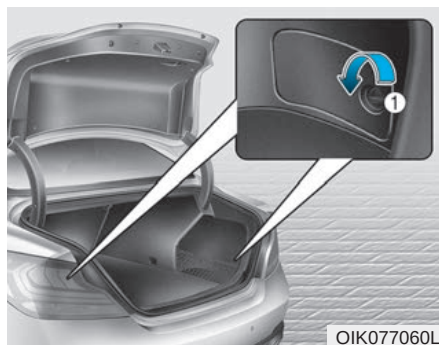
- (1) Stop/Tail lamp
- (2) Stop lamp
- (3) Turn signal lamp
- (4) Reverse lamp

Stop/Tail lamp and stop lamp

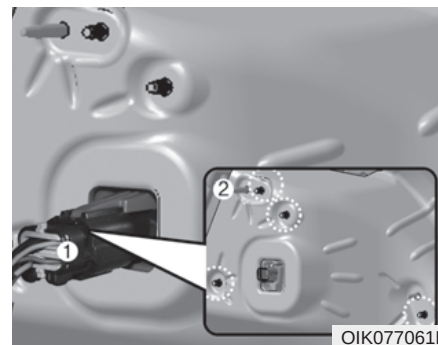
If the LED lamp does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

**Turn signal lamp and reverse lamp**

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Open the boot.
3. Remove the service cover by turning the lock (1) anti-clockwise.



4. Remove the connector (1).
5. Remove the 4 nuts (2).
6. Remove the rear combination lamp assembly from the body of the vehicle.

i Information

When removing the nut, be careful not to drop it on the floor as it is extremely difficult to find. Use a magnetic pick up tool to find the nut if necessary.



7. Remove the socket from the assembly by turning the socket anti-clockwise until the tabs on the socket align with the slots on the assembly.

8. - Turn signal lamp (A)

Remove the bulb from the socket by pressing it in and rotating it anti-clockwise until the tabs on the bulb align with the slots in the socket. Pull the bulb out of the socket.

- Reverse lamp (B)

Remove the bulb by pulling it straight out.

9. - Turn signal lamp (A)

Insert a new bulb by inserting it into the socket and rotating it until it locks into place.

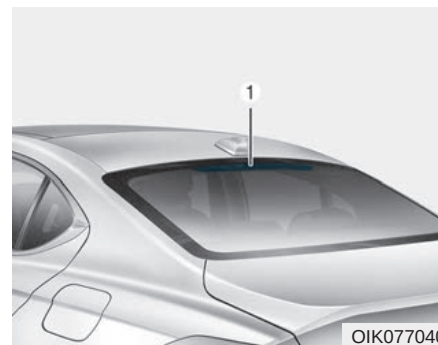
- Reverse lamp (B)

Insert a new bulb by pushing it in into the socket.

10. Install the socket into the assembly by aligning the tabs on the socket with the slots in the assembly. Push the socket into the assembly and turn the socket clockwise.

11. Reinstall the lamp assembly to the body of the vehicle.

High mounted stop lamp replacement



If the high mounted stop lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Licence plate light replacement



If the licence plate lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Interior light replacement Map lamp



If the map lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamps cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Passenger compartment lamp

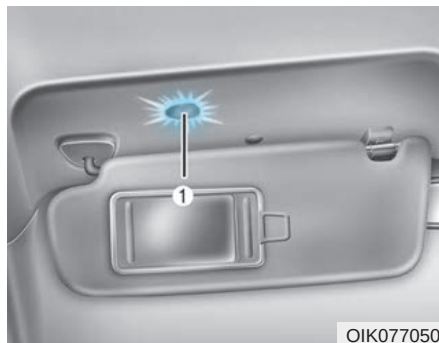


If the passenger compartment lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamps has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Vanity mirror lamp

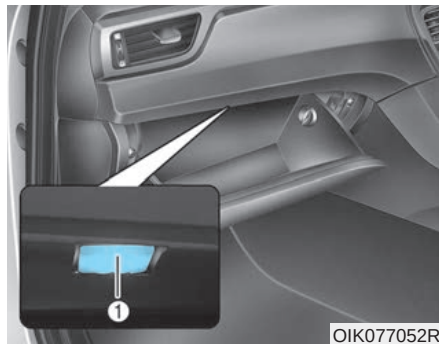


If the vanity mirror lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Glove box lamp

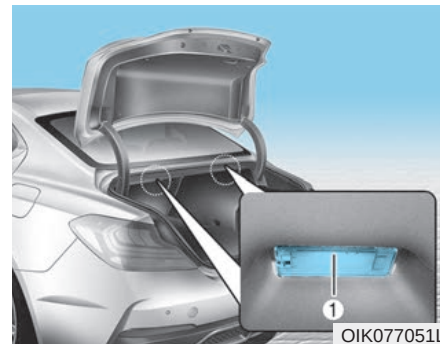


If the glove box lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

Boot lamp



If the boot lamp (LED) (1) does not operate, we recommend that the system be checked by an authorised Genesis dealer.

The LED lamp cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED lamp has to be replaced with the unit.

A skilled technician should check or repair the LED lamp, for it may damage related parts of the vehicle.

APPEARANCE CARE

Exterior care

Exterior general caution

It is very important to follow the label directions when using any chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warning and caution statements that appear on the label.

Finish maintenance

Washing

To help protect your vehicle's finish from rust and deterioration, wash it thoroughly and frequently at least once a month with lukewarm or cold water.

If you use your vehicle for off-road driving, you should wash it after each off-road trip. Pay special attention to the removal of any accumulation of salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign materials. Make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are kept clear and clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial pollution and similar deposits can damage your vehicle's finish if not removed immediately.

Even prompt washing with plain water may not completely remove all these deposits.

A mild soap, safe for use on painted surfaces, may be used.

After washing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

NOTICE

- **Do not use strong soap, chemical detergents or hot water, and do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight or when the body of the vehicle is warm.**
- **Be careful when washing the side windows of your vehicle. Especially, with high-pressure water, water may leak through the windows and wet the interior.**
- **To prevent damage to the plastic parts and lamps, do not clean with chemical solvents or strong detergents.**

WARNING

Wet brakes

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

High-pressure washing

- When using high-pressure washers, make sure to maintain sufficient distance from the vehicle.
Insufficient clearance or excessive pressure can lead to component damage or water penetration.
- Do not spray the camera, sensors or their surrounding areas directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to operate improperly.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or plastic covers) or connectors as they may be damaged if they come into contact with high pressure water.



NOTICE

- Water washing in the engine compartment including high pressure water washing may cause the failure of electrical circuits located in the engine compartment.
- Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Automatic car wash which uses rotating brushes should not be used as this can damage the surface of your vehicle. A steam cleaner which washes the vehicle surface at high temperature may result the oil to adhere and leave stains that is difficult to remove.

Use a soft cloth (e.g. microfiber towel or sponge) when washing your vehicle and dry with a microfiber towel. When you hand wash your vehicle, you should not use a cleaner that finishes with wax. If the vehicle surface is too dirty (sand, dirt, dust, contaminant, etc.), clean the surface with water before washing the car.

Waxing

A good coat of wax is a barrier between your paint and contaminants. Keeping a good coat of wax on your vehicle will help protect it.

Wax the vehicle when water will no longer bead on the paint.

Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing. Use a good quality liquid or paste wax, and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Wax all metal trim to protect it and to maintain its luster.

Removing oil, tar, and similar materials with a spot remover will usually strip the wax from the finish. Be sure to re-wax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not yet need waxing.

NOTICE

- Wiping dust or dirt off the body with a dry cloth will scratch the finish.
- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

Do not use any polish protector such as a detergent, an abrasive and a polish. In case wax is applied, remove the wax immediately using a silicon remover and if any tar or tar contaminant is on the surface use a tar remover to clean. However, be careful not to apply too much pressure on the painted area.

Finish damage repair

Deep scratches or stone chips in the painted surface must be repaired promptly. Exposed metal will quickly rust and may develop into a major repair expense.

NOTICE

If your vehicle is damaged and requires any metal repair or replacement, be sure the body shop applies anti-corrosion materials to the parts repaired or replaced.

NOTICE

Matte paint finish vehicle (if equipped)

In case of matte paint finish vehicles, it is impossible to modify only the damaged area and repair of the whole part is necessary. If the vehicle is damaged and painting is required, we recommend that you have your vehicle maintained and repaired by an authorised retailer of Genesis Branded products. Take extreme care, as it is difficult to restore the quality after the repair.

Bright-metal maintenance

- To remove road tar and insects, use a tar remover, not a scraper or other sharp object.
- To protect the surfaces of bright-metal parts from corrosion, apply a coating of wax or chrome preservative and rub to a high luster.
- During winter weather or in coastal areas, cover the bright metal parts with a heavier coating of wax or preservative. If necessary, coat the parts with non-corrosive petroleum jelly or other protective compound.

Underbody maintenance

Corrosive materials used for ice and snow removal and dust control may collect on the underbody. If these materials are not removed, accelerated rusting can occur on underbody parts such as the fuel lines, frame, floor pan and exhaust system, even though they have been treated with rust protection.

Thoroughly flush the vehicle underbody and wheel openings with luke-warm or cold water once a month, after off-road driving and at the end of each winter. Pay special attention to these areas because it is difficult to see all the mud and dirt. It will do more harm than good to wet down the road grime without removing it. The lower edges of doors, rocker panels, and frame members have drain holes that should not be allowed to clog with dirt; trapped water in these areas can cause rusting.

WARNING

After washing the vehicle, test the brakes whilst driving slowly to see if they have been affected by water. If braking performance is impaired, dry the brakes by applying them lightly whilst maintaining a slow forward speed.

Aluminium wheel maintenance

The aluminium wheels are coated with a clear protective finish.

NOTICE

- **Do not use any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, solvent, or wire brushes on aluminium wheels.**
- **Clean the wheel when it has cooled.**
- **Use only a mild soap or neutral detergent, and rinse thoroughly with water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on salted roads.**
- **Do not wash the wheels with high-speed car wash brushes.**
- **Do not use any cleanser containing acid or alkaline detergents.**

Corrosion protection

Protecting your vehicle from corrosion

By using the most advanced design and construction practice to combat corrosion, we produce vehicles of the highest quality. However, this is only part of the job. To achieve the long-term corrosion resistance your vehicle can deliver, the owner's cooperation and assistance is also required.

Common causes of corrosion

The most common causes of corrosion on your vehicle are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture that is allowed to accumulate underneath the vehicle.
- Removal of paint or protective coatings; by stones, gravel, abrasion or minor scrapes and dents which leave unprotected metal exposed to corrosion.

High-corrosion areas

If you live in an area where your vehicle is regularly exposed to corrosive materials, corrosion protection is particularly important. Some of the common causes of accelerated corrosion are road salts, dust control chemicals, ocean air and industrial pollution.

Moisture breeds corrosion

Moisture creates the conditions in which corrosion is most likely to occur. For example, corrosion is accelerated by high humidity, particularly when temperatures are just above freezing. In such conditions, the corrosive material is kept in contact with the vehicle surfaces by moisture that is slow to evaporate.

Mud is particularly corrosive because it is slow to dry and holds moisture in contact with the vehicle. Although the mud appears to be dry, it can still retain moisture and promote corrosion.

High temperatures can also accelerate corrosion of parts that are not properly ventilated so the moisture can be dispersed. For all these reasons, it is particularly important to keep your vehicle clean and free of mud or accumulations of other materials. This applies not only to the visible surfaces but particularly to the underside of the vehicle.

To help prevent corrosion

You can help prevent corrosion from getting started by observing the following:

Keep your vehicle clean

The best way to prevent corrosion is to keep your vehicle clean and free of corrosive materials. Attention to the underside of the vehicle is particularly important.

- If you live in a high-corrosion area where road salts are used, near the ocean, areas with industrial pollution, acid rain, etc., you should take extra care to prevent corrosion. In winter, hose off the underside of your vehicle at least once a month and be sure to clean the underside thoroughly when winter is over.
- When cleaning underneath the vehicle, give particular attention to the components under the fenders and other areas that are hidden from view. Do a thorough job; just dampening the accumulated mud rather than washing it away will accelerate corrosion rather than prevent it. Water under high pressure and steam are particularly effective in removing accumulated mud and corrosive materials.

- When cleaning lower door panels, rocker panels and frame members, be sure that drain holes are kept open so that moisture can escape and not be trapped inside, to accelerate corrosion.

Keep your garage dry

Don't park your vehicle in a damp, poorly ventilated garage. This creates a favourable environment for corrosion. This is particularly true if you wash your vehicle in the garage or drive it into the garage when it is still wet or covered with snow, ice or mud. Even a heated garage can contribute to corrosion unless it is well ventilated so moisture is dispersed.

Keep paint and trim in good condition

Scratches or chips in the finish should be covered with "touch-up" paint as soon as possible to reduce the possibility of corrosion. If bare metal is showing through, the attention of a qualified body and paint shop is recommended.

Bird droppings : Bird droppings are highly corrosive and may damage painted surfaces in just a few hours. Always remove bird droppings as soon as possible.

Don't neglect the interior

Moisture can collect under the floor mats and carpeting to cause corrosion. Check under the mats periodically to be sure all the carpet is dry. Use particular care if you carry fertilisers, cleaning materials or chemicals in the vehicle.

These should be carried only in proper containers and any spills or leaks should be cleaned up, flushed with clean water and thoroughly dried.

Interior care

Interior general precautions

Prevent chemicals such as perfume, cosmetic oil, sun cream, hand cleaner and air freshener from contacting the interior parts because they may cause damage or discolouration. If they do contact the interior parts, wipe them off immediately.

See the instructions that follow for the proper way to clean vinyl.

NOTICE

Never allow water or other liquids to come in contact with electrical/electronic components inside the vehicle as this may damage them.

NOTICE

When cleaning leather products (steering wheel, seats etc.), use neutral detergents or low alcohol content solutions. If you use high alcohol content solutions or acid/alkaline detergents, the colour of the leather may fade or the surface may get stripped off.

Cleaning the upholstery and interior trim

Vinyl (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from vinyl with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean vinyl surfaces with a vinyl cleaner.

Fabric (if equipped)

Remove dust and loose dirt from fabric with a whisk broom or vacuum cleaner. Clean with a mild soap solution recommended for upholstery or carpets.

Remove fresh spots immediately with a fabric spot cleaner. If fresh spots do not receive immediate attention, the fabric can be stained and its colour can be affected. Also, its fire-resistant properties can be reduced if the material is not properly maintained.

NOTICE

Using anything but recommended cleaners and procedures may affect the fabric's appearance and fire-resistant properties.

Leather (if equipped)

• Features of seat leather

- Leather is made from the outer skin of an animal, which goes through a special process to be available for use. Since it is a natural product, each part differs in thickness or density.

Wrinkles may appear as a natural result of stretching and shrinking depending on the temperature and humidity.

- The seat is made of stretchable fabric to improve comfort.
- The parts contacting the body are curved and the side supporting area is high which provides driving comfort and stability.
- Wrinkles may appear naturally from usage. It is not a fault of the product.



CAUTION

- **Wrinkles or abrasions which appear naturally from usage are not covered by warranty.**
- **Belts with metallic accessories, zippers or keys inside the back pocket may damage the seat fabric.**
- **Make sure not to wet the seat. It may change the nature of natural leather.**
- **Jeans or clothes which could bleach may contaminate the surface of the seat covering fabric.**

- Caring for the leather seats
 - Vacuum the seat periodically to remove dust and sand on the seat. It will prevent abrasion or damage of the leather and maintain its quality.
 - Wipe the natural leather seat cover often with dry or soft cloth.
 - Use of proper leather protector may prevent abrasion of the cover and helps maintain the colour. Be sure to read the instructions and consult a specialist when using leather coating or protective agent.
 - Light coloured (beige, cream beige) leather is easily contaminated and the stain is noticeable. Clean the seats frequently.
 - Avoid wiping with wet cloth. It may cause the surface to crack.
- Cleaning the leather seats
 - Remove all contaminations instantly. Refer to instructions below for removal of each contaminant.
 - Cosmetic products (sunscreen, foundation, etc.)

Apply cleansing cream on a cloth and wipe the contaminated spot. Wipe off the cream with a wet cloth and remove water with a dry cloth.
 - Beverages (coffee, soft drink, etc.)

Apply a small amount of neutral detergent and wipe until contaminations do not smear.
 - Oil

Remove oil instantly with absorbent cloth and wipe with stain remover used only for natural leather.
 - Chewing gum

Harden the gum with ice and remove gradually.

Cleaning the lap/shoulder belt webbing

Clean the belt webbing with any mild soap solution recommended for cleaning upholstery or carpet. Follow the instructions provided with the soap. Do not bleach or re-dye the webbing because this may weaken it.

Cleaning the interior window glass

If the interior glass surfaces of the vehicle become fogged (that is, covered with an oily, greasy or waxy film), they should be cleaned with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the glass cleaner container.

NOTICE

Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the rear window. This may result in damage to the rear window defroster grid.

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

The emission control system of your vehicle is covered by a written limited warranty. Please see the warranty information contained in the Service Passport in your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with an emission control system to meet all Australian Design Rules (ADR) requirements.

There are three emission control systems which are as follows.

- (1) Crankcase emission control system
- (2) Evaporative emission control system
- (3) Exhaust emission control system

In order to ensure the proper function of the emission control systems, it is recommended that you have your vehicle inspected and maintained by an authorised Genesis dealer in accordance with the maintenance schedule in this manual.

NOTICE

For the Inspection and Maintenance Test (with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system)

- **To prevent the vehicle from misfiring during dynamometer testing, turn the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system off by pressing the ESC switch.**
- **After dynamometer testing is completed, turn the ESC system back on by pressing the ESC switch again.**

1. Crankcase emission control system

The positive crankcase ventilation system is employed to prevent air pollution caused by blow-by gases being emitted from the crankcase. This system supplies fresh filtered air to the crankcase through the air intake hose. Inside the crankcase, the fresh air mixes with blow-by gases, which then pass through the PCV valve into the induction system.

2. Evaporative emission control system

The Evaporative Emission Control System is designed to prevent fuel vapours from escaping into the atmosphere.

Canister

Fuel vapours generated inside the fuel tank are absorbed and stored in the onboard canister. When the engine is running, the fuel vapours absorbed in the canister are drawn into the surge tank through the purge control solenoid valve.

Purge Control Solenoid Valve (PCSV)

The purge control solenoid valve is controlled by the Engine Control Module (ECM); when the engine coolant temperature is low during idling, the PCSV closes so that evaporated fuel is not taken into the engine. After the engine warms-up during ordinary driving, the PCSV opens to introduce evaporated fuel to the engine.

3. Exhaust emission control system

The Exhaust Emission Control System is a highly effective system which controls exhaust emissions whilst maintaining good vehicle performance.

Engine exhaust gas precautions (carbon monoxide)

- Carbon monoxide can be present with other exhaust fumes. Therefore, if you smell exhaust fumes of any kind inside your vehicle, have it inspected and repaired immediately. If you ever suspect exhaust fumes are coming into your vehicle, drive it only with all the windows fully open. Have your vehicle checked and repaired immediately.

WARNING

Engine exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide (CO). Though colourless and odourless, it is dangerous and could be lethal if inhaled. Follow the instructions following to avoid CO poisoning.

- Do not operate the engine in confined or closed areas (such as garages) any more than what is necessary to move the vehicle in or out of the area.
- When the vehicle is stopped in an open area for more than a short time with the engine running, adjust the ventilation system (as needed) to draw outside air into the vehicle.
- Never sit in a parked or stopped vehicle for any extended time with the engine running.
- When the engine stalls or fails to start, excessive attempts to restart the engine may cause damage to the emission control system.

Operating precautions for catalytic converters (if equipped)

WARNING

- A hot exhaust system can ignite flammable items under your vehicle. Do not park, idle, or drive the vehicle over or near flammable objects, such as dry grass, paper, leaves, etc.
- The exhaust system and catalytic system are very hot when the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off. Keep away from the exhaust system and catalytic converter as you may get burned.

Also, do not remove the heat sink around the exhaust system, do not seal the bottom of the vehicle and do not coat the vehicle for corrosion control. It may present a fire risk under certain conditions.

Your vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter emission control device.

Therefore, the following precautions must be observed:

- Use only UNLEADED FUEL for petrol engines.
- Do not operate the vehicle when there are signs of engine malfunction, such as misfire or a noticeable loss of performance.
- Do not misuse or abuse the engine. Examples of misuse are coasting with the engine off and descending steep grades in gear with the engine off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle speed for extended periods (5 minutes or more).
- Do not modify or tamper with any part of the engine or emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by an authorised Genesis dealer.
- Avoid driving with a very low fuel level. If you run out of petrol, it could cause the engine to misfire and result in excessive loading of the catalytic converter.

Failure to observe these precautions could result in damage to the catalytic converter and to your vehicle.

Additionally, such actions could void your warranties.

Specifications & Consumer information

Dimensions	8-2
Engine.....	8-2
Bulb wattage	8-3
Tyres and wheels.....	8-4
Air conditioning system	8-5
Vehicle weight and luggage volume.....	8-5
Recommended lubricants and capacities	8-6
Recommended SAE viscosity number	8-8
Vehicle identification number (VIN)	8-9
Vehicle certification label.....	8-9
Tyre specification and pressure label	8-10
Engine number	8-10
Air conditioner compressor label	8-10
Fuel label.....	8-11

DIMENSIONS

Item		mm (in)
Overall length		4,685 (184.45)
Overall width		1,850 (72.83)
Overall height		1,400 (55.12)
Front tread	225/45R18	1,596 (62.83)
	225/40ZR19	1,596 (62.83)
Rear tread	225/45R18	1,632 (64.25)
	255/35ZR19	1,604 (63.15)
Wheelbase		2,835 (111.61)

ENGINE

Engine	Displacement	Bore x Stroke	Firing order	No. of cylinders
2.0 T-GDI	1,998 cc (121.9 cu. in)	86 x 86 mm (3.39 x 3.39 in.)	1-3-4-2	In-line 4 cylinder
3.3 T-GDI	3,342 cc (203.94 cu. in)	92 x 83.8mm (3.78 x 3.299 in.)	1-2-3-4-5-6	V-type 6 cylinder

BULB WATTAGE

Light bulb				Bulb type	Wattage	
Front	Type A	Headlamp	High	HB3	60W	
			Low	HB3	60W	
		Turn signal lamp			PY21W	21W
		Daytime running light & Parking lamp			LED	LED
	Type B	Headlamp	High/Low	LED	LED	
			High	LED	LED	
		Daytime running light & Parking lamp			LED	LED
		Turn signal lamp			LED	LED
Side repeater lamp			LED	LED		
Rear	Type A	Tail/Stop lamp		LED	LED	
		Stop lamp		P21/5W	21W	
		Turn signal lamp		PY21W	21W	
		Reverse lamp		W16W	16W	
	Type B	Tail/Stop lamp		LED	LED	
		Stop lamp		LED	LED	
		Turn signal lamp		PY21W	21W	
		Reverse lamp		W16W	16W	
	Licence plate lamp			LED	LED	
	High mounted stop light			LED	LED	
Interior	Map lamp			LED	LED	
	Passenger compartment lamp			LED	LED	
	Glove box lamp			LED	LED	
	Boot lamp			LED	LED	
	Vanity mirror lamp			LED	LED	

TYRES AND WHEELS

Item	Tyre size	Wheel size	Load capacity		Speed capacity		Inflation pressure [kPa (psi)]				Wheel nut torque
							Normal load		Maximum load		[kgf·m (lbf·ft, N·m)]
			LI *1	kg	SS *2	km/h	Front	Rear	Front	Rear	11~13 (79~94, 107~127)
Full size tyre	225/45R18	8.0J x 18	95	690	Y	300	250 (36)	270 (39)	260 (38)	270 (39)	
	225/40ZR19	8.0J x 19	93	650	Y	300	250 (36)	-	260 (38)	-	
	255/35ZR19	8.5J x 19	96	710	Y	300	-	250 (36)	-	270 (39)	
Compact spare tyre	T135/80R18	4.0T x 18	104	900	M	130	420 (60)		420 (60)		

*1 : Load Index

*2 : Speed Symbol

NOTICE

- It is permissible to add 20 kPa (3 psi) to the standard tyre pressure specification if colder temperatures are expected soon. Tyres typically lose 7 kPa (1 psi) for every 7°C (12°F) temperature drop. If extreme temperature variations are expected, recheck your tyre pressure as necessary to keep them properly inflated.
- Air pressure generally decreases, as you drive up to a high-altitude area above sea level. If you plan to drive to a high-altitude area, check the tyre pressures in advance. If necessary, inflate them to a proper level (Air inflation per altitude: +10 kPa/1 km (+2.4 psi/1 mile)).



CAUTION

When replacing tyres, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle.
Using tyres of a different size can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

Item		Weight of volume	Classification
Refrigerant	Type A	575 ~ 625 g (20.3 ~ 22.1 oz.)	R-134a
	Type B	545 ~ 595 g (19.2 ~ 21.0 oz.)	R-1234yf
Compressor lubricant		90 ~ 110 g (3.1 ~ 3.9 oz.)	PAG (FD46XG)

We recommend that you contact an authorised Genesis dealer for more details.

VEHICLE WEIGHT AND LUGGAGE VOLUME

Gross vehicle weight		Luggage volume
2.0 T-GDI	3.3 T-GDI	330 l (11.7 cu.ft)
2WD	2WD	
2,140 kg	2,225 kg	

2WD: 2 Wheel Drive

RECOMMENDED LUBRICANTS AND CAPACITIES

To help achieve proper engine and powertrain performance and durability, use only lubricants of the proper quality. The correct lubricants also help promote engine efficiency that results in improved fuel economy.

The following lubricants and fluids are recommended for use in your vehicle:

Lubricant			Volume	Classification
Engine oil *1 *2 (drain and refill)	Petrol	2.0 T-GDI	5.7 l	ACEA C2 or above / 0W-30
Recommends 		3.3 T-GDI	6.9 l	ACEA A5 or above / 5W-30
Automatic transmission fluid			9.2 l	GS ATF SP-IV-RR Genesis genuine ATF SP-IV-RR
Coolant		2.0 T-GDI	7.4 l	Mixture of antifreeze and distilled water (Ethylene-glycol with phosphate based coolant for aluminium radiator)
		3.3 T-GDI	10.7 l	
Brake fluid			0.7 ~ 0.8 l	FMVSS116 DOT-4

*1 : Refer to the recommended SAE viscosity numbers on page 8.

*2 : Engine oils labelled Energy Conserving Oil are now available. Along with other additional benefits, they contribute to fuel economy by reducing the amount of fuel necessary to overcome engine friction. Often, these improvements are difficult to measure in everyday driving, but in a year's time, they can offer significant cost and energy savings.

Lubricant		Volume	Classification
Rear differential oil ^{*3} (without LSD)	2.0 T-GDI	1.2 l	HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 SAE 75W/85 (SK HK SYN GEAR OIL 75W85)
	3.3 T-GDI	1.3 l	
Rear differential oil ^{*3 *4} (with LSD)	2.0 T-GDI	1.3 l	HYPOID GEAR OIL API GL-5 SAE 75W/85 (SK HK JL SYN LSD GEAR OIL 75W85 PLUS)
	3.3 T-GDI	1.4 l	
Fuel		60 l	Refer to "Fuel Requirements" in the Introduction chapter.

^{*3} : Regardless of oil change intervals, replace oil immediately if Rear-Differential or Front-Differential is submerged.

^{*4} : Be sure to use oil for exclusive use of LSD when replacing Rear Differential Oil (if equipped with Limited Slip Differential).

Recommended SAE viscosity number

CAUTION

Always be sure to clean the area around any filler plug, drain plug, or dipstick before checking or draining any lubricant. This is especially important in dusty or sandy areas and when the vehicle is used on unpaved roads. Cleaning the plug and dipstick areas will prevent dirt and grit from entering the engine and other mechanisms that could be damaged.

Engine oil viscosity (thickness) has an effect on fuel economy and cold weather operating (engine start and engine oil flowability). Lower viscosity engine oils can provide better fuel economy and cold weather performance, however, higher viscosity engine oils are required for satisfactory lubrication in hot weather. Using oils of any viscosity other than those recommended could result in engine damage.

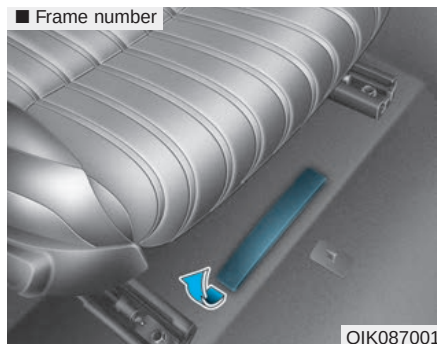
When choosing an oil, consider the range of temperature your vehicle will be operated in before the next oil change. Proceed to select the recommended oil viscosity from the chart.

Temperature Range for SAE Viscosity Numbers										
Temperature	°C	-30	-20	-10	0	10	20	30	40	50
	(°F)	-10	0	20	40	60	80	100	120	
2.0 T-GDI ^{*1}										20W-50
										15W-40
										10W-30
										0/5W-30, 5W-40
3.3 T-GDI ^{*2}										20W-50
										15W-40
										10W-30
										5W-30, 5W-40

^{*1} : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 0W-30. However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

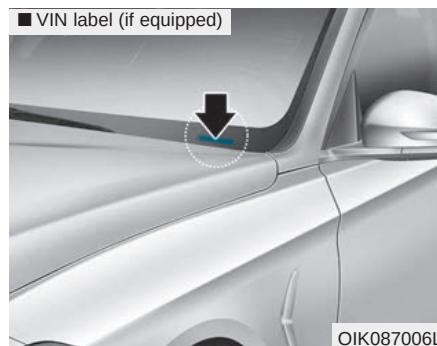
^{*2} : For better fuel economy, it is recommended to use the engine oil of a viscosity grade SAE 5W-30. However, if the engine oil is not available in your country, select the proper engine oil using the engine oil viscosity chart.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the number used in registering your vehicle and in all legal matters pertaining to its ownership, etc.

The number is punched on the floor under the driver's seat. To check the number, open the cover.



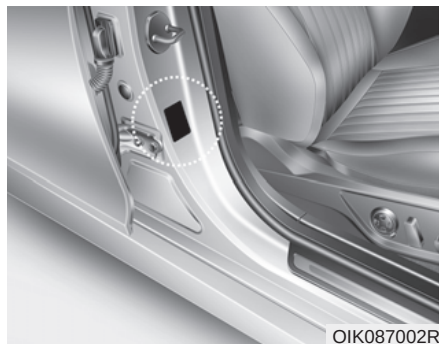
The VIN is also on a plate attached to the top of the left side instrument panel. The number on the plate can easily be seen through the wind-screen from outside.

VEHICLE CERTIFICATION LABEL



The vehicle certification label attached on the driver's (or front passenger's) side centre pillar shows the vehicle identification number (VIN).

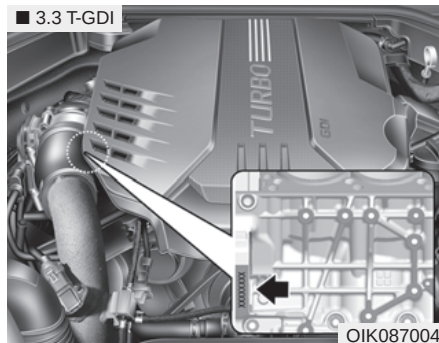
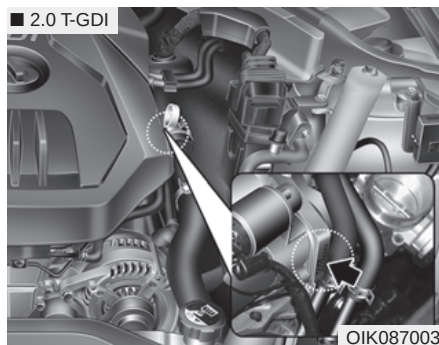
TYRE SPECIFICATION AND PRESSURE LABEL



The tyres supplied on your new vehicle are chosen to provide the best performance for normal driving.

The tyre label located on the driver's side centre pillar shows the tyre pressures recommended for your vehicle.

ENGINE NUMBER



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as show.

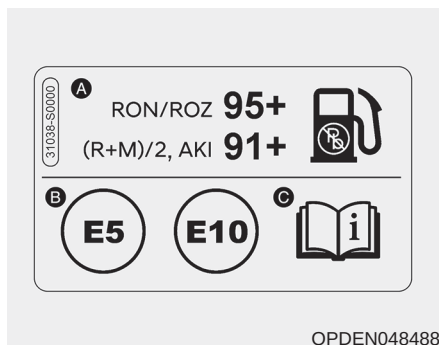
AIR CONDITIONER COMPRESSOR LABEL



A compressor label informs you of the type of compressor your vehicle is equipped with such as; model, supplier part number, production number, refrigerant (1) and refrigerant oil (2).

FUEL LABEL (IF EQUIPPED)

The fuel label attached on the fuel filler door.



- A. Octane rating of unleaded petrol
 - 1) RON/ROZ : Research Octane Number
 - 2) (R+M)/2, AKI : Anti Knock Index
- B. Identifiers for Petrol-type fuels
 - * This symbol means usable fuel.
Do not use any other fuel.
- C. For further details, refer to the
“Fuel Requirement” in the
Introduction chapter.

Index

A

Accessing your vehicle.....	3-3
Immobiliser system.....	3-8
Smart key	3-3
Active bonnet lift system.....	2-64
System activation	2-64
System limitation	2-65
System malfunction.....	2-66
Air bag - supplemental restraint system.....	2-45
Additional safety precautions	2-62
Air bag warning labels.....	2-63
Curtain air bags.....	2-50
Driver's front air bag	2-47
Driver's knee air bag.....	2-47
How does the air bag system operate?	2-51
Passenger's front air bag.....	2-47
Side air bags.....	2-48
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) care.....	2-61
What to expect after an air bag inflates	2-54
Where are the air bags?.....	2-47
Why didn't my air bag go off in a collision?	2-56
Air cleaner	7-23
Filter replacement	7-23
Air conditioner compressor label	8-10
Air conditioning system	8-5

Air ventilation seats.....	2-22
Antenna.....	4-3
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	5-32
Appearance care	7-71
Exterior care.....	7-71
Interior care	7-76
Ashtray.....	3-152
Auto hold	5-28
Automatic climate control system	3-132
Automatic heating and air conditioning	3-133
Manual heating and air conditioning	3-134
System maintenance.....	3-141
System operation.....	3-140
Automatic transmission	5-10
Automatic transmission operation	5-10
Good driving practices.....	5-20
LCD display messages.....	5-16
Paddle shifter (Manual shift mode)	5-15

B

Battery.....	7-27
Battery capacity label.....	7-29
Battery recharging.....	7-29
Battery replacement	7-29
For best battery service	7-28

Before driving	5-4
Before entering the vehicle	5-4
Before starting	5-4
Blind-spot collision warning (BCW) system	5-64
BCW (Blind-Spot Collision Warning)	5-65
Detecting sensor	5-69
Limitations of the system	5-70
RCCW (Rear Cross-Traffic Collision Warning)	5-67
Bonnet	3-35
Brake fluid	7-21
Checking the brake fluid level	7-21
Braking system	5-22
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	5-32
Auto hold	5-28
Disc brakes wear indicator	5-23
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)	5-24
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	5-34
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS)	5-39
Good braking practices	5-40
High performance brakes	5-23
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)	5-39
Power brakes	5-22
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)	5-37
Bulb wattage	8-3

C

Centre console storage	3-150
Child restraint system (CRS)	2-36
Children always in the rear seats	2-36
Installing a Child Restraint System (CRS)	2-39
Selecting a Child Restraint System (CRS)	2-37
Climate control additional features	3-148
Automatic ventilation	3-148
Smart ventilation	3-149
Sunroof inside air recirculation	3-148
Climate control air filter	7-24
Filter inspection	7-24
Filter replacement	7-24
Clock	3-158
Coat hook	3-158
Cruise control	5-90
Cruise Control operation	5-90
Cup holder	3-152
Curtain air bags	2-50

D

Dimensions	8-2
Door locks.....	3-9
Auto door lock/unlock features.....	3-12
Child safety rear door locks.....	3-12
Operating door locks from inside the vehicle.....	3-10
Operating door locks from outside the vehicle.....	3-9
Drive mode integrated control system	5-46
Drive mode.....	5-46
Smart shift on trip computer	5-50
Driver assist system.....	3-120
Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system.....	3-120
Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system	3-122
Rear view monitor (Type A)	3-126
Rear view monitor (Type B)	3-127
Surround view monitor	3-128
Driver attention warning (DAW) system	5-82
Resetting the system	5-84
System malfunction.....	5-84
System setting and activation	5-82
System standby	5-84

Driver position memory system	3-14
Driver position memory system reset	3-16
Easy access function	3-15
Electric power steering (EPS).....	3-17
Recalling memory position	3-15
Storing memory positions	3-14
Driver's front air bag.....	2-47
Driver's knee air bag	2-47

E

ECO Coasting	5-44
ECO Coasting activation condition	5-44
ECO Coasting activation indicator	5-45
ECO Coasting deactivation condition.....	5-44
Setting ECO Coasting function.....	5-45
Electronic control suspension (ECS).....	5-41
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....	5-24
Electronic Stability Control (ESC).....	5-34
Emergency Stop Signal (ESS).....	5-39
Emission control system.....	7-79
Crankcase emission control system	7-79
Evaporative emission control system	7-79
Exhaust emission control system.....	7-80

Engine	8-2
Engine compartment	1-7, 7-3
Engine coolant	7-18
Changing the engine coolant.....	7-20
Checking the engine coolant level	7-18
Engine number.....	8-10
Engine oil.....	7-16
Checking the engine oil and filter.....	7-17
Checking the engine oil level	7-16
Engine Start/Stop button.....	5-6
Engine Stop/Start button positions.....	5-6
Starting the engine	5-8
Turning off the engine.....	5-9
Explanation of scheduled maintenance items	7-13
Exterior features	3-35
Bonnet	3-35
Fuel filler door	3-48
Non-Powered Boot.....	3-36
Power Boot.....	3-39
Smart boot.....	3-45
Exterior overview (I)	1-2
Exterior overview (II).....	1-3

F

Floor mat anchors	3-159
Forward collision-avoidance assist - lane-change oncoming function (with FCA).....	5-80
Function operation	5-80
Limitations of the system.....	5-81
Forward collision-avoidance assist (FCA) system - sensor fusion type (front radar + front camera).....	5-51
FCA sensor	5-55
FCA warning message and system control.....	5-53
Limitations of the system.....	5-58
System malfunction.....	5-57
System setting and activation	5-51
Front seats.....	2-6
Fuel filler door.....	3-48
Fuel label	8-11
Fuses	7-41
Engine compartment panel fuse replacement	7-43
Fuse/Relay panel description	7-45
Instrument panel fuse replacement	7-42

G

Glove box	3-150

H

Hazard warning flasher.....	6-2
Head up display (HUD).....	3-101
Headrest	2-16
Heated steering wheel.....	3-19
Hill-Start Assist Control (HAC)	5-39
Horn	3-20

I

If the engine overheats	6-8
If the engine will not start	6-3
If the engine doesn't turn over or turns over slowly	6-3
If the engine turns over normally but doesn't start	6-4
If you have a flat tyre (with spare tyre).....	6-16
Changing tyres	6-17
Jack and tools	6-16
Immobiliser system.....	3-8
Important safety precautions	2-2
Air bag hazards	2-2
Always wear your seat belt.....	2-2
Control your speed	2-3
Driver distraction	2-2
Keep your vehicle in a safe condition	2-3
Restrain all children	2-2

In case of an emergency whilst driving.....	6-2
If the engine stalls at a crossroad or crossing	6-2
If the engine stalls whilst driving	6-2
If you have a flat tyre whilst driving	6-3
Infotainment system	4-2
Antenna	4-3
Audio / Video / Navigation system.....	4-5
Bluetooth® Wireless Technology hands-free	4-4
Steering wheel audio controls.....	4-3
USB port	4-2
Instrument cluster	3-51
3D Cluster (for Cluster type C)	3-53
Gauges and metres	3-57
Instrument cluster control	3-56
LCD display messages.....	3-75
Transmission shift indicator.....	3-61
Warning and indicator lights.....	3-62
Instrument panel overview (I)	1-5
Instrument panel overview (II).....	1-6

Interior features.....	3-152
Ashtray	3-152
Clock	3-158
Coat hook	3-158
Cup holder.....	3-152
Floor mat anchors	3-159
Luggage net.....	3-160
Power outlet	3-154
Sunvisor.....	3-153
USB charger.....	3-155
Wireless mobile phone charging system.....	3-156
Interior overview	1-4

J

Jump starting.....	6-4
Push-starting.....	6-7

L

Lane keeping assist (LKA) system.....	5-72
Limitations of the system.....	5-78
LKA operation.....	5-73
LKA system function change	5-79
Warning light and message	5-75
Launch control.....	5-42
Launch control activation	5-42
Prerequisite for activation	5-42

LCD display.....	3-82
LCD display control.....	3-82
LCD display modes.....	3-83
Light bulbs	7-60
Headlamp, parking lamp, turn signal lamp and daytime running light bulb replacement.....	7-61
High mounted stop lamp replacement	7-68
Interior light replacement.....	7-69
Licence plate light replacement	7-69
Rear combination lamp bulb replacement	7-65
Side repeater lamp replacement	7-64
Lighting.....	3-104
Exterior lights.....	3-104
Interior lights	3-114
Welcome system.....	3-112
Limited slip differential	5-41
Luggage net	3-160

M

Maintenance services.....	7-4
Owner maintenance precautions.....	7-4
Owner's responsibility.....	7-4
Manual speed limit assist (MSLA).....	5-87
Speed Limit Assist operation	5-87

Mirrors	3-20
Inside rearview mirror	3-20
Outside rearview mirrors	3-22
Reverse parking aid function	3-24

N

Non-Powered Boot	3-36

O

Owner maintenance	7-5
Owner maintenance schedule	7-6

P

Parking Distance Warning (Reverse) system	3-120
Parking Distance Warning (Reverse/Forward) system	3-122
Passenger's front air bag	2-47
Power Boot	3-39
Power outlet	3-154

R

Rear seats	2-13
Rear view monitor (Type A)	3-126
Rear view monitor (Type B)	3-127
Recommended lubricants and capacities	8-6
Recommended SAE viscosity number	8-8

S

Scheduled maintenance services	7-7
Maintenance Under Severe Usage and Low Mileage Conditions	7-11
Normal Maintenance Schedule	7-8
Seat belts	2-24
Additional seat belt safety precautions	2-33
Care of seat belts	2-35
Seat belt restraint system	2-27
Seat belt safety precautions	2-24
Seat belt warning light	2-25
Seat warmers	2-20
Seats	2-4
Air ventilation seats	2-22
Front seats	2-6
Headrest	2-16
Rear seats	2-13
Safety precautions	2-5
Seat warmers	2-20

Side air bags	2-48
Smart boot.....	3-45
Smart cruise control with stop & go system	5-95
Limitations of the system.....	5-108
Sensor to detect distance to the vehicle ahead.....	5-105
Smart Cruise Control speed.....	5-96
Smart Cruise Control Switch	5-96
Smart Cruise Control Vehicle-to-Vehicle Distance.....	5-102
To adjust the sensitivity of Smart Cruise Control	5-107
To convert to Cruise Control mode	5-107
Smart key	3-3
Special driving conditions	5-113
Driving at night	5-114
Driving in flooded areas.....	5-115
Driving in the rain.....	5-114
Hazardous driving conditions	5-113
Highway driving.....	5-115
Rocking the vehicle.....	5-113
Smooth cornering	5-114
Steering wheel	3-17
Heated steering wheel	3-19
Horn.....	3-20
Tilt steering / Telescopic steering	3-18
Steering wheel audio controls	4-3
Storage compartment.....	3-150
Centre console storage	3-150
Glove box	3-150
Sunglasses holder.....	3-151

Sunglasses holder	3-151
Sunroof	3-30
Closing the sunroof.....	3-32
Resetting the sunroof	3-33
Sliding the sunroof.....	3-31
Sunroof open warning.....	3-34
Sunshade	3-31
Tilting the sunroof.....	3-32
Sunvisor	3-153
Surround view monitor.....	3-128

T

Theft-alarm system	3-13
Towing	6-22
Emergency towing	6-25
Removable towing hook	6-24
Towing service	6-22
Trailer towing	5-122
Driving with a trailer.....	5-126
If you do decide to pull a trailer (For Australia) ...	5-123
If you do decide to pull a trailer (For New Zealand).....	5-124
Maintenance when towing a trailer.....	5-130
Trailer towing equipment.....	5-125
Trip computer	3-97
Trip modes	3-97

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)	6-9
Changing a tyre with TPMS	6-14
Check tyre pressure.....	6-10
Low tyre pressure position telltale and tyre pressure telltale.....	6-12
Low tyre pressure telltale.....	6-12
TPMS (Tyre Pressure Monitoring System) malfunction indicator.....	6-13
Tyre pressure monitoring system	6-10
Tyre specification and pressure label	8-10
Tyres and wheels.....	7-31, 8-4
Check tyre inflation pressure	7-33
Low aspect ratio tyres	7-40
Recommended cold tyre inflation pressures.....	7-32
Tyre care.....	7-31
Tyre maintenance	7-36
Tyre replacement	7-35
Tyre rotation.....	7-33
Tyre sidewall labelling.....	7-36
Tyre traction	7-36
Wheel alignment and tyre balance.....	7-34
Wheel replacement.....	7-36

U

USB charger	3-155
USB port.....	4-2

V

Vehicle certification label.....	8-9
Vehicle identification number (VIN).....	8-9
Vehicle Stability Management (VSM)	5-37
Vehicle weight	5-121
Overloading.....	5-121
Vehicle weight and luggage volume.....	8-5

W

Washer fluid.....	7-22
Checking the washer fluid level	7-22
Windows.....	3-25
Power windows	3-25
Remote window closing function	3-29
Windscreen defrosting and defogging.....	3-144
Auto defogging system	3-146
Defogging logic.....	3-145
Defroster.....	3-147
To defog inside windscreen	3-144
To defrost outside windscreen	3-145

Winter driving	5-116
Snow or icy conditions.....	5-116
Winter precautions	5-118
Wiper blades	7-25
Blade inspection.....	7-25
Blade replacement.....	7-25
Wipers and washers	3-117
Windscreen washers.....	3-118
Windscreen wipers	3-117
Wireless mobile phone charging system	3-156